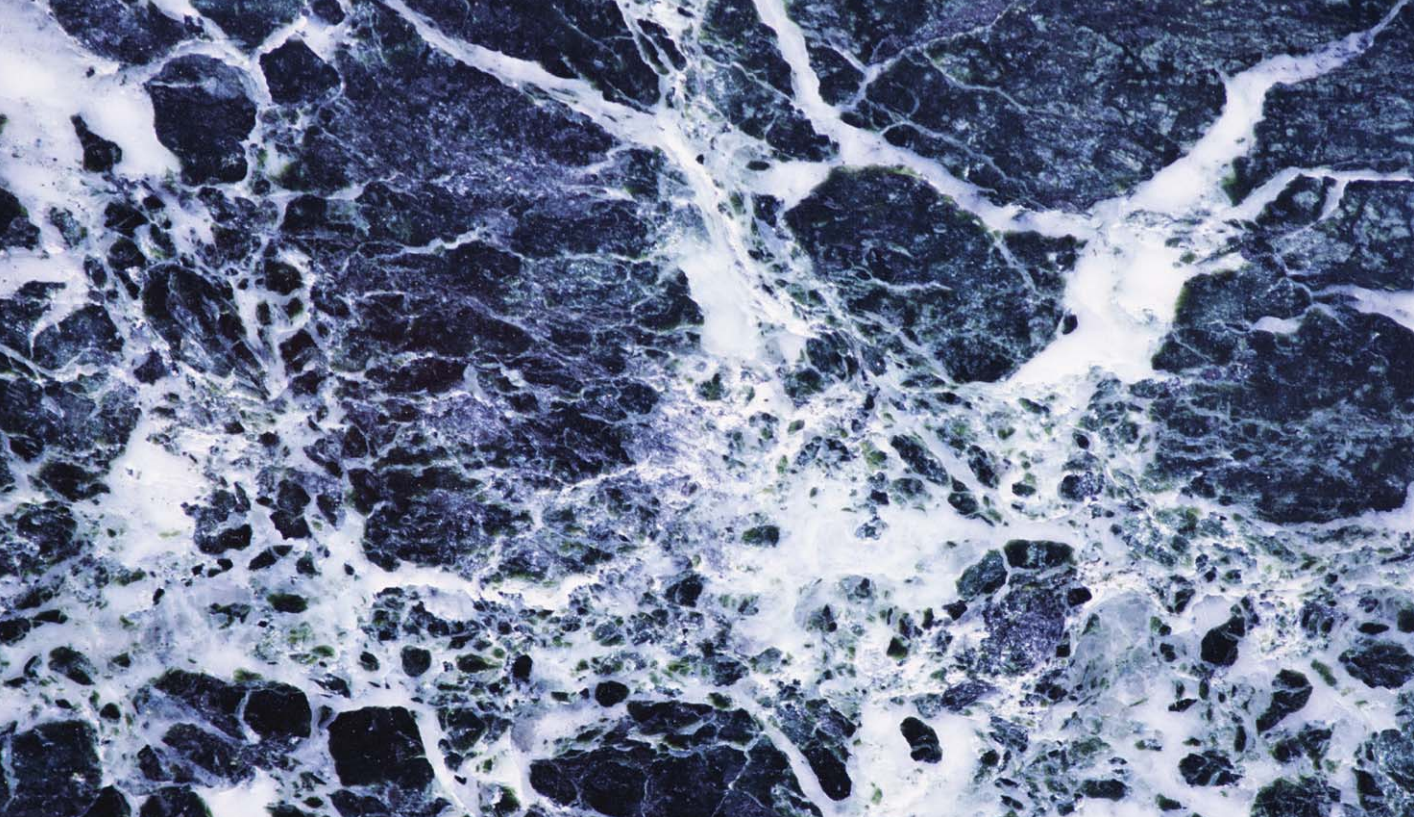
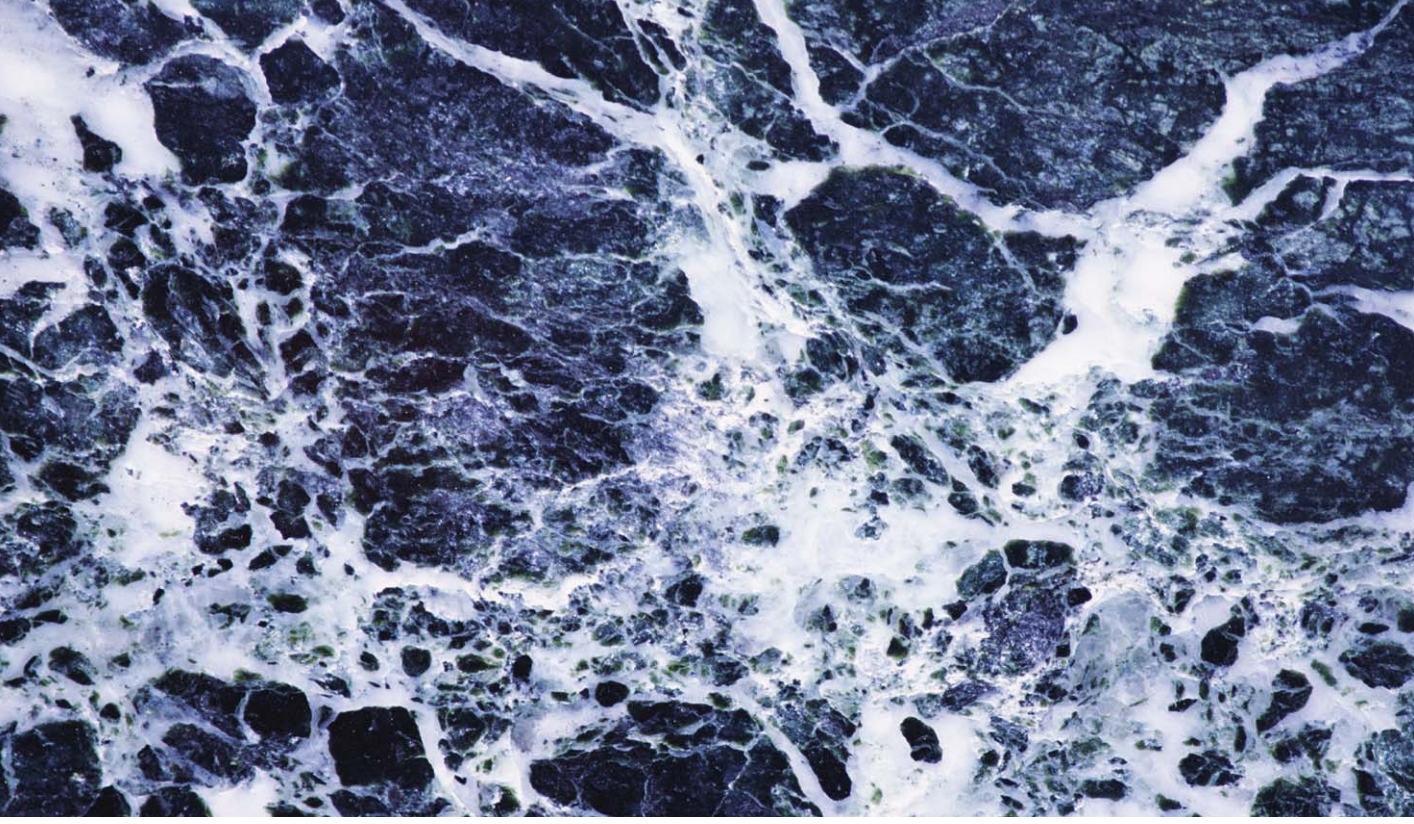


pbEncom™

# Discover Mobile™ v3.8 User Guide

Pitney Bowes Software Inc. is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Pitney Bowes Inc. Pitney Bowes, the Corporate logo, pbEncom and Discover are [registered] trademarks of Pitney Bowes Inc. or a subsidiary. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
© 2013 Pitney Bowes Software Inc. All rights reserved.



pbEncom™

# Discover Mobile™ v3.8 User Guide


Discover Mobile is developed and supported by
Pitney Bowes Software Pty Ltd

ASIA PACIFIC / AUSTRALIA
Level 7, 1 Elizabeth Plaza
North Sydney NSW 2060 Australia

SUPPORT
T: +61.2.9437.6255

software.support@pb.com
www.pbencom.com


ENCOM DISCOVER MOBILE RELEASE HISTORY

| | |
|---|---|
| v1.0 | March 2003 |
| v2.0 | February 2004 |
| v2.5 | October 2005 |
| v3.0 | June 2007 |
| v3.5 | November 2008 |
| v3.6 | December 2010 |
| v3.7 | September 2012 |
| v3.8 | December 2013 |


Pitney Bowes Software Inc. is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Pitney Bowes Inc. Pitney Bowes, the Corporate logo, pbEncom and Discover are [registered] trademarks of Pitney Bowes Inc. or a subsidiary. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.
© 2013 Pitney Bowes Software Inc. All rights reserved.

# Table of Contents

**1 Introduction ..... 1**

Hardware and Operating System Requirements ..... 2
Pocket PC Device Requirements ..... 2
Desktop or Laptop PC Requirements ..... 2
Pocket PC to Desktop PC Communication Requirements ..... 2
Desktop Post-processing Software Requirements ..... 3
Installing Discover Mobile ..... 3
Software Installation ..... 3
Reinstalling Discover Mobile on the PPC ..... 4
Licensing Discover Mobile ..... 5
Reactivating the Licence ..... 8
Transferring Data Between Devices ..... 8
PC Synchronisation ..... 9
Microsoft ActiveSync ..... 9
Windows Mobile Device Center ..... 9
Getting Help ..... 10

**2 Best Practice with a Portable PC ..... 11**

Running Programs and Memory ..... 11
Power and Battery Use ..... 11
Bluetooth Manager ..... 11
Charging ..... 11
External Batteries ..... 12
In-Vehicle Recharging ..... 12
Data Storage ..... 12
Keep Data on External Storage Card ..... 12
Set Storage Card Directory Paths ..... 13
Backup Your Installation of Discover Mobile ..... 13

**3 Data Preparation ..... 15**

Supported File Types and Table Size Limits ..... 15
Raster Images ..... 15
ECW Files ..... 16
Things You Can Do to Improve Performance ..... 16
Subsetting Datasets to the Project Area ..... 17
Clip to Polygon Tool ..... 17
Save to Registered Raster Tool ..... 19
Clip Image ..... 20
Convert Tables to Same Projection ..... 21
Set Table Default View ..... 22
Save Data as Geoset File ..... 23

Set Zoom Layering for Large Raster Images ..... 23
Pack Tables ..... 24
Create Data Entry Pick Lists ..... 24
Create Named Styles ..... 25
Desktop Tools ..... 25
Discover Mobile Workflow ..... 26
DiscoverMobile Manager ..... 27
Specify Data to Transfer ..... 28
Preparing Tables for Mobile Device ..... 28
Transferring Data ..... 28
Updating with New Device Data ..... 29
Connection Status ..... 29
Convert Hotlinks ..... 29
Name Style Editor ..... 30
Create Named Style ..... 31
Linking a Style to Tables and Setting Auto-fields ..... 33
Saving Named Style ..... 33
Range Style Editor ..... 33
Create Range Style ..... 34
Picklist Editor ..... 35
Create Table ..... 36
Modify Table Structure ..... 37
Picklist Field Types ..... 38
Create Picklist ..... 39
Picklist Format ..... 41
Rename Picklist and Table ..... 41
Saving Table and Picklists ..... 42
Table Merge ..... 42
Save Registered Raster ..... 44

**4 Getting Started ..... 47**

Starting Discover Mobile ..... 47
The User Interface ..... 49
Interacting with the Software ..... 50
Data Formats ..... 51
Map Window ..... 51
Map Window Projection ..... 51
Saving and Restoring Your Workspace ..... 52

**5 Mobile Interface ..... 55**

Title bar ..... 56
Map Window ..... 56
Toolbars ..... 56
Main Toolbar ..... 57

Select/View Toolbar ..... 58
Draw/Edit Toolbar ..... 62
GPS Toolbar ..... 64
GO Menu ..... 66
Customizing the Hardware Buttons ..... 66

**6 Using the GO Menu ..... 67**

Exit Menu ..... 68
About Menu ..... 69
Licensing Menu ..... 69
Preferences Menu ..... 70
Connection ..... 71
GPS Protocol ..... 72
Setup ..... 72
Update Interval ..... 75
Preferred Interval ..... 76
Stop After Error ..... 76
SSF Logging ..... 76
Post Processing ..... 77
Point Capture ..... 77
Tolerance Min ..... 77
Tolerance Max ..... 78
Min Sample Points ..... 78
Precision Filter ..... 79
Display ..... 79
Re-centre GPS ..... 79
Altitude in ..... 80
Speed in ..... 80
Default Scale 1: ..... 80
GPS Position Style ..... 80
Map Rotation ..... 81
Deg Tolerance ..... 81
Speed Tolerance ..... 81
When Off ..... 81
Object Creation ..... 82
Edit Attributes ..... 82
Named Styles ..... 82
Point XY Editing ..... 82
Session ..... 83
Autoload last ..... 83
Map Projection ..... 83
User Projection ..... 84
Distance In ..... 84
Area In ..... 84
Grid Overlay ..... 84

Waypoint Tolerance ..... 85
System Settings ..... 85
Busy Cursor ..... 86
Font Size ..... 86
Confirm Deletion ..... 86
Hardware Buttons ..... 87
Alert Configurations ..... 88
Directories ..... 88
Project Root ..... 88
Current Project ..... 88
Set Individually (advanced users only) ..... 88
Tools Menu ..... 90
Select ..... 91
Zoom In ..... 92
Zoom Out ..... 92
Pan ..... 92
Center ..... 92
Info ..... 93
Cursor Position ..... 93
Add Point ..... 93
Add Structure Symbol ..... 93
Add Node ..... 94
Add Line ..... 94
Add Polyline Freehand ..... 94
Add Polygon Freehand ..... 94
Add Polygon ..... 95
Add Polyline ..... 95
Add Annotation ..... 95
Add Label ..... 95
Query Menu ..... 96
Select ..... 97
Select All ..... 98
Clear Selection ..... 98
Find ..... 98
Find Selection ..... 99
Browse Selection ..... 99
Map Menu ..... 100
Save Window As ..... 101
Add Cosmetic Layer ..... 101
Set Insertion Layer ..... 101
Create Theme ..... 102
Modify Themes ..... 103
Map Projection ..... 104
GPS Menu ..... 104
Connect ..... 105
Monitor Satellite Status ..... 105
Setup Connection ..... 105

Setup Data Capture Tables ... 106
Default Styles ... 106
Center Map on GPS ... 106
Orient Map Ahead ... 106
Waypoint Navigation ... 106
Capture Point ... 107
Capture Polyline ... 107
Capture Polygon ... 107
Capture Structure Symbol ... 107
Point Log ... 107
Line Log ... 107
XRF Menu ... 108
Setup ... 108
Connect ... 109
Open XRF Table ... 109
View Menu ... 109
Layer Control ... 110
Zoom Level ... 113
View Entire Layer ... 114
Map Rotation ... 114
Map Grid ... 114
GPS Overlay ... 114
Scale Bar ... 114
Show Toolbars ... 115
Status Window ... 115
Table Browser ... 119
Table Structure ... 119
Edit Menu ... 119
Buffer ... 120
Edit Mode ... 121
Clear Custom Labels and Annotations ... 122
Delete ... 122
Raster Transparency ... 122
Selected Point Location ... 123
Selected Object Style ... 123
Quick Pick Options ... 123
Hardware Button Options ... 124
Named Styles ... 124
New Object Styles ... 125
Range Styles ... 125
Apply Range Style ... 125
File Menu ... 125
Recent Files ... 127
New Table ... 127
Open Table ... 131
Close Table ... 131
Close All Tables ... 131

Save Table Copy As ..... 132
Save Geoset ..... 133
Edit Table Structure ..... 133
Pack Table ..... 134

**7 Controlling Layers and the View ..... 135**

About Layers ..... 135
Managing Layers ..... 136
Layer and Object Visibility ..... 138
Managing Objects in Layers ..... 139
Setting the Insertion Layer ..... 139
Assigning GPS Capture Layers ..... 140
Adding a Cosmetic Layer ..... 141
Labelling Objects ..... 142
View Controls ..... 143
Zoom and Scale ..... 143
Set Zoom Width and Scale ..... 143
Zoom In and Out ..... 144
View Extents ..... 144
Pan and Center ..... 144
Rotate ..... 144
Auto-Rotate and Auto-Centre ..... 145
Map Grid ..... 146
GPS Overlay ..... 149
Scale Bar ..... 149
Save and Restore View ..... 150
Display View Settings ..... 150

**8 Working with Maps ..... 153**

Thematic Mapping ..... 153
Creating a Theme ..... 154
Theme Type ..... 155
Ranged Thematic Maps ..... 155
Bar Chart Thematic Maps ..... 156
Pie Thematic Maps ..... 157
Graduated Symbol Thematic Maps ..... 158
Dot Density Thematic Maps ..... 158
Individual Value Thematic Maps ..... 159
Thematic Legend ..... 159
Modifying Themes ..... 161
Controlling the Map Projection ..... 162
Raster Transparency ..... 164

**9 Working with Tables ..... 167**

Adding Tables, Maps, and Fields ..... 167
Using MapInfo Tables and Raster Images ..... 167
Creating a New Table with Discover Mobile ..... 168
Cloning Tables ..... 170
Using Templates ..... 171
Defining Field Properties ..... 171
Field Types ..... 171
Quick Pick Fields ..... 172
Pick Lists ..... 173
Format ..... 173
Use ..... 173
Example Pick Lists ..... 174
Create a Pick List in Discover Mobile ..... 174
Auto Fields ..... 176
Structural Data Fields ..... 179
Azimuth Measurements ..... 180
Structure Dip and Plunge Angles ..... 181
Structure Codes and Symbol Libraries ..... 181
Adding Structural Data Fields ..... 182
Customizing the Structure Symbol Picklist ..... 183
Managing Tables ..... 184
Opening Tables ..... 184
Closing Tables ..... 185
Copying Tables ..... 186
Viewing Tables ..... 187
Modifying Table Structure ..... 188
Packing Tables ..... 188
Searching for Data ..... 189
Searching Tables by Query ..... 189
Using Query Operators and Functions ..... 190
Operators ..... 191
Functions ..... 193
Searching Tables by Keyword ..... 196

**10 Working with Objects ..... 199**

Creating Objects ..... 199
Setting Object Creation Preferences ..... 200
Edit Attributes ..... 200
Named Styles ..... 200
Point XY Editing ..... 200
Creating Drawing Objects ..... 200
Creating Points and Symbols ..... 201
Creating Lines and Polygons ..... 202

Creating Structure Objects ..... 203
Creating GPS-located Objects ..... 205
Capturing Points ..... 208
Capturing Lines ..... 209
Capturing Regions ..... 210
Capturing Elevation Data ..... 211
Capturing Structure Objects ..... 212
Field Data Entry and Editing ..... 213
Populating Fields ..... 214
Select Value from Pick List ..... 214
Automatically Populate with User-Defined Data ..... 214
Automatically Populate with GPS Data ..... 214
Auto-prompt for Structural Data ..... 215
Ad Hoc Values ..... 215
Selecting Objects ..... 215
Using the Selection Tools ..... 215
Viewing Graphical Selections ..... 216
Selecting Objects Within a Buffer ..... 216
Editing Objects ..... 218
Move an Object ..... 219
Edit and Delete Nodes ..... 219
Add Nodes ..... 219
Edit Attributes ..... 219
Edit Coordinates ..... 220
Edit Object Style ..... 220
Delete Objects ..... 220
Formatting Objects ..... 220
Setting Default Styles for New Drawing Objects ..... 221
Formatting Drawing Objects ..... 221
Symbol Style ..... 222
Line Style ..... 223
Fill Style ..... 224
Setting Default Styles for GPS-Located Objects ..... 224
Applying Named Styles ..... 225
Applying Range Styles ..... 227
Applying a Range Style Library During XRF Data Capture ..... 227
Named Styles ..... 228
Creating a Named Style Library ..... 229
Creating Named Styles on the Desktop ..... 230
Sample Named Styles Dataset ..... 230
File Management with Named Styles ..... 237
Setting up Named Styles for Multiple Users ..... 238
Range Styles ..... 240
Creating a Range Style Library ..... 240
Editing a Range Style Library ..... 242
Creating a Range Style Library on the Desktop ..... 242
Labels and Annotation ..... 242

Adding Labels and Annotation ..... 242
Removing Labels and Annotations ..... 243
Hotlinking Files to Map Objects ..... 243
Adding Hotlink Field to Table ..... 243
Creating a Hotlink ..... 244
Editing a Hotlink File ..... 246
Using the Hotlink Files in MapInfo ..... 246
Hotlink Images from the PPC Camera ..... 247

**11 Working with the GPS ..... 251**

Connecting to the GPS ..... 251
Connecting to an NMEA GPS Receiver ..... 252
Troubleshooting an NMEA GPS Connection ..... 253
Connecting to a Trimble Receiver ..... 258
Connection Hardware ..... 259
Displaying the Current Position ..... 260
Monitoring Satellite Status ..... 262
Navigating to a Known Point ..... 263
Tracking Your Path ..... 266
GPS Point Log ..... 266
GPS Line Log ..... 268
Working with Differential GPS (DGPS) ..... 269
Configuring Discover Mobile for DGPS Work ..... 270
Field Data Collection ..... 273
Data Storage ..... 273
GPS Connection ..... 273
Carrier Phase Logging ..... 276
Post-processing ..... 278
Correct Rover SSF File ..... 279
Export Corrected Rover file ..... 282
Post-process Field Data File ..... 284

**Appendices ..... 287**

**A Discover Mobile Quick Reference Guide ..... 289**

Toolbars ..... 289
Main Toolbar ..... 289
Select/View Toolbar ..... 290
Draw/Edit Toolbar ..... 291
GPS Toolbar ..... 292
Preference Settings ..... 293

**B Structural Symbols ..... 297**

Structural Symbols Ordered by Discover Code ..... 297
Structure Symbols Ordered by Name ..... 303

**C Working with Portable XRF Devices ..... 311**

Setting Up the Bluetooth Connection to an XRF Device ..... 312
Connecting a Niton XRF device with the PPC on Windows Mobile 5 or 6 ..... 312
Connecting an Olympus Innov-X XRF device with the PPC on Windows Mobile 2003 ..... 315
Connecting to the GPS Receiver ..... 327
Connecting to an NMEA GPS receiver ..... 328
Connecting to a Trimble GPS receiver ..... 329
View Satellite Positions and Status ..... 331
Connecting and Configuring Discover Mobile and the XRF device ..... 332
Specify the XRF Project Path ..... 332
Configure the XRF Connection ..... 333
Connect to the XRF device ..... 334
Enhance the Map Window Display ..... 337
Capturing XRF Data ..... 337
Run an Analysis on the XRF device ..... 338
Record the GPS Location ..... 338
Review XRF Data and Record Comments and Observations ..... 339
Save Reading in Discover Mobile ..... 342

**D Digitizing and Data Entry in Discover ..... 343**

Creating and Managing Picklists ..... 345
Applying a Single Style from a Picklist ..... 359
Applying Multiple Styles from a Picklist ..... 361
Applying Structural Styles from a Picklist ..... 364
Configure Table for Data Entry ..... 366
Table Validation Options ..... 368
Enter or Digitize Table Data and Map Objects ..... 370

**Index ..... 379**

# 1 Introduction

Discover Mobile is a portable companion to Discover for MapInfo Professional. It is a powerful Geographic Information System (GIS) and mapping application designed specifically to run on mobile Pocket PC (Pocket Personal Computer or PPC) devices, and is compatible with selected Microsoft Windows Mobile operating systems. Discover Mobile is built on Pitney Bowes Software's MapX Mobile platform and provides support for native MapInfo Professional data. Such data can be transferred to and from the mobile device when linked to an external PC through the use of the Microsoft ActiveSync data exchange system or through Windows Mobile Device Center.

Discover Mobile provides inbuilt support for GPS devices capable of supporting NMEA 0183 (National Marine Electronics Association) standard data transfer protocol. This enables you to perform data capture operations, sample logging, mapping and in-field navigation with real-time GPS information using virtually any connected GPS device.

**With Discover Mobile your data goes wherever you do!**

Discover Mobile also supports Trimble TSIP (Trimble Standard Interface Protocol) protocol, allowing connectivity with Trimble DGPS devices such as the Pro XRS and XT, with full support for Trimble Post-Processing capabilities.

**Note** Trimble protocol supported up to Trimble Pathfinder SDK to version 2.41.

For information on installing Discover Mobile, see:

- *Hardware and Operating System Requirements*
- *Installing Discover Mobile*
- *Licensing Discover Mobile*
- *Transferring Data Between Devices*
- *Getting Help*

For a quick introduction to starting and using Discover Mobile, see *Getting Started*.

# Hardware and Operating System Requirements

The Discover Mobile application is designed to run on mobile devices which use the Microsoft Windows Mobile 5 and 6 (including updates 6.1 and 6.5) edition operating systems.

For information on the recommended minimum hardware/software system specification, see:

- *Pocket PC Device Requirements*
- *Desktop or Laptop PC Requirements*
- *Pocket PC to Desktop PC Communication Requirements*
- *Desktop Post-processing Software Requirements*

## Pocket PC Device Requirements

Pocket PC device running Microsoft® Windows Mobile 5 or Windows Mobile 6. Minimum 64 Mb of RAM, with 28MB of free space on Main Memory.

Discover Mobile will not run on handheld devices which run Windows CE.NET, Windows CE 3.0-5.0, Windows HPC 2000 or handheld machines running earlier operating systems or processors.

## Desktop or Laptop PC Requirements

Supported operating systems are:

- Windows 8 (32- or 64-bit)
- Windows 7 (32- or 64-bit, SP1)
- Windows XP Professional (32-bit, SP3)

## Pocket PC to Desktop PC Communication Requirements

- On Windows XP, Microsoft ActiveSync version 4.5 or later
- On Windows 7 and 8, Windows Mobile Device Center 6.1 or later.

### Desktop Post-processing Software Requirements

Post-processing of field data collected using DGPS requires the following desktop software:

- MapInfo Professional 10.5 or later
- Discover 2013 or later
- Trimble GPS Pathfinder Office 4.00 or later

## Installing Discover Mobile

Installation of Discover Mobile is a three-step procedure:

1. Connect the mobile device to the desktop or laptop computer via ActiveSync or Windows Mobile Device Center. For more information, see *PC Synchronisation*.
2. On the desktop or laptop, run the Discover Mobile install program. For more information, see *Software Installation*. The install program installs software, documentation, and sample data on the PC and also installs Discover Mobile on the mobile device.
3. Register the software with the mobile device and install a licence file to activate the software. This licence file must be obtained from Pitney Bowes Software. For more information, see *Licensing Discover Mobile*.

### Software Installation

Before you install the software:

- Make sure that the Pocket PC device (PPC) is connected to the laptop or desktop computer, and the PPC is turned on and has established a synchronization connection to the PC via Microsoft ActiveSync (Windows XP) or Windows Mobile Device Center (Windows 7 or 8). For more information, see *PC Synchronisation*.
- Make sure that there is at least 28MB of free space in the PPC main memory.

**To install the Discover Mobile software on your PC and mobile device:**

1. Download or copy the Discover Mobile installation file `DiscoverMobile_3.8_Setup_WindowsMobile.exe` onto the PC.

2. On the PC, run the install program.

   To run the program, locate the executable file with Windows Explorer, and then either double-click the file name, or right-click on the file name and select **Open**.

3. Follow the prompts, press **Next** to proceed to the next step, and, when complete, press **Finish** to install the software on the PC.

4. When the installation on the PC is complete, you will be asked to confirm installation of the software on the mobile device.

The software is now ready to be licensed (see *Licensing Discover Mobile*).

**Note** After Discover Mobile has been installed on the PC, it can be installed on a synchronised mobile device at any time by running `Setup.exe`, which is located under `C:\Program Files\Encom\Discover Mobile\Application Files\Windows Mobile` (32-Bit) or `C:\Program Files (x86)\Encom\Discover Mobile\Application Files\Windows Mobile` (64-Bit). Alternatively, rerun the install program on the PC.

**Note** If you intend to use the post-processing functionality of the Trimble TSIP protocol, you will need Discover 2013 or later installed, as well as Trimble GPS Pathfinder Office 4.00 or later.

**See also**

... *Hardware and Operating System Requirements*
... *Licensing Discover Mobile*
... *Transferring Data Between Devices*

## Reinstalling Discover Mobile on the PPC

When Discover Mobile is installed on the PC, the install file specific to the PPC device is copied to the `C:\Program Files\Encom\Discover Mobile\Application Files\Windows Mobile` (32-Bit) or `C:\Program Files (x86)\Encom\Discover Mobile\Application Files\Windows Mobile` (64-Bit) folder on the PC.

### To reinstall the software on the PPC:

1. With the PPC synchronized to the PC, copy `DiscoverMobile_Setup.CAB` file from the `Windows Mobile` folder on the PC to the `\My Documents` folder on the PPC.

2. From the mobile device, tap the `DiscoverMobile_Setup.CAB` file to install Discover Mobile.

## Licensing Discover Mobile

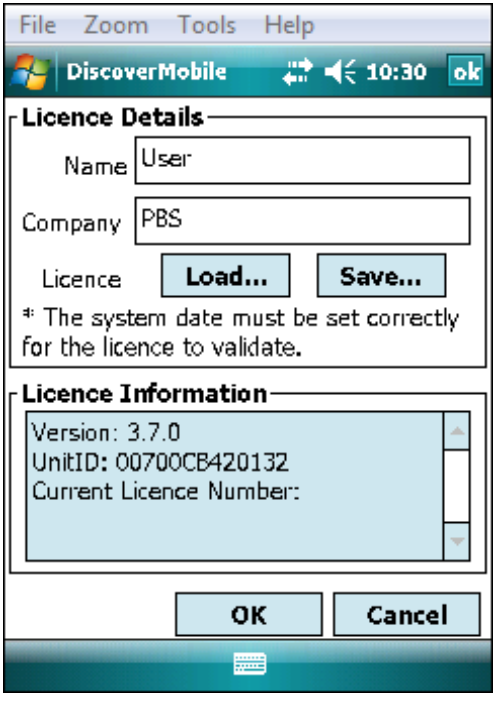
When you start Discover Mobile for the first time you will be prompted to licence the software. You will need to obtain a licence file from Pitney Bowes Software (PBS). You only need to license the software once on each installation.

**To license the software:**

1. Check that the PPC system clock is correct. You can change the date and time by either tapping the date in the PPC desktop display, or by selecting **Start>Settings>System>Clock**.

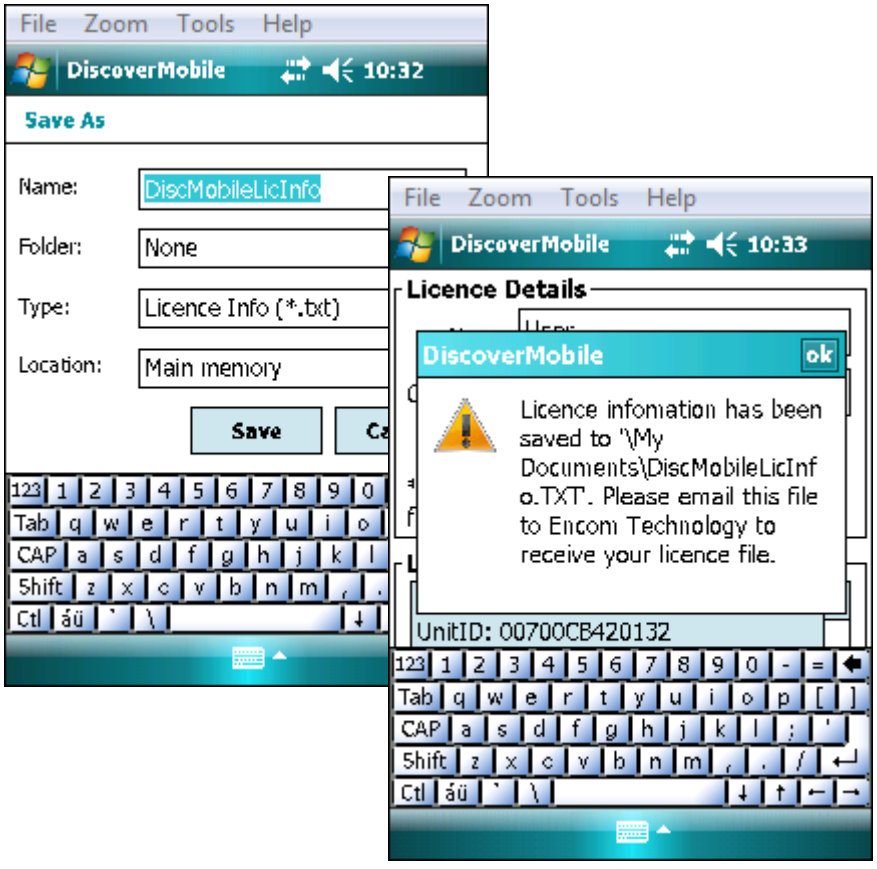
2. On the PPC, start Discover Mobile by tapping **Start** and then **Discover Mobile** or select **Start>Programs** and tap the Discover Mobile icon.

   The Discover Mobile licence screen is displayed.




*Licence screen showing user and licence information*

3. Complete the **Name** and **Company** fields, and then tap the **Save** button. The user information is saved to `DiscMobileLicInfo.txt` file in the `\My Documents` folder on the PPC.




*Save the DiscMobileLicInfo.TXT file*

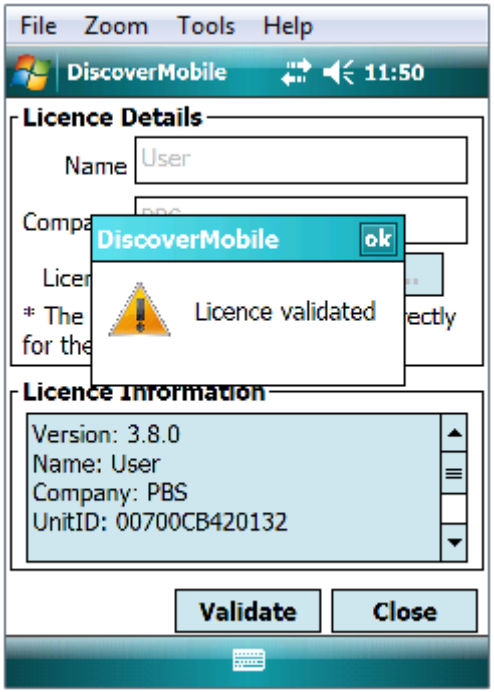
4. From Windows Explorer on your PC, navigate to the `\My Documents` folder on the PPC and copy the `DiscMobileLicInfo.txt` file from the PPC to the PC.

5. Attach the `DiscMobileLicInfo.txt` file to an e-mail and send to *natural.resources@pb.com*.

6. By return email, you will receive a licence file from PBS with the filename extension of .LIC.

7. Copy the licence file to the `\My Documents` folder on the PPC and, if you are using a storage card, copy the same file to the storage card (e.g. `\Disk\Discover Mobile`). Storing a copy of the licence file on the storage card is recommended in case the main memory is wiped (e.g. because of a flat battery).

8. Start Discover Mobile by tapping **Start>Discover Mobile** or by tapping the **Start>Programs>Discover Mobile** icon. When Discover Mobile starts the licence dialog is displayed.




9. Tap the **Load** button and select the licence file (e.g. `DiscMobileLic.LIC`). Tap **Validate** to activate the software. If the licence information is valid, the software will be activated and Discover Mobile is now ready for use.

Before you begin to use the software, backup the software and licence files to your storage card and PC. Remember to backup your work frequently.

**Warning**

If your PPC device loses all power due to a flat battery, all information stored in the main memory will be lost. This includes all installed programs and data you have added to the device since receiving it from the factory.

You should also keep a copy of the installation .CAB file on the storage card so that you can reinstall the software in the field (see *Reinstalling Discover Mobile on the PPC*).

### Reactivating the Licence

If the software is erased from the PPC, you must reinstall the Discover Mobile software and then reactivate the software licence. You can reuse your original licence file to activate Discover Mobile at any time providing you use the licence file on the same PPC device.

Keep a copy of the licence file on your PC or another form of storage media (e.g. CF Flash card or Secure Digital card).

## Transferring Data Between Devices

Transferring data between your mobile device and your desktop computer is as simple as dragging and dropping files from one device to the other using Windows Explorer. All that is required to activate this functionality is to establish a connection between the two devices using Microsoft ActiveSync or Windows Mobile Device Center (see *PC Synchronisation*).

These synchronisation applications can provide communication between the mobile device and a desktop or laptop computer via a serial, universal serial bus (USB) or ethernet connection. USB connections are the most common and are significantly faster than serial connections for data transfer. It is possible to use ethernet or a wireless LAN connection to transfer files between your mobile device and a host computer. However, you cannot use an ethernet or wireless LAN connection to remotely install software or to perform file synchronisation. Please refer to your mobile device documentation for details on how to establish a local area network connection.

When a mobile device is connected to your desktop computer, it will be automatically listed in the file system tree in Windows Explorer as a Mobile Device (Windows XP) or as a named computer (Windows 7 or 8). You can copy, paste, drag and drop files to and from your local computer to the mobile device, just as you would with any folder using Windows Explorer. It is good practice to store data files on a removable storage card, such as a Compact Flash (CF) or Secure Digital (SD) card, instead of the main RAM memory of the PPC. This will ensure that you do not loose any data in the event of a power failure. It also frees up on-board memory for the PPC operating system.

## PC Synchronisation

*Microsoft ActiveSync* (Windows XP) and *Windows Mobile Device Center* (Windows 7 or 8) are synchronisation applications supplied by Microsoft for Microsoft Windows® powered Pocket PCs, allowing file transfer between PCs and mobile devices.

ActiveSync and Windows Mobile Device Center software provide all file services to synchronise or backup data and install software on the PPC. Please refer to your PPC user guide for information on how to establish a connection between your mobile device and desktop computer.

**See also**

...*Pocket PC to Desktop PC Communication Requirements*

### Microsoft ActiveSync

ActiveSync is used for transferring data between your PC and mobile device if your PC is running Windows XP. ActiveSync may be pre-installed on the mobile device but you will need to install the application software on your PC computer. If you do not have an ActiveSync installation CD-ROM you can download the software for free from a Microsoft Download website. Refer to the Microsoft ActiveSync User Guide for instructions on installing ActiveSync software.

Microsoft ActiveSync comes pre-installed in ROM on all mobile devices but needs to be installed on the host computer using the accompanying software installation CD shipped with the mobile device.  If you do not have an installation CD you can download or update to the latest version of ActiveSync freely from the Microsoft download centre web page. Windows Mobile Device Center should be pre-installed with the Windows 7 or 8 operating system, if not it can be downloaded from a Microsoft Download website.

**See also**

...*PC Synchronisation*
...*Pocket PC to Desktop PC Communication Requirements*

### Windows Mobile Device Center

Windows Mobile Device Center is used for transferring data between your PC and mobile device if your PC is running Windows 7 or 8 operating system. Windows Mobile Device Center should be pre-installed with Windows 7 or 8 operating system, if not it can be downloaded from a Microsoft Download website. Refer to the Windows Mobile Device Center documentation for instructions on installing the software.

**See also**

... *PC Synchronisation*
... *Pocket PC to Desktop PC Communication Requirements*

# Getting Help

The *Discover Mobile User Guide* PDF is installed on the desktop PC, under `C:\Program Files\Encom\Discover Mobile\Documentation`. (32-bit) or `C:\Program Files (x86)\Encom\Discover Mobile\Documentation`. (64-bit)

Help for the Discover Mobile mobile tools on both the mobile device (PPC) and the desktop can be accessed from the **DiscoverMobile>Help** menu.

## Contacting PBS

You can obtain product support for Discover by e-mail or telephone, or from your PBS reseller.

Contact details are:

| | |
|---|---|
| E-mail | *software.support@pb.com* |
| Web | *www.pbencom.com* |
| Telephone | +61 2 9437 6255 |

# 2 Best Practice with a Portable PC

In this section:


- *Running Programs and Memory*
- *Power and Battery Use*
- *Data Storage*


## Running Programs and Memory

Check the task manager on the Pocket PC (PPC) periodically to make sure that a large number of programs are not currently running. For example, if the close button (the **X** at the top-right of the screen) is used to close Discover Mobile the program is only removed from the screen but remains in memory. To exit properly, the **GO>Exit** menu should be selected. If there are many programs running in the background the Pocket PC battery will be quickly used up.

## Power and Battery Use

Choose a topic:


- *Bluetooth Manager*
- *Charging*
- *External Batteries*
- *In-Vehicle Recharging*


### Bluetooth Manager

If you are using a Bluetooth wireless GPS make sure to turn off the Bluetooth radio when it is not in use. This can be carried out using the Bluetooth Manager.

### Charging

Before venturing into the field, make sure the Pocket PC is fully charged. Make sure the device is connected to the Universal Desktop cradle or AC Adaptor when not in the field. If the device fails to turn on as a result of extended use, the Pocket PC will need to be fully charged and a normal reset performed before the charge indicator light will flash again.

### External Batteries

Invest in at least one external battery to extend the life of the Pocket PC between charging. The external battery or expansion pack is removable and rechargeable and can also be used to run PC, CF or SD cards depending on the type of expansion pack. Charging takes place when the Pocket PC is in the Desktop cradle or on the optional battery charger. For extended periods of field work it is worth investing in more than one external battery so one can be charging while the other is in use.

Alternatively, a portable 12-volt battery may be purchased relatively inexpensively which will provide a continuous power source to the Pocket PC in the field although the battery must be carried at all times.

If using external batteries with a PC device, make sure the batteries are connected properly and fully charged. If the batteries go completely flat and will not turn on, connect them to a power source and leave for 5 minutes. While connected to the power source perform a soft reset and hold down power key to turn the device back on.

### In-Vehicle Recharging

Invest in an auto adapter to use the Pocket PC while travelling or to charge in between field usage. Do the same for Bluetooth GPS units.

## Data Storage

Choose a topic:

- *Keep Data on External Storage Card*
- *Set Storage Card Directory Paths*
- *Backup Your Installation of Discover Mobile*

### Keep Data on External Storage Card

Apart from expanding the storage capacity on the Pocket PC, any data stored on a storage card does not depend on power from the device. Therefore any data recorded on the storage card will not be lost if the battery becomes completely flat. Copying some programs to the storage card can free up memory space on the Pocket PC.

The types of data you should keep on the storage card include:

- All map data (e.g., topographical, geological data, images, etc.)
- Discover Mobile licence file
- GPS point and line logs
- Named styles files
- Pick list files
- Hotlink files
- Track logs
- New tables
- Image files
- A backup copy of the Discover Mobile installation file `DiscoverMobile_Setup.CAB`

**Note** The directory structure on a storage card is limited to one level only and file names cannot be longer than 21 characters in length.

## Set Storage Card Directory Paths

By default the file paths in Discover Mobile are set to the My Documents directory in the Main Memory of the Pocket PC device not the storage card. These paths should be altered before going out to the field. To modify a directory path:

1. Select **GO>Preferences** menu and scroll to **Directories**.
2. Enter the appropriate root project directory location on the storage card for saving each of the project's tables, GPS track log files, pick list files, named styles files, hotlink files, new tables, and image files.

See *Directories* for further information.

## Backup Your Installation of Discover Mobile

It is also recommended to keep a copy of the Discover Mobile installation file on the storage card.

- Copy the `DiscoverMobile_Setup.CAB` file from the PC Discover Mobile installation directory onto the storage card. Use this file to re-install the software (see *Reinstalling Discover Mobile on the PPC*).

- Additionally, keeping the Discover Mobile licence file on the storage card will ensure that the application can be activated if re-installation is required.

# 3 Data Preparation

When preparing your data for field use with Discover Mobile it is important that you give careful consideration to optimising the structure and size and coverage of the data tables so that you obtain maximum performance on the PPC device. Although PPCs are extremely well featured and perform exceptionally well on most tasks they do not possess anywhere near the computing power (memory or the processor capacity) of the average desktop computer. It is therefore important that you keep this in mind when preparing your data for use in Discover Mobile.

When preparing data for the field, review the topics under *Supported File Types and Table Size Limits* and *Things You Can Do to Improve Performance*.

A selection of *Desktop Tools* are available to assist with the preparation of data on the desktop.

## Supported File Types and Table Size Limits

Discover Mobile cannot access non-native MapInfo Professional tables such as Excel (.XLS, .XLSX), Text (.TXT) or MS Access (.MDB, .ACCDB). These tables should be converted to native MapInfo Professional tables using the **File>Save Copy As** command in MapInfo Professional prior to use. In general, vector tables with less than 2000 objects will give acceptable performance.

**Note** Discover Mobile does not support Time or Date/Time fields.

### Raster Images

Discover Mobile can access raster data stored in .BMP, .TIFF, .JPG, .GIF or .ECW file format providing the images have an associated .TAB file (i.e. they have been opened in MapInfo Professional prior to being displayed in Discover Mobile). Discover Mobile cannot open raster images directly apart from those saved in GeoTIFF format. Ideally raster images should be kept below a couple of MB in size. It is also more efficient to produce a single low-resolution image for regional navigation and switch to smaller, high-resolution images for each project area.

**Note** Grid image formats, such as DEM or Topographic data, are not supported and must be converted to a raster image.

### ECW Files

Discover Mobile supports raster images in the ER Mapper .ECW format provided they have already been associated with a MapInfo Professional .TAB file. The MapInfo Professional .TAB file must point directly to the .ECW image file as Discover Mobile cannot open .ECW files directly.

**Note** To import an ECW into MapInfo Professional, navigate to **Discover>Import and Export>ALG\ECW\JP2000 Import**.

Raster images in .ECW format will give the best performance in Discover Mobile due to the lossless compression algorithms used.

ECW images typically have a compression of at least 10% of the file size. It is recommend to use only ECW files up to 20MB in file size.

## Things You Can Do to Improve Performance

The following suggestions will improve the performance of Discover Mobile and assist with management of your data:

- *Supported File Types and Table Size Limits*
- *Subsetting Datasets to the Project Area*
- *Convert Tables to Same Projection*
- *Set Table Default View*
- *Save Data as Geoset File*
- *Set Zoom Layering for Large Raster Images*
- *Pack Tables*
- *Create Data Entry Pick Lists*
- *Create Named Styles*

## Subsetting Datasets to the Project Area

In theory, Discover Mobile can display as much data as there is available memory on the PPC. However this is not realistic in practice. For the best map redraw performance you are encouraged to keep your datasets as small as practical for your intended Discover Mobile session. It is recommended to use subsets of data for each project area. There are three main methods that may be used to subset data:

- Use the Discover *Clip to Polygon Tool* tool to subset selected vector data layers to a defined region
- Use the Discover Mobile *Save to Registered Raster Tool* tool to capture a map window view, including gridded surfaces, to display as a backdrop
- Use the Discover *Clip Image* tool to crop an image registered in MapInfo Professional to a defined region.

### Clip to Polygon Tool

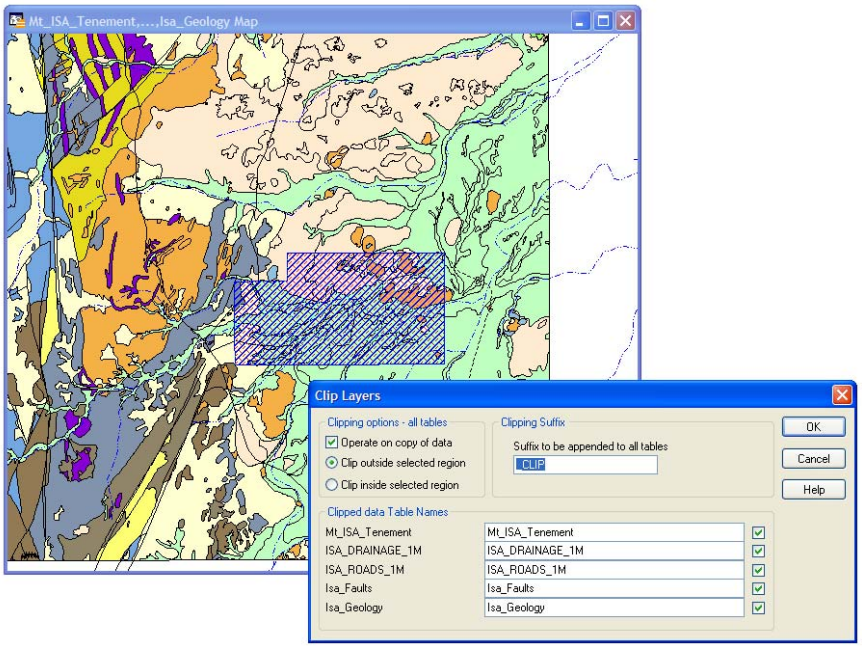
The **Clip to Polygon** tool enables any number of vector (points, lines or region) layers to be clipped to a defined region. The data layers may be clipped to a tenement boundary, a map sheet boundary or simply a freehand region created over a project area or area of interest.

---

**Note** Clip to Polygon does not clip objects contained in the Cosmetic layer. You cannot undo a Clip to Polygon operation, and for this reason we recommend that you operate on a copy of the original data. The Clip to Polygon tool does not work with raster images or thematic map layers.

---

1. Open data tables to clip into map window in MapInfo Professional.
2. Select a map object polygon/region to use as the clipping boundary. This object may be part of an existing table or digitized into the cosmetic layer.
3. Choose **Discover>Object Editing>Clip to Polygon**.



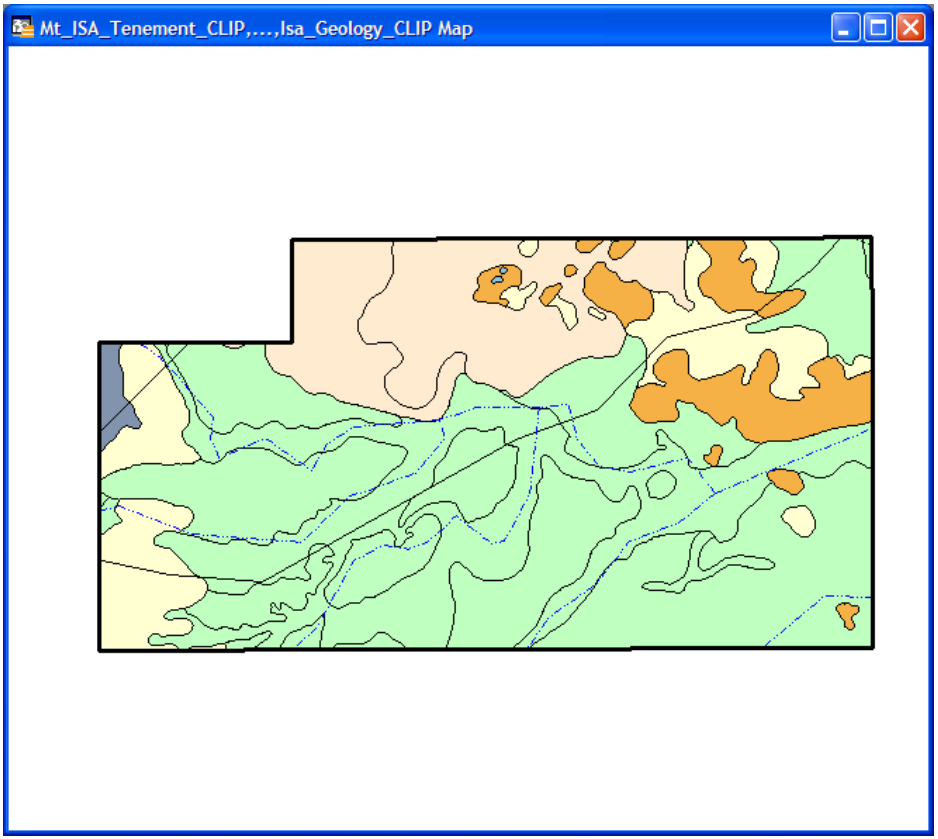

*Selected region clipping boundary and Clip Layers Dialog*

4. Choose to clip outside or inside the selected polygon boundary.

5. All tables by default are selected for clipping and new tables will be created for the clipped layers with a "_CLIP" extension.

6. Select a folder to save the new clipped data tables and click **OK**.

7. The clipped tables are automatically opened into the current map window.




*Resulting clipped layers opened in new map window*

## Save to Registered Raster Tool

The **Clip to Polygon** tool only works with creating data subsets for vector data. The **Save to Registered Raster** tool will create a registered image of the visible contents of any map window to the extent of that map windows view. It is therefore an excellent way to convert multiple layers/datasets in a map window into a single image (eg. topographical data) or convert a vector geology map into an image so it can be overlain on a magnetic or gravity image with a set transparency. It can also be used to convert and crop gridded data (e.g. a geophysical or geochemical grid) into an image to be used in Discover Mobile.

The tool also supports ECW compression and adjustable detail size, making it an excellent tool to clip and compress existing registered raster images opened in MapInfo Professional map window.

**Note** It is much better using a raster image as a background map instead of displaying the original vector layers. This is because there is only one layer to redraw and may be up to 1000 times faster than re-drawing large vector datasets. The vector data can always be loaded temporarily if attribute data needs to be queried; i.e. view assay results for selected samples or drillhole collar information.

It is opened via the **DiscoverMobile>Save Registered Raster** menu. See *Save Registered Raster* for more information on using this tool.

### Clip Image

The **Clip Image** tool allows multiple, large registered images to be clipped down to a region more appropriate for use within Discover Mobile (e.g. clipping a regional air photo down to the extent of a prospect). It is recommended that if working over a large images area, clip the image to a series of smaller work areas, and then open and close these as appropriate within Discover Mobile (therefore decreasing memory usage and increasing display redraw speeds.

1. Open the registered source image into a MapInfo Professional map window.

2. In the same mapper, create a polygon region to clip the image. This can be a polygon drawn into the cosmetic layer and selected. Alternatively a table containing a single table could be used (such as a tenement boundary); if the table contains multiple polygons, select the polygon (e.g. tenement) of interest.

3. Open the **Discover>Images** menu, and select **Clip Image**. Ensure that the correct image is selected in the pull-down list at the top of the dialog. Enable the **Clip Outside Polygon** option, and set the **Polygon Table** to clip against as either *Selection* or the polygon table name.

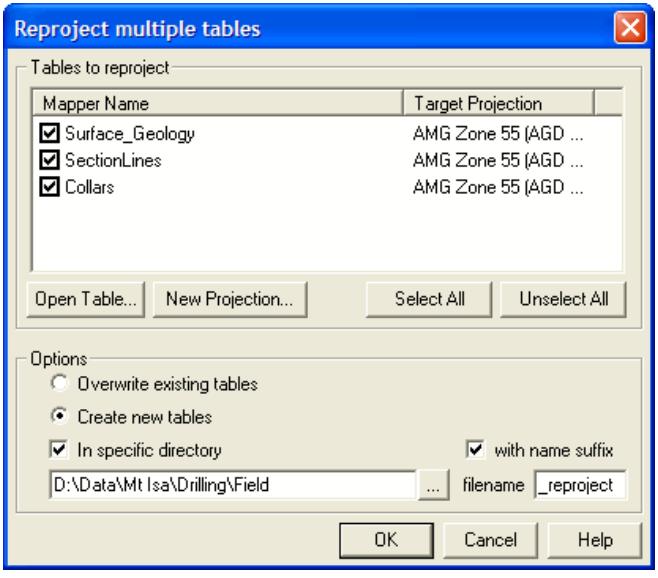
4. Press **OK**. A new cropped image will be created, named after the source image file with a '_clipped' suffix.

## Convert Tables to Same Projection

Like MapInfo Professional, Discover Mobile can display multiple tables with different map projections in a single map window. While this feature can be very useful it does come at some performance cost. In order to display map objects with different projections in the same map window Discover Mobile must perform “on-the-fly” coordinate transformations. This requires significant processor performance and can slow down a map redraw by up to 100%. To ensure the best map redraw performance make sure that all your map tables share a common projection.

**To convert a number of vector tables to the same projection:**

1. In MapInfo Professional, select **Discover>Table Utilities>Multi-Table Reproject**.




2. Check the box next to the tables to re-project or choose **Select All**.
3. Press **New Projection** and select a projection from the pull-down lists.
4. Choose to **Overwrite existing tables** or **Create new tables**.
5. Type a directory location.
6. Choose to annotate new tables with name suffix.
7. Click **OK** to create the newly projected tables.

### To reproject an image into a new projection:

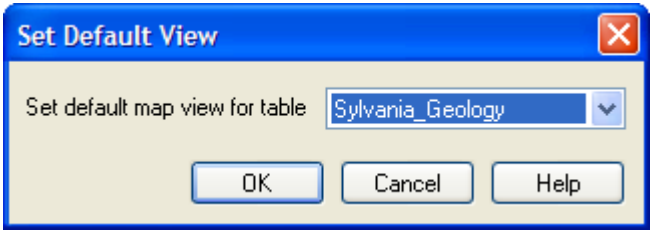
(Preferably the same projection as the vector data.)

1. Ensure the registered image is open within MapInfo Professional.
2. Open **Discover>Images** menu, and select **Reproject Image**.
3. Ensure that the correct source image is selected in the top pull-down list.
4. Use the Browse button to set the **New projection**.
5. Browse for an output directory location and specify a new image name.
6. Click **OK** to create the new reprojected image.

## Set Table Default View

You can improve the speed at which Discover Mobile opens and displays your data by changing the default table view.

1. Open a table into a map window in MapInfo Professional.
2. Set the required map centre and zoom level for the table in the map window.
3. Select **Discover>Map Window>Set Default Table View**.
4. Choose the table from the pull-down list.




5. Click **OK** to save the default table view.

## Save Data as Geoset File

A Geoset file is similar to the MapInfo Professional Workspace (.WOR) file. Discover Mobile uses a Geoset (.GST) to record information about the current map window zoom level, the list of open layers, whether zoom layering or style override has been set for a particular layer etc. Discover Mobile cannot open a MapInfo Professional Workspace file.

1. Open required tables into a map window in MapInfo Professional
2. Set the map window zoom level so that it is quite small and turn on zoom layering function (via the Layer control dialog) for any layers which contain a lot of data or for large raster images.
3. Select **Tools>Tool Manager** and load the **MapX Geoset** utility.
4. Select **Tools>MapX Geoset Utility>Save MapX Geoset As** and type a name and location for the new Geoset.
5. Copy the data tables and geoset file to Discover Mobile.

**Note**

A geoset saves information about a single map window only not a multi-window environment like a workspace. All the tables referenced in a geoset must be located in the same directory as the geoset file in Discover Mobile. Map labels are not saved as part of a geoset.

### Save Geoset in Discover Mobile

Saving the current work session within Discover Mobile as a Geoset allows a rapid restoration of the session the next time the application is opened. See *Saving and Restoring Your Workspace* for further information.

## Set Zoom Layering for Large Raster Images

Turning off the display of complex or detailed map layers when you zoom out and move around the map window will significantly improve map redraw speed and remove unnecessary detail from the map display at larger zoom levels. This can be applied using the zoom layering function within Discover Mobile. See *Layer and Object Visibility* for more information on this topic.

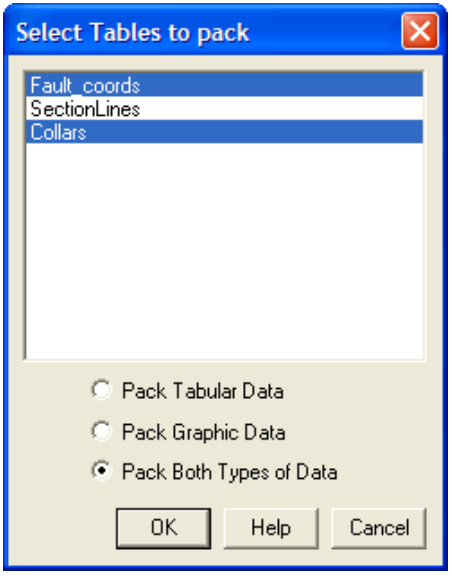
## Pack Tables

Although map objects or records appear as though they have been removed from a MapInfo Professional table when they have been deleted, the storage space they occupied is not removed until a table is packed. This tool is especially useful for tables created from external databases and must be done prior to copying tables to the Pocket PC device.

1. Select **Discover>Table Utilities>Multi-Pack**.

2. Choose the tables to pack from the list available command to pack multiple tables at the same time.

3. Pack both graphical and tabular data.




4. Click **OK**

## Create Data Entry Pick Lists

The use of Pick Lists (e.g. look-up tables of predefined rock or sample codes) within Discover Mobile can greatly increase the efficiency and speed of data entry, and minimize data entry errors. See *Picklist Editor* for more information on creating and using pick lists.

### Create Named Styles

The ability to apply an existing style to a new object can greatly simplify the display window in Discover Mobile, particularly when dealing with large numbers of the same object type (eg points) with differing attributes (eg rock-chips, soil and lag samples). Creating and applying Named Styles to objects allows graphical differentiation, minimizing duplication of sampling. See *Name Style Editor* for more information.

Named Styles can also be configured so that each style is automatically placed into pre-linked table, with style (rather than table) specific Quick Pick options.

## Desktop Tools

Included with Discover Mobile are a number of desktop tools to be used in conjunction with MapInfo Professional. These can auto-load with Discover, otherwise they can be accessed by navigating to **Tools>Run MapBasic Program** and browse to the following folder:

`C:\Program Files\Encom\Discover Mobile` (32-bit) or
`C:\Program Files (x86)\Encom\Discover Mobile` (64-bit)

Select the file `DiscMobile.MBX` and click **Open**. A new menu item called **Discover Mobile** should then appear on the MapInfo Professional menu bar.

You can add this tool to the **Tools>Tool Manager** to set it to permanently auto-load when MapInfo Professional is opened.

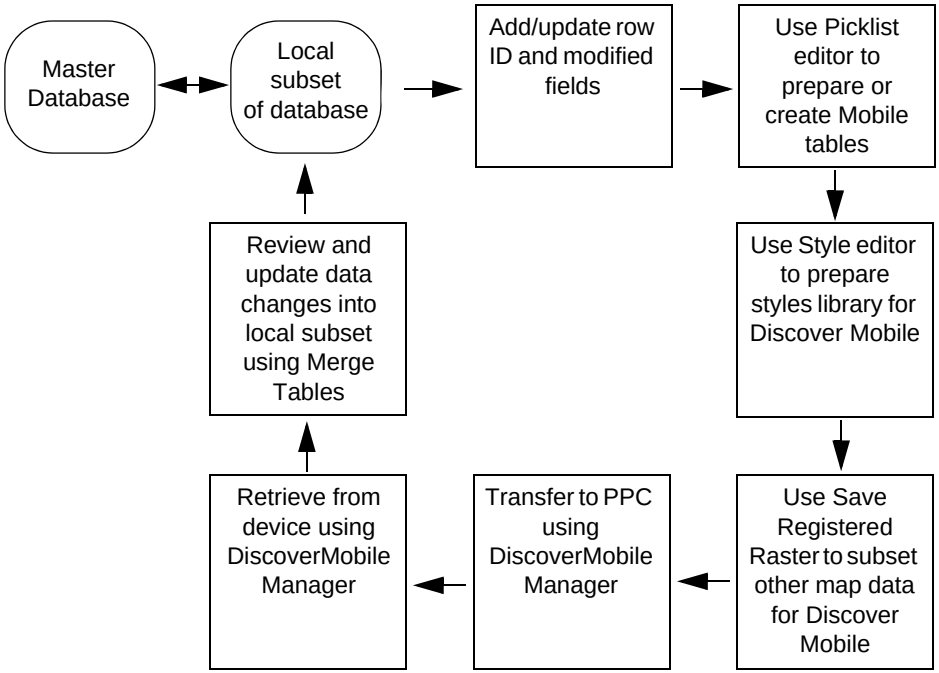
The tools available from this menu are:

- *DiscoverMobile Manager*
- *Convert Hotlinks*
- *Name Style Editor*
- *Range Style Editor*
- *Picklist Editor*
- *Table Merge*
- *Save Registered Raster*

For information on the steps involved in preparing and transferring data from the desktop to the mobile device, see *Discover Mobile Workflow*.

## Discover Mobile Workflow

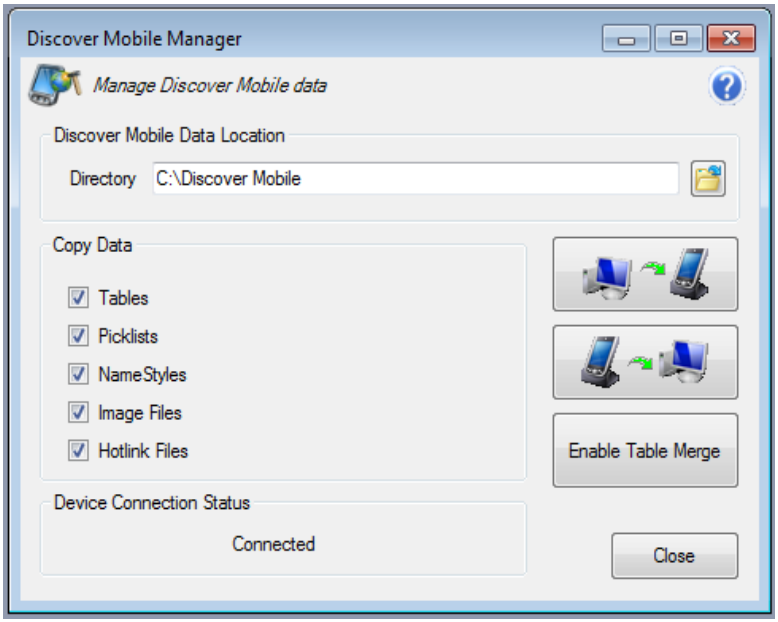
When transferring data to and from a mobile device and modifying the data over a number of sessions, it is important that you follow a good workflow procedure to ensure data is efficiently updated and prepared for use in Discover Mobile.




When you are preparing your data on the desktop, you should collect all the relevant files and place them in your Project Directory (set in the Discover Mobile *DiscoverMobile Manager* tool), in the `\Encom_DM_Tables` directory.

Similarly once you have retrieved data from the device via the tool, the modified and new Discover Mobile data tables will be in the `Encom_DM_Tables_WM` directory which will need to be manually updated to the `\Encom_DM_Tables` copy.

## DiscoverMobile Manager




The first step in using the desktop tools is to specify a directory to store and copy data for Tables, Picklists, Name Styles, Image Files, and Hotlink Files. The specified directory will be used by the Style Editor, Picklist Editor, Range Style Editor, and Table Merge tools. Navigate to **DiscoverMobile>DiscoverMobile Manager** and browse to a folder on your local disk or network drive where the mobile data is located, e.g. `C:\ProgramData\Encom\Discover Mobile Data`.

You can then do the following (see *Discover Mobile Workflow*):

- *Specify Data to Transfer*
- *Preparing Tables for Mobile Device*
- *Transferring Data*
- *Updating with New Device Data*
- *Connection Status*

### Specify Data to Transfer

Specify the data types which are to be copied to and from the mobile device. Uncheck any data types which are not required to be copied.

The options include:

Tables
Picklists
NameStyles
Images
Hotlinks

When a directory has been specified a series of folders are created in the root directory where the data resides, these are called:

```
Encom_DM_Tables_WM
Encom_DM_Picklists
Encom_DM_Namestyles
Encom_DM_Images
Encom_DM_Hotlinks
```

**Note** To specify the directories on the mobile device where the data is to be copied, navigate to **GO>Preferences>Directories**. By default these will be set to `\My Documents`, it is advisable to re-path this to a removable disk in case of a crash or hard reset which will delete these files.

### Preparing Tables for Mobile Device

Make sure any tables or files you have prepared for use on the mobile device are placed in the Project Directory root folder.

Before transferring your data to the device, click on the **Enable Table Marge** button. This will perform a check on all tables in that project directory that will be copied to the device.

Any tables which are fund not compatible for use with the Table Merge, to preview and merge modifications back to the desktop tables, will be listed and you should select any tables which you are going to modify on the device. Click OK and they will be updated to be compatible with the **Table Merge** tool.

### Transferring Data

Transferring data to and from the computer and mobile device is a matter of selecting the appropriate method of transfer.

To transfer data from the local or network disk, click the **Copy data from PC to device** button.

To transfer data from the mobile device click the **Copy data from device to PC** button.

### Updating with New Device Data

When you transfer from device to the PC all the tables from the Device project directory will be placed in `Encom_DM_Tables_WM`. Other files—picklists, namedstyles, images, and hotlinks folders—will all be placed in the same directory overwriting the existing copies, updating them with any modification to these performed in Discover Mobile.

With the Tables directory, however, you will then need to update your original tables in the project root directory, with the data either with the **Table Merge** tool or a manual update with a file copy and over-write.

**Note** Make sure to update your original table once you have retrieved the device data. Failure to do so may result in data loss as device and desktop data is overwritten during the transfer.

### Connection Status

The status of the connection from the PC to mobile device to displayed at the bottom of the dialog. Data can only be transferred when the PC and mobile device are correctly connected.

## Convert Hotlinks

Discover Mobile and MapInfo Professional both support hotlinks from a Tables fields to documents and resources stored on the computer. When moving a Table from Discover Mobile back to the desktop MapInfo Professional the hotlink file paths can be edited to convert the folder locations of the linked files.

**To convert hotlinks in a table:**

1. Copy the .TAB file and linked files to the preferred location on your desktop computer.

2. From the **DiscoverMobile** menu select the **Convert Hotlinks** item. In the Discover Mobile Hotlink Converter dialog select the table which contains the hotlinks you wish to remap and then in the fields to check list box select the column which contains the link path.

3. Under **Options**, check the box **Change link directory path to:** and enter the file path or browse to the location of your hotlink files.

4. If you have linked Pocket Word or Excel files then leave the Convert extensions options ticked and click OK to complete the re-link function.

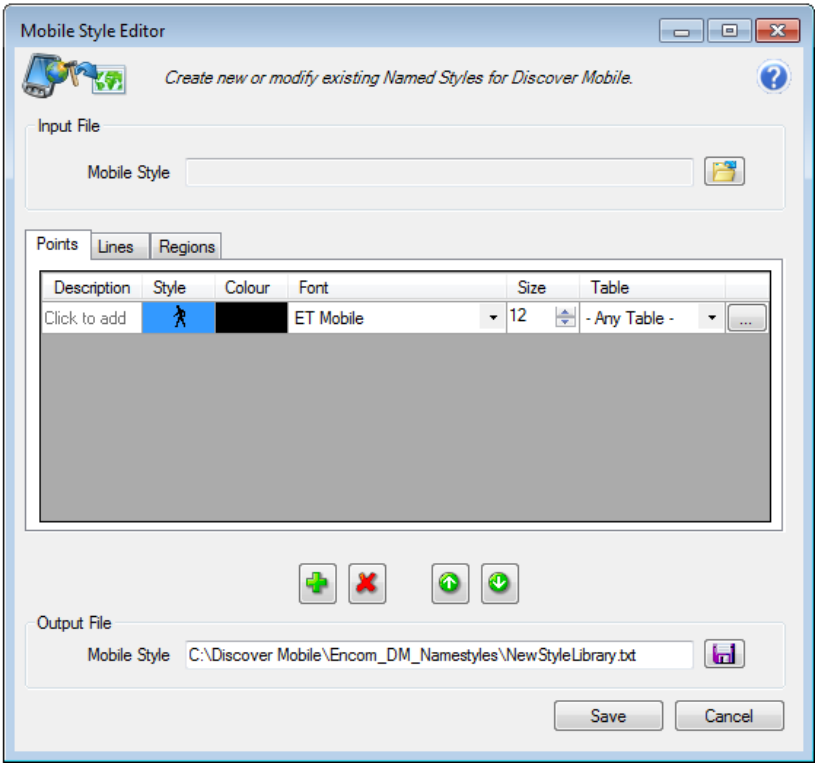
To activate the new hotlinks in MapInfo Professional go to the MapInfo Professional Layer control and select the layer which contains the hotlinks. Click the **HotLink** button. Select the field which contains the file path and check the appropriate options from the bottom of the dialog. Click **OK** to finish the setup process. To activate a Hotlink, click on the lightning bolt icon and then click on the object to bring up the linked file

## Name Style Editor

The Name Style Editor facilities the creation and management of Named Styles for Discover Mobile from a desktop interface. Named Styles enable the user to create a style library for point, line and region objects. Named styles allow the textural capture of data to be attributed to user defined object styles, this enables streamlined data capture and validation.

Named Styles can be directly created in Discover Mobile; however, the Desktop interface provides a more functional user interface.

The directory of the Named Styles is specified by the *DiscoverMobile Manager* tool. Alternatively, the directory can be manually redirected from the **Output File** option.




*Mobile Style Editor dialog*

**Note** Any tables, fields and fonts referenced by the Style library must be opened in Mapinfo Professional prior to opening the library.

## Create Named Style

Named Styles can be created from one of two methods, from an existing style library or from a blank template.

To create a Named Style from an existing file, click the **Open Mobile style** button and select either an existing Named Style (*.TXT). The text file will need to conform to a particular structure, based on a previously created Named Style.

To create a new Named Style select either Point, Line or Region object type from the Mobile Style Editor dialog. Alternately, styles can be created for all map object types.

To create a series of Named Styles, type the attribute into the **Description** text box and define the **Style**, **Foreground** and **Background** definitions.

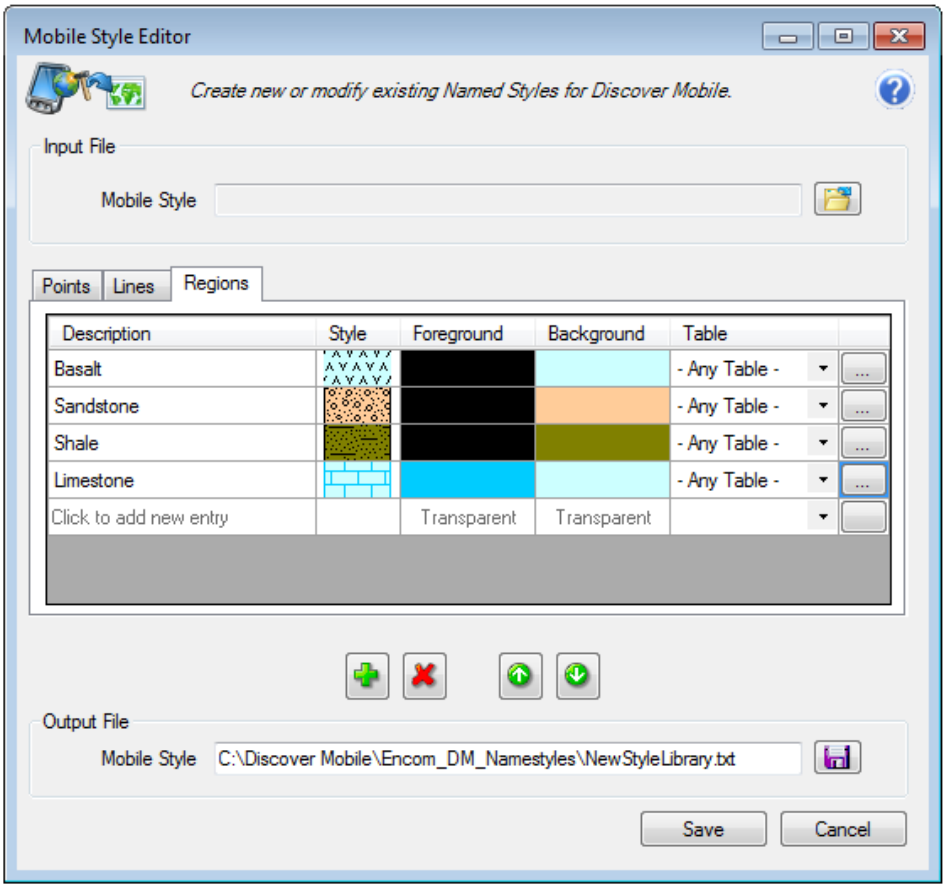
To create a new style definition click the **New Style** button, this will insert a new record for style definition.

To delete a style definition, highlight the designated field and click the **Delete Style** button.

To reorder the current Named Style, highlight the designated field and use either the **Move Up** or **Move Down** button.

**Note**

To save a Description to the table when a style is applied, an auto-pick field can be set for the Table and Field. See *Linking a Style to Tables and Setting Auto-fields* .




*Regions Named Style definition*

### Linking a Style to Tables and Setting Auto-fields

Optionally, a specific table can be selected for each style to link to. The table you wish to link to has to be currently opened in MapInfo Professional to appear in the selectable list.

Setting this allows styles to be applied to the specified table when using a Named Style for a new object within DiscoverMobile.

In addition, Auto-fields can be set for the table by clicking the adjacent button next to the linked table name. This allows GPS derived fields to be set, which are also available within a picklist.

This is a powerful method to apply auto-field picklists to populate a table attribute based on the Named Style selected for the object. For example, you could use the Set Constant Value to assign one attribute field with the same name as the Named Styles – such that one you select “Granite” named style for the table, the Rock_Type field would be automatically populated with “Granite”. You also could do other conditional auto-fields, such as set a field to “Object Area” for Region Styles, but not set this for Point Styles.

**Note** Not setting the Optional columns (**Capture Table** and **Auto-Field** options) means that the set styles are non-table specific; they will simply be captured to the current insertion layer in Discover Mobile, regardless of object type. The only Auto-Field options that will be applied are those that have been set to the table itself using the **Picklist Editor**.

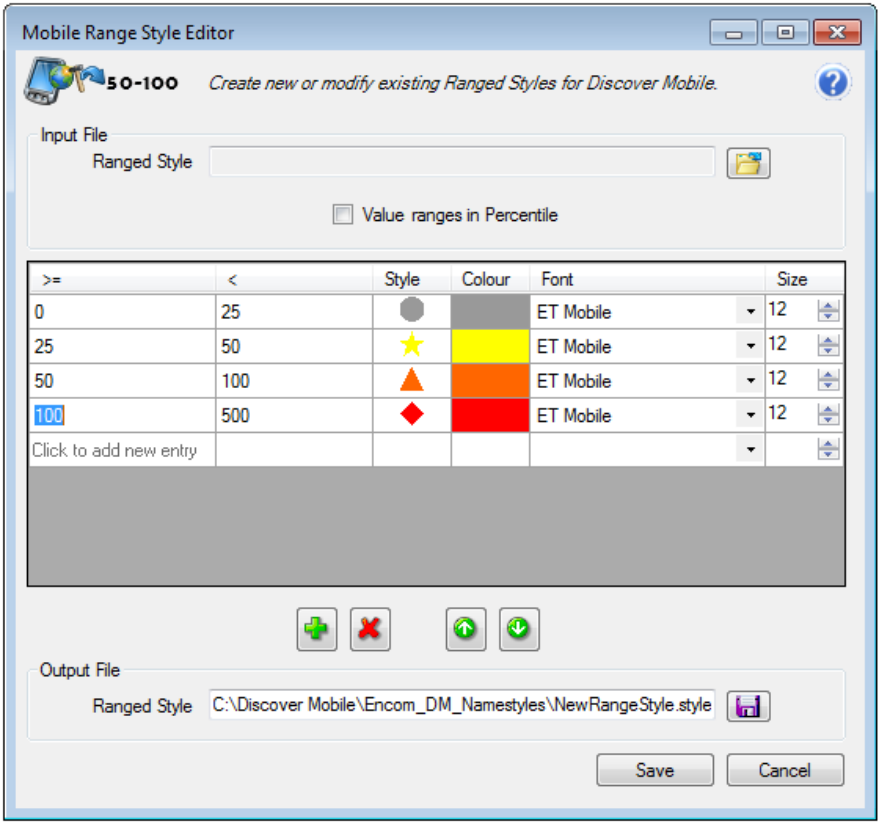
### Saving Named Style

When all the correct Named Styles have been defined, browse to the correct Output Style Library directory, and click **Save**.

## Range Style Editor

The Range Style Editor allows the creation and editing of Range Styles for Discover Mobile from the desktop interface. This functionality is similar to the Point Classification tool in Discover's Geochem module. Range Styles allows the user to auto-classify the XRF data points in real time, or apply the point style permanently to any point data table opened in Discover Mobile.

For example, you could collect a series of data point measurements, and as an alternative to thematically mapping them, you could apply a pre-created Range Style for custom From-To ranges of the data. This is applied and saved in the table.




*Range Style Editor*

## Create Range Style

Range Styles can be created from one of two methods: from an existing range style library or from a blank template.

To create a series of range styles, type the lower bound into the >= column, and the upper bound for the range into the < column.

The values can either be absolute numbers. Alternatively, select the **Value ranges in percentile** option, and the range value will then be percentiles, and must be between 0–100 percentile. Note that percentile differ from percentage, and percentile reflect the number of observations that fall within the range. For example, if you have 10 range and 10 sample points, there will be one point in each percentile range, regardless of the measured data values and data range.

Left click in each of the other columns to define the Font file, Point symbol Style, colour and symbol size.

To create a Range Style from an existing file, click the Open existing range style and an existing Named Style (*.styles). The text file will need to conform to a particular structure; based on a previously created Named Style.

To create a new style definition click the **New Style** button, this will insert a new record for style definition.

To delete a style definition, highlight the designated field and click the **Delete Style** button.

To reorder the current Named Style, highlight the designated field and use either the **Move Up** or **Move Down** button.

## Picklist Editor

The Pick Editor facilitates the creation and management of Picklists for Discover Mobile from a desktop interface. Picklists are fully customisable validation lists used when digitizing and attributing objects in Discover Mobile. Picklists streamline the repetitive data entry tasks and ensure consistent valid data entry. Traditionally Picklist can be created directly in Discover Mobile or from a text editor interface (see Picklists section in Attributing Field Data chapter), the Picklist Editor provides a more functional user interface.

The Picklist Editor tool is separated into two sections:

- The **Table Options** controls the creation of tables and selection of table for creating Picklists from, as well as renaming tables and Picklists. The directory of the Picklists and new tables are specified by the Data Manager tool.
- The **Table Fields** allows the customisation of table structures and also the defining of Picklists.

**Note**

To edit an existing picklist file, you need to set the current Working directory to the appropriate folder containing the picklists, and open the associated Tables. Select the corresponding table and you will then be able to edit the picklists.

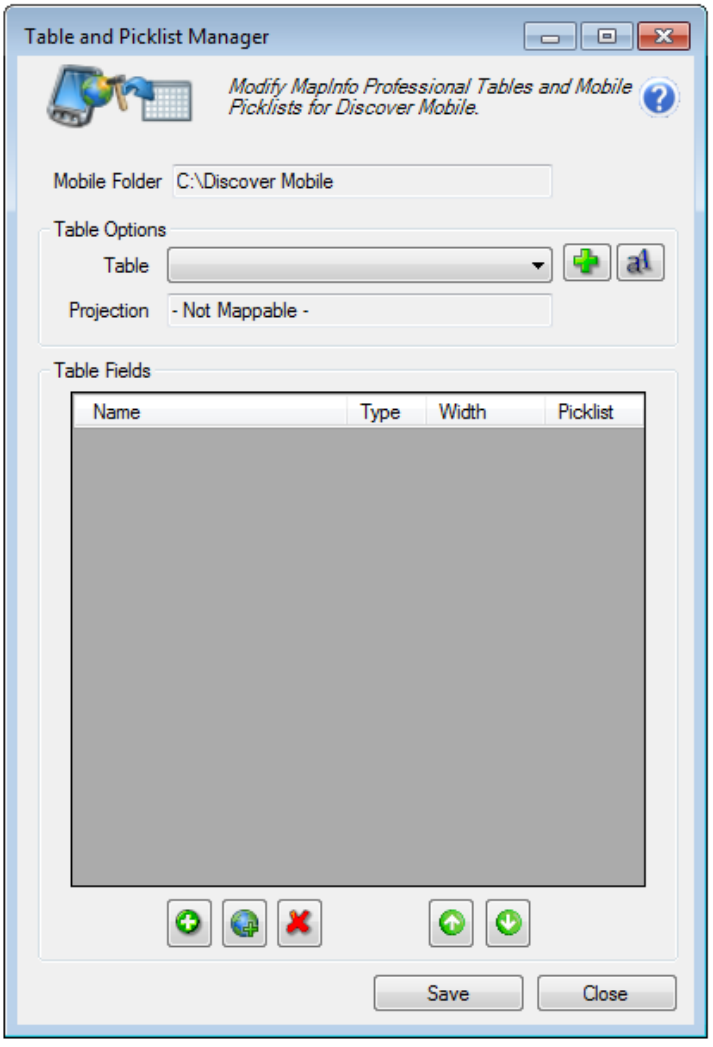


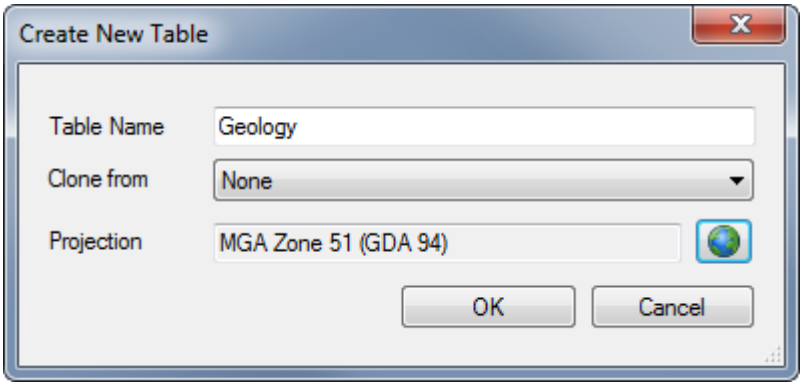

*Table and Picklist Manager dialog*

## Create Table

The first step in creating a Picklist is to either have an existing MapInfo Professional table for which the Picklist will be utilised or to create MapInfo Professional table.

If you select an existing open table from the drop down list, it will be automatically copied to the DiscoverMobile working directory, and a prompt displayed to enter the name for the DiscoverMobile copy. The original table will be closed.

To create a table click the **Create** button and type in a **Table Name** into the **Create New Table** dialog, specify a projection for the new table, and click **OK**. This will create a table with two fields called ID (Integer) and Modified (Logical).




If desired the structure of another MapInfo Professional table can be duplicated by selecting the table from the **Clone from** dropdown.

**Note**

If a table contains unsupported fields types for Discover Mobile such as Time and Date/Time a warning message will appear and omit these fields in the DiscoverMobile Table directory copy.

### Modify Table Structure

Numerous controls are provided to modify the structure of a MapInfo Professional Table; reordering, adding fields, changing field types, field widths and field name.

To reorder the current table field highlight the designated field and use either the **Move Up** or **Move Down** button.

To add another field into the table structure click the **Add** button and specify the field name, type and width (if required).

If GPS derived data needs to be recorded the **Special Fields** button allows the addition of fields which will be automatically populated which the respective data type. Examples of this include Map_X, Map_Y, Fix_Quality and FixNumSat.

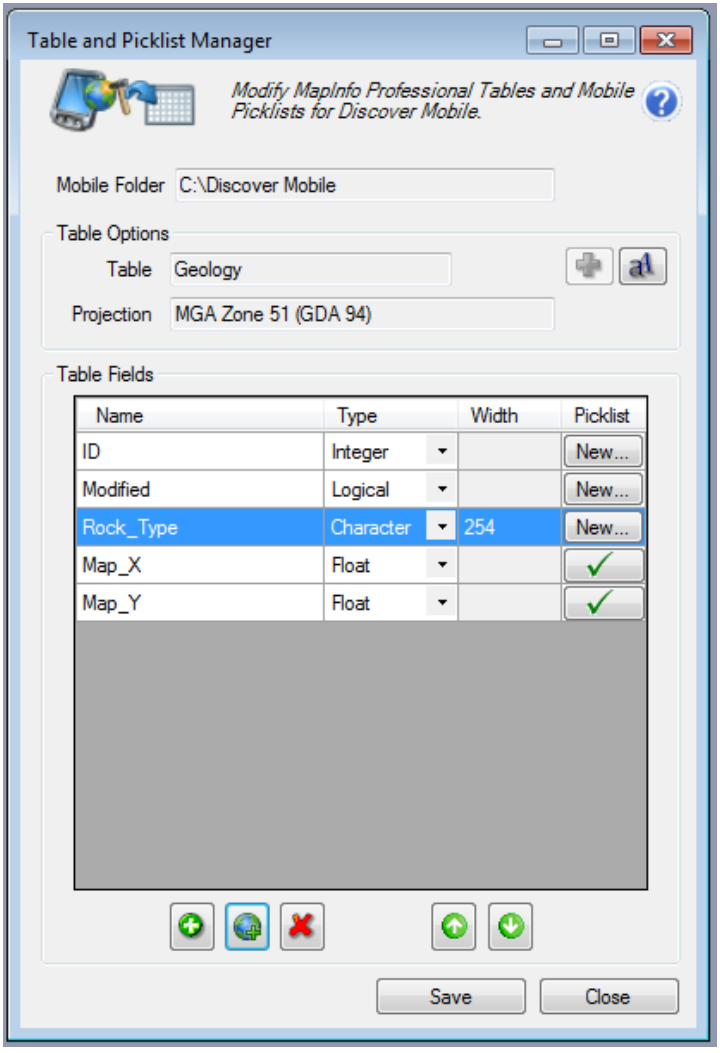
To delete a table field highlight the designated field and click the **Delete** button.

## Picklist Field Types

**New** indicates no Picklist has been defined for this field table.

A tick indicates this filed is a special field which will be automatically populated from the mobile GPS data.

**Edit** indicates a Picklist has been defined for this field table.




*New table definition with special fields*

## Create Picklist

Once all of the table fields have been defined Picklists can be created for the allocated fields.

To create a Picklist click on the **New** button next to the field you wish to create the Picklist.

Several controls are available to create Picklists these include adding Picklist items, reordering and importing.

To reorder the current Picklist highlight the designated item and use either the **Move Up** or **Move Down** buttons.

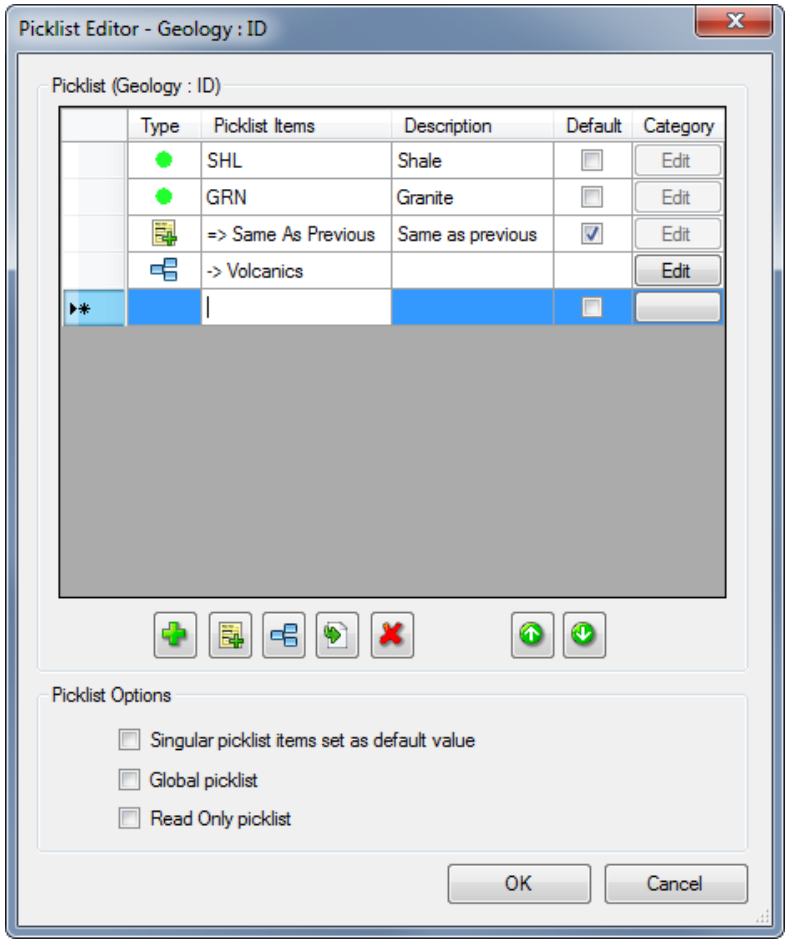
To add another item into the Picklist click the **Add** button and specify the item name.

If GPS-derived data needs to be recorded, the **Special Item** button allows the addition of items which will be automatically populated which the respective data type. Examples of this include Map_X, Map_Y, Fix_Quality and FixNumSat.

Picklist item can be further subdivided into Categories, these allow a Picklist item to have subitems. An example of this would be a rock type Picklist, within the Picklist a category may be called volcanic, this category may contain items such as tuff, rhyolite, basalt etc.

If a validation or value list is available in either *.CSV or *.TXT format the Picklist importer can import and automatically create a Picklist.

Picklist items can be deleted by clicking the **Delete** button.




*Example Picklist with associated Category*

### Editing a Category

To edit the contents in a category, click on the **Edit** button in the category column of the picklist editor. Further Sub-Categories can be added within each category.

### Assign Default Picklist Value

Default Picklist behaviour can be controlled by numerous options on the dialog.

If only one item exists, you can enforce this value to be the default by either selecting the **Default** check box next to the item or select the **Singular picklist items set as default value** check box.

**Note** If only one default **Special Items** GPS auto-field is set in a pick list, it is identical to adding a **Special Field** to the table structure.

If several Picklist items are present the default value can be assigned by checking the **Default** check box next to the item.

**Note** A Category or a Category's contents cannot be set to a default.

#### Make Picklist Read-Only

To ensure the integrity of the Picklist, select the **Read only picklist** check box.

### Picklist Format

The pick list file name must conform to one of the following formats:

- `TableName_FieldName.txt` – this naming convention means that the pick list file will only be available for the field name in the specified table name. For example, if your table is called Geology and the field you want to use the pick list with is called Lithology, then you would give the pick list the name `Geology_Lithology.txt`. This is the default convention for pick list files which are automatically created in Discover Mobile.

- `FieldName.txt` – this naming convention means that the pick list file will be available for all tables which contain the specified field name. For example if you call your pick list `Comments.txt` then that pick list will be available for all tables which contain a field called Comments. This Picklist convention is referred to as a global Picklist.

To create a global Picklist select the **Global picklist** check box. It will be available globally for any table with the matching field name..

### Rename Picklist and Table

To rename a MapInfo Professional Table and associated Picklists click the **Rename** button.

### Saving Table and Picklists

When all the table fields have been defined and Picklists created click the **Save** button. You will be prompted to add an ID and Modified field, if they do not exist in the table, which are required for Discover Mobile and the ID will be populated with the row number.

## Table Merge

The Table Merge tool enables modifications performed on a copy of a MapInfo Professional table on a single Discover Mobile device to be updated into the un-changed original copy residing on a local disk.

The advantage of this tool over a file overwrite, is it allows a user to select only certain modifications and preview any changes before the original table is updated with the changes.

The most useful application of this tool is for when a table is modified on a Discover Mobile device in a number of periods. After each period, the user can retrieve and analyse a summary of the updates performed on the table, and select which one to accept. For example, a user can prevent any records that had been deleted from being lost in the original table.

It is important that the assumptions of the tool are followed including:

- Original/Output Table had a field called “Modified” of Boolean type
- Original/Output Table had a field called “ID” of Integer type
- The ID field was populated sequentially with the row number, with no gaps.
- Original/Output table has been unchanged during the period it was used on the device
- Only a single copy of the table has been modified
- The copy of the table has not been packed e.g. Do not Save a second copy of the mobile copy
- The copy of the table has only been modified within Discover Mobile
- The structure of either table has not changed

### Input Table

Select the table from the mobile device (downloaded previously) to merge the changes into the original table.

### Output Table

Select the original and un-modified copy of the table from the local disk to perform the merge action.

### Merge Actions

The merge actions can be modified by either selecting or deselecting the appropriate action.

The following merge actions are available:

- **Append New Rows**

  The Input and Output table ID fields are compared, if an ID record doesn't exist in the Output table it will be appended to the Output table. Note if there is multiple ID values they will be overwritten and only the last one used.

- **Update Changed Field Values**

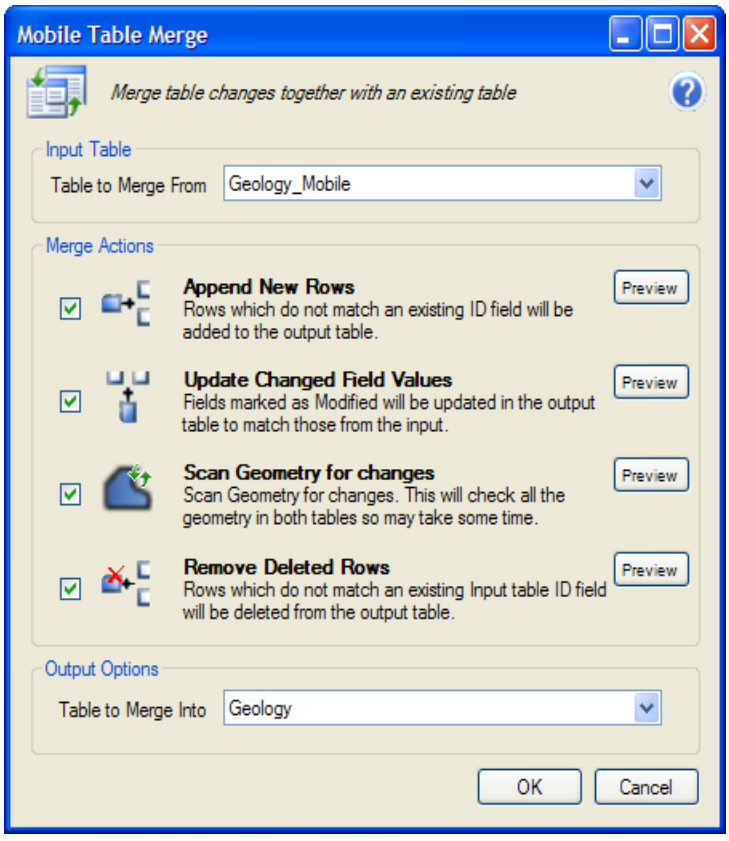
  The Input and Output table Modified fields are compared, if a Modified record is flagged with a T this will indicate a modification and this record will be changed in the Output table.

- **Scan Geometry for Changes**

  The geometry of the Input and Output tables are compared using the ID field as the join. If the maps object geometry is modified from the Input table this is reflected in the Output table, only records with the same ID will be modified.

- **Remove Deleted Rows**

  The Input and Output table ID fields are compared, if an ID record doesn't exist in the Input table it will be deleted from the Output table.



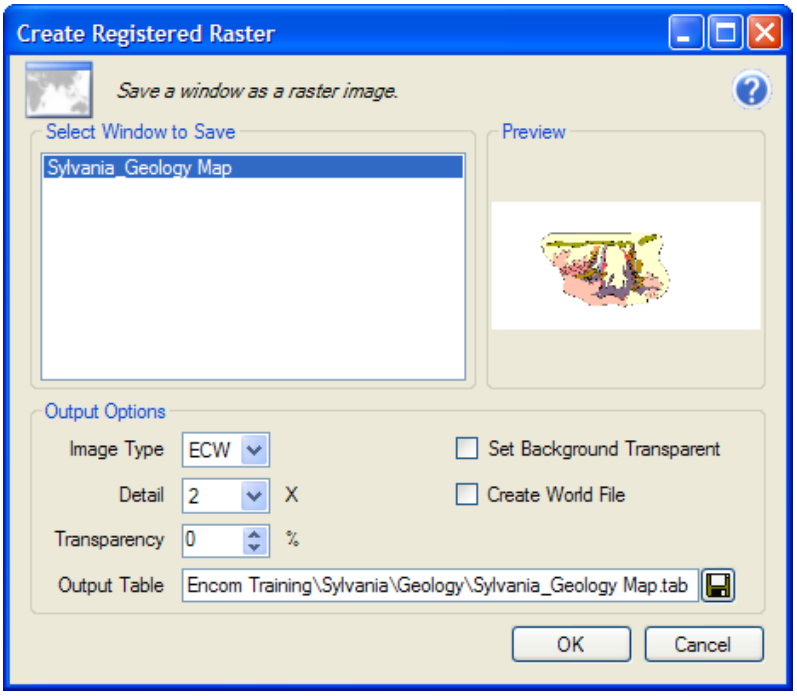

## Save Registered Raster

The Save Registered Raster tool will convert the select map window view into a raster image in a number of compressed formats, including ECW, at the selected level of detail and resolution.

To convert any data into a registered raster, open a new map window in MapInfo Professional that contains the required tables or make an existing map window the active window

1. Set the window dimensions and scale so the map window contains the information to save. Whatever is visible within the map window will be saved as the raster image.

2. Select the menu **DiscoverMobile>Save to Registered Raster** option to display the Create Registered Raster dialog:




3. Select the window you to wish to convert to a raster image from the **Select Window to Save** list.

4. Select the raster format from the **Image Type** drop down list. Available formats include .ECW, .PNG, .BMP, .JPEG, .TIF, .GEOTIFF (note though that Discover Mobile does not support .PNG). For best compression, save the window as an ECW.

5. Use the **Detail** drop-down list to increase the level of detail in the image from the fixed screen resolution (96 dpi). By default Discover will save an image which is double (2x) the size (width and height) of the map window on the screen.

6. Enter a value into the **Image Transparency** window to apply a transparency to the entire image (enter 0% for an opaque image).

7. Check the **Set background transparent** box to change the white background default.

8. Check the **Create World File** box to create an associated world file for the image which contains the registration information – this is useful for opening in programs without using the TAB file.

9. Click OK for the conversion to raster image to proceed.

# 4 Getting Started

The Discover Mobile interface is easy to understand and simple to use, so the best way to learn how to use Discover Mobile is to start using it. For a quick introduction to starting and using Discover Mobile see:

- *Starting Discover Mobile*
- *The User Interface*
- *Interacting with the Software*
- *Data Formats*
- *Map Window*
- *Saving and Restoring Your Workspace*

## Starting Discover Mobile

Start your Pocket PC device and check that you have sufficient battery power for your intended session. It is important that the battery has sufficient charge as most devices which connect to the PPC, such as GPS receivers can significantly reduce the operating time of the onboard battery. If you intend to use your PPC with an integrated GPS receiver you are strongly advised to carry or use an external or backup battery. This will help extend the effective operating time of the device and minimise the possibility of any data loss.

**To start Discover Mobile:**

- Tap the **Start** menu and then the **Discover Mobile** menu item.

If the Discover Mobile menu is not shown on the Start menu then:

- Tap the **Programs** menu and tap the **Discover Mobile** icon.

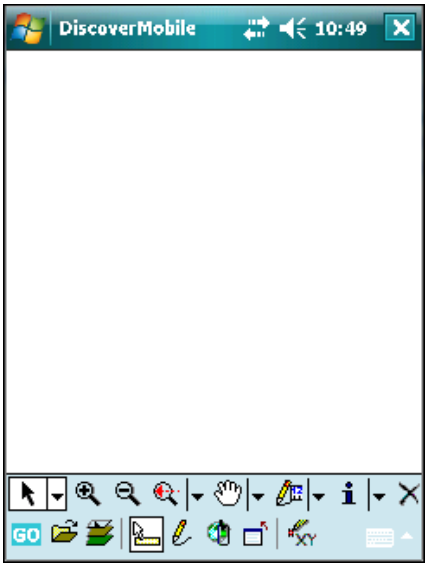
*Select the Start>Discover Mobile menu item or the Start>Programs>Discover Mobile icon*

If the Discover Mobile icon is not visible among the installed programs, check to make sure the software is properly installed. See *Installing Discover Mobile* for further information.

**Note**

To ensure that Discover Mobile always appears on the **Start Menu**, browse to **Start>Settings>Menus**, and in the following list, tick/enable Discover Mobile. Tap **OK**. Note that any applications visible under the **Start Menu** will not be listed in the **Programs** display.

When Discover Mobile starts, the main screen and main toolbar are displayed.




*Discover Mobile main screen and main toolbar*

## The User Interface

The Discover Mobile user interface provides a simple and intuitive method for interacting and working with your mapping data. Most commonly used tasks can be directly accessed via the shortcut button toolbars located along the bottom of the screen. There is a complete menu system accessible via the GO menu in the lower left corner of the screen. This menu provides access to all shortcut button functions as well as a number of additional functions.

The Discover Mobile interface includes three user-controllable toolbars plus the *Main Toolbar*. The three controllable toolbars are accessed via the main toolbar and can be turned on or off by tapping the toggle buttons. The main toolbar is located at the bottom of the Discover Mobile display and is always visible. The user-controllable toolbars include:

- *Select/View Toolbar*
- *Draw/Edit Toolbar*
- *GPS Toolbar*

All operations performed by the toolbar buttons, plus a number of additional functions, can be accessed from the GO menu. For more information, see *Using the GO Menu* system.

# Interacting with the Software

Interaction with the Discover Mobile software is similar to most PPC applications. The user interacts with the software using a handheld stylus. The stylus is the primary input method and is used throughout the software for pointing, selecting and data or text entry. The stylus is generally used to tap or tap and drag an item, such as when making a selection, editing text or objects, manipulating a list or drawing a polyline or polygon. A tap is simply the act of gently touching the display screen surface with the plastic stylus (never use a conventional writing pen). To tap and drag, place the stylus gently on the screen and drag it across to the desired position while maintaining contact with the display surface.

Applying, cancelling, and closing application dialogs on a PPC can be slightly different to a desktop computer. Usually screen interaction is performed by one of two methods:

- Tapping on a displayed button (labelled with text such as OK, Apply or Cancel) or,
- Tapping on the OK button in the top right corner of the screen. Most dialogs will have an OK button in the top right of the screen (located in the Title bar). Some windows may not have a separate Cancel button and rely completely on the OK button to dismiss the window.

The Discover Mobile software has been especially designed for users familiar with MapInfo Professional. Existing MapInfo Professional users will find many similarities between the Discover Mobile interface and the desktop MapInfo Professional application.

# Data Formats

Discover Mobile reads and writes native MapInfo Professional Tab files and can access raster data stored in .BMP, .TIFF, .JPG, .GIF or .ECW file formats providing the images have an associated .TAB file. Discover Mobile cannot directly open files which do not have .TAB files already associated with them. The only exception to this is raster images saved in GeoTIFF format. Any Tab files which reference non-native MapInfo Professional data such as Excel (.XLS), Text (.TXT) or MS Access (.MDB) files cannot be opened in Discover Mobile. These non-native data types must first be converted into MapInfo Professional Native format (using **File>Save Copy As** menu) before copying the data to the PPC for use in Discover Mobile.

# Map Window

The Discover Mobile desktop uses a layered map window display which is similar to MapInfo Professional, except that Discover Mobile has a single map window. Each open table is displayed in the map window as a Layer. The display order, visibility, selection and editing properties of these layers are controlled by a **Layer Control** dialog. For more information about creating and managing layers and other view control tasks, see *Controlling Layers and the View*.

## Map Window Projection

Like MapInfo Professional, the map display window in Discover Mobile has an associated map projection. The default projection assigned to an empty Discover Mobile map window is Latitude Longitude WGS 84. Like MapInfo Professional, Discover Mobile will automatically adopt the map projection of the first table (.TAB file) which is added to the Map window. All other data, with the exception of Raster layers, will be added to the map window in this map window projection. If required, the coordinates of objects in other projections will be transformed on the fly to match the coordinate system of the map window. It is worth noting however that coordinate transformation is a processor intensive procedure and can significantly increase the time required to redraw the map window. For best performance you are encouraged to convert all TAB files into the same base projection before using them with Discover Mobile. The map window projection can be altered using the **GO>Preferences>Map** and **User Projection** menu options (see *Controlling the Map Projection*). An exception is when a raster image is open; in this case, the map window and all contained vector data will then take on the projection of the raster image.

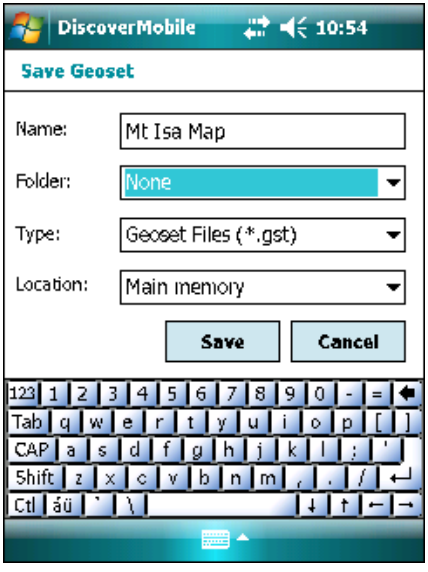
# Saving and Restoring Your Workspace

Your Discover Mobile workspace can be saved to and restored from Geoset files. Geosets save the state of all open tables plus the characteristics of displayed objects, including style overrides, zoom layering, map projections and zoom details.

A Geoset is similar to a MapInfo Workspace; however, the two are not compatible. MapInfo Professional is shipped with two utilities to help you create and read Geoset files within MapInfo Professional. These utilities are called `GEOSET.MBX` and `SEND2MXM.MBX`, which are located in the `MapInfo\Professional\Tools` folder.

### To save your workspace:

1. At least one table must be open in the map view.
2. Choose **GO>File>Save Geoset**.
3. Type the name (without the file extension) and folder for the Geoset.




*Specify the name and folder location of the required Geoset*

4. Tap **OK** to save the Geoset.

### To open a recently opened Geoset:

1. Choose **GO>File>Recent Files**.

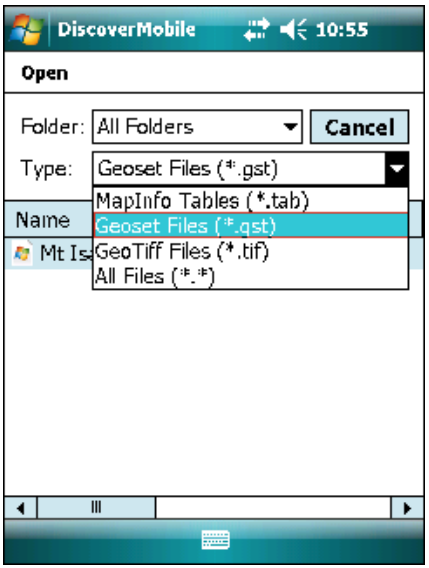
2. Select the Geoset and tap **OK**, or double-tap the table name.

### To open a Geoset file:

1. Choose **GO>File>Open Table**.

2. Change the **Type** to **Geoset Files (.GST)** using the pick list and select the Geoset to be opened

After the Geoset has been selected, Discover Mobile will automatically load all the associated tables and restore the display settings for that Geoset.




*Searching and selecting one of the available Geoset files with .GST filename extension*

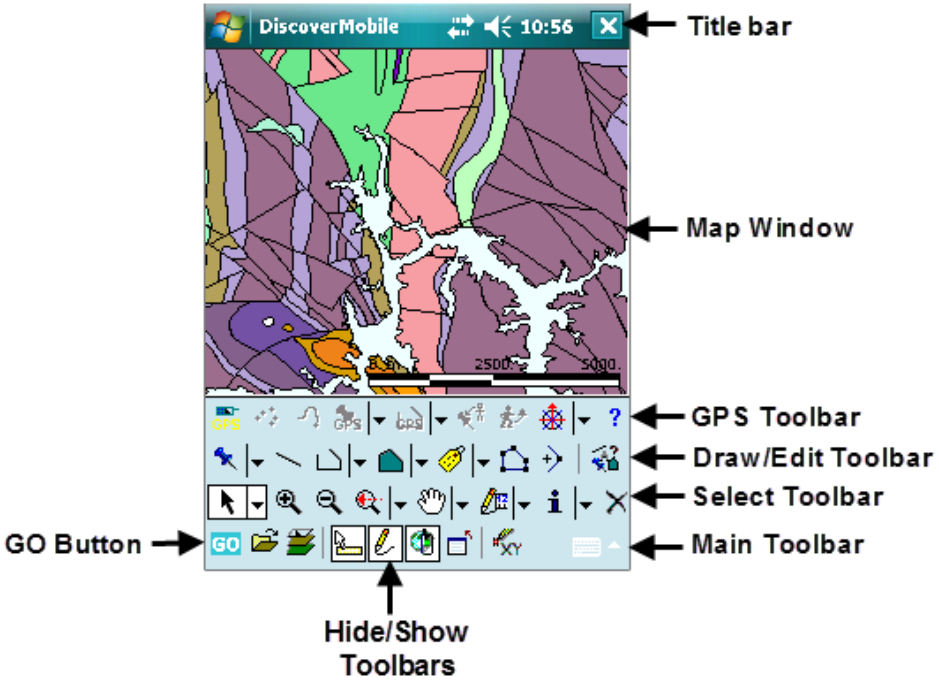
# 5 Mobile Interface

The Discover Mobile user interface provides a simple and intuitive method of interacting and working with your mapping data. Most tasks are accessed via button toolbars displayed at the bottom of the screen.

The Discover Mobile interface comprises four main parts:

- *Title bar*
- *Map Window*
- *Toolbars*
- *GO Menu* (tap the GO button to display)

You can also assign Discover Mobile functions to hardware buttons. For more information, see *Customizing the Hardware Buttons*.




*Layout and toolbars of Discover Mobile screen*

For information on using the stylus and accessing the various items in the interface, refer to *Interacting with the Software*.

## Title bar

The Title bar displays useful information, such as the GPS signal status, time, and volume controls, plus the **X** button, which minimises Discover Mobile to the system tray.

**Note**

To exit or terminate Discover Mobile, select the **GO>Exit** menu. The **X** button in the Title bar will only minimise the Discover Mobile application. It does not exit or shutdown the software. This means that the application will still be operational, even though it may not be visible on the screen. To close running programs, see *Exit Menu*.

## Map Window

The Map window is used for a variety of purposes including:

- Displaying all data, text, dialogs, images and maps.
- On-screen editing, object selection and editing.
- Displaying the *GO Menu* system.

## Toolbars

The toolbars are the primary method of operating Discover Mobile. There are four toolbars. The Main toolbar is always visible. However, you can hide and show the Select, Drawing and GPS from the main toolbar at the bottom of the screen or from the GO menu:

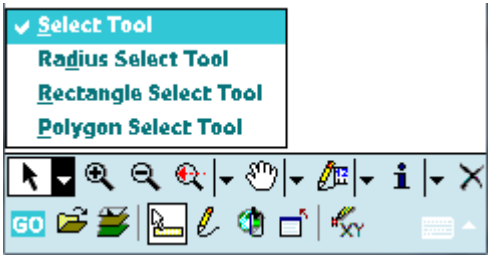
- *Main Toolbar* (always visible)

- *Select/View Toolbar*

- *Draw/Edit Toolbar*

- *GPS Toolbar*

Tapping the arrow next to a toolbar button, such as the Select tool, will display additional options in a pop-up menu:




## Main Toolbar

Use the Main toolbar to:

- Display the GO menu system.
- Open, close and maintain tables and views.
- Control the selection, visibility and editing properties of a layer.
- Hide and show other toolbars.
- Display Status window to show GPS position and map information.
- Display screen coordinates.
- Select the data entry method.

Tap the **GO** button to display the Discover Mobile menu system. When selected, a menu and sub-menu list is displayed. See *GO Menu* for additional details.

Use the **Open** file button to browse for and select files to display. When a .TAB file is opened it will be automatically added to the Layer control list and the map objects will be added to the map display.

Use the **Layer Control** button to add extra tables, change the display order, control visibility, editability and override display attributes.

Hide and show the *Select/View Toolbar*.

Hide and show the *Draw/Edit Toolbar*.

Hide and show the *GPS Toolbar*.

Display a **Status Window** showing GPS information and other map properties used by Discover Mobile. Items such as the zoom level of the map window, current GPS position and other user-definable GPS parameters. By tapping and holding the stylus within the bounds of the Status window you can access the Status Window Setup menu to configure the items which are displayed (see *Display View Settings*). It can be resized by dragging the red square at the bottom right of the window.

Display the **Coordinates** of the stylus as a map easting (X) and northing (Y)l in a moveable text display window. The map coordinates are displayed using the current projection, which is defined by *GO>Preferences>Session*.

X: 134.336542, Y: -23.431893



Select the **Input Method** for character and number entry. The default method is a keyboard however additional options as described below are available. Refer to the PPC user documentation for detailed descriptions of each of the data entry modes.

When installing Discover Mobile, an additional input method will be added to the PPC device. This input method is called **Stop Map**. The Stop Map input method is used to terminate or stop a long screen redraw. The Stop Map input method is a non-standard input method and is not used by any other application.

## Select/View Toolbar

Use the Select/View toolbar to:

- Select item(s) in the map display area.
- Zoom in and zoom out .
- Restore a previous zoom level, save or set a map scale .
- Select pan or centre mode.
- Obtain tabular information for a selected item.

- Delete a selected item.

The **Selection** button has four modes for selecting object(s) in the display area. To change mode, select the arrow next to the currently selected mode button.

**Point** – Select a single object or item. This default mode is used for data entry, object selection and editing. Selection is done by positioning the stylus over the required object and tapping. A selected object is highlighted.

**Radius** – Selects objects within a circular area. All selectable objects within the radius are highlighted. The origin of the radius is centred where the stylus was first placed on the screen. Locate the stylus at a point on the screen and then drag it away from the point to define the radial search area.

**Rectangular** - Selects objects within a rectangular area. All selectable objects whose centroid is within the area are highlighted. Locate the stylus at one corner and then drag out a rectangle.

**Polygonal** - Select objects within a polygonal area. Use the polygon select tool to enclose the required objects by tapping out a series of vertices. All selectable objects within the polygon are highlighted. Tap the stylus at a start point and then tap additional vertices to enclose the objects. Close the polygon by double-tapping the last point.

The **Zoom In** button increases the view of the display area. Tapping once in the Display Area will operate the tool. The tool magnifies the view by a factor of 2x and uses the point of the stylus tap as the centre of magnification. Alternatively, you can tap a location with the stylus then drag it to create a dotted rectangle. When the stylus is removed, the Display Area view zooms to fill the selected area.

The **Zoom Out** button increases the view of the display area. A single tap of the stylus will halve the view area centred on the stylus tap point.

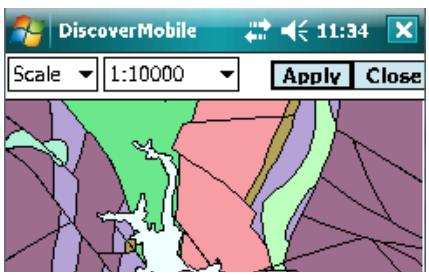
The **Previous Zoom** button will restore multiple previous views. To operate, tap the button once per view.

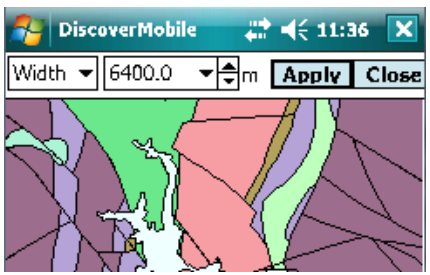
Tap the arrow button to display other functions available from this tool:

**Save View** – Saves the current view properties with a unique name. Multiple views can be defined and restored directly from the pop-up menu. Note that only the display area properties are saved, not the view contents. Restoring a view will return the map display to the same scale and map centre at the time it was saved. It will not reopen layers that were in use when the view was originally saved. If you wish to save a view which includes all associated map layers and display properties you need to save a Geoset (see *Saving and Restoring Your Workspace*).

**Delete View** – Deletes a saved view from the display list.

**Zoom Level** – You can specify a precise zoom level by selecting a screen width value (in metres) or map scale from the pop-up menu. The zoom level tool can be used in either the **Width** mode or **Scale** mode. When you switch between modes the corresponding scale or width value will be shown in the list. If you need to set the screen width or map scale to a value which is not available in the list, you can type the value using the keyboard or one of the other input methods.




**View Entire Layer** – Redraws the map to show the full data extents for a selected layer. Choose a layer or **All Layers** from the **Zoom to selection** dialog.

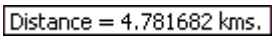
**Pan** and **Center** tools share the same button position and can be switched with the arrow button next to the displayed tool.

**Pan** button moves the view around the map display area. Position the stylus on the map and drag it in the direction you want the map to move.

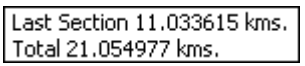
**Center** tool repositions the map display so that it is centred on the position where you tap the stylus.

The **Distance Measurement** tool has two modes. To change mode, select the arrow next to the currently selected mode button.

The default mode is a **freehand polyline** measure tool which will measure the cumulative distance along a polyline as you draw on the screen. The distance is shown in the units set in *GO>Preferences>Session*.



The **straight-line distance** mode measures the distance between consecutive points. The information displayed shows the distance between the last two consecutive points of the polyline as well as the total accumulated distance between the origin and the last point. The distance is shown in the units set in *GO>Preferences>Session*. Double tap the screen to complete a line and reset the measurement.




The **Information** and **Hotlink** tools share the same button position and can be toggled with the arrow button next to the display tool.

Use the **Information** button to display and edit object attributes (field values) in the table browser. If the selected item does not have any associated attribute information, blank data fields will be displayed. If more than one table has an object at the selected point, use the drop-down list to select the table of interest.

Use the **Hotlink** button to open a hotlink image from the target map object. If a MapInfo table contains multiple hotlink fields only the first one will be displayed. The Hotlink button streamlines the display of images taken from your in built PPC camera.

**Delete** button deletes any selected object(s) from an editable layer (see *Managing Layers*).

## Draw/Edit Toolbar

Use the Draw/Edit toolbar to:

- Place a symbol.
- Draw a straight line .
- Draw a polyline or freehand polyline.
- Draw a polygon or a freehand polygon.
- Add labels or annotations to selected objects.
- Edit or add object vertices.
- Modify object styles, including symbol style, line style or fill patterns of selected objects.

Objects can be modified on any layer which is set as Editable (see *Managing Layers*). Unlike MapInfo Professional, Discover Mobile allows simultaneous editing of multiple layers. If a layer is open and editable then any objects in that layer can be moved, repositioned, resized or deleted. Different line styles or polygon fills can also be applied.

New objects can only be added to one layer (i.e. table) at a time. You can set a layer to receive new drawing objects (points, lines or polygons) by setting that layer as the insertion layer (see *Setting the Insertion Layer*). If an insertion layer has not been set you will be prompted to select one the first time you use any of the drawing tools. This layer will then remain as the insertion layer until you either close it or select another layer. For more information on working with layers refer to *Managing Layers*. The insertion layer setting does not affect the storage of GPS-located objects (see *Assigning GPS Capture Layers*).

Discover Mobile provides a cosmetic layer for storing temporary map objects. Unlike MapInfo Professional, the cosmetic layer is optional in Discover Mobile. For information about ding a cosmetic layer, see *Adding a Cosmetic Layer*. You can use the cosmetic layer to store temporary map objects rather than add them to an existing layer. Any objects placed into the cosmetic layer will be permanently deleted if you exit Discover Mobile without saving them. To save Cosmetic objects to a new table (.TAB), use *GO>File>Save Table Copy As*.

Using the Drawing tools is further discussed in *Working with Objects*.

The tools available from the Draw/Edit toolbar are:

Use the **Symbol** button to add a symbol (point). Tap the screen to insert the symbol. See *Creating Points and Symbols*..

Use the **Structure Symbol** button to add a structural symbol. Tap the screen to insert the symbol. See *Creating Structure Objects*.

Use the **Line** tool to draw a straight line. Tap the stylus at the line start point and then drag to an end point. See *Creating Lines and Polygons*.

Use the **Polyline** tool to draw a polyline node-by-node. Tap the screen to add the first node, then move the stylus off the screen surface and tap another point. Continue tapping vertices until the polyline is complete. To finish double tap the last node. See *Creating Lines and Polygons*.

Use the **Freehand Polyline** tool to draw a free-hand polyline. Place the stylus at the start of the line and then while holding the stylus on the surface, draw the line. To finish, remove the stylus from the screen. See *Creating Lines and Polygons*.

Use the **Polygon** tool to draw a polygon node-by-node. Tap the stylus on the screen at the first node and then tap the subsequent nodes in sequence. Complete the polygon by double tapping the the final node. See *Creating Lines and Polygons*.

Use the **Freehand Polygon** tool to draw a closed free-hand polygon. Place the stylus at the start of the line and then while holding the stylus on the surface, draw the line. To finish and close, remove the stylus from the screen. See *Creating Lines and Polygons*.

Use the **Add Label** button to label objects with selected attributes. See *Labels and Annotation*.

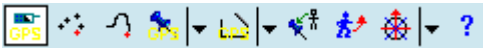
Use the **Add Annotation** button o add text to the display. Ensure the pop-up keyboard is open before selecting this tool. See *Labels and Annotation*.

Use the **Vertex Edit** tool select and edit vertices of polyline and polygon objects. Each vertex can be moved, relocated or deleted. See *Edit and Delete Nodes*.

Use the **Add Vertex** button to insert nodes on a selected polyline or polygon. To use, first select the object and tap the **Vertex Edit** button. The vertices of the selected object are displayed. Tap the stylus at the required position on the polyline or polygon to add a node. Hold the stylus on the screen to drag the new node to the desired position. *Add Nodes*.

Use the **Object Style** button to modify the display properties of a selected object. The style properties dialog will change depending on the type of object selected. To alter the appearance of an object, first select it using one of the select tools and then tap the **Object Style** button. See *Formatting Drawing Objects*.

## GPS Toolbar



The GPS toolbar is used to:

- Connect to a GPS receiver.
- Record a GPS Point Track Log.
- Record a GPS Line Track Log.
- Capture points. polylines, and polygons via the GPS.
- Navigate to a known location.
- Activate the North Up or Auto Rotate map function.
- Modify the GPS information display properties for the Status Window readout.

See the *Connecting to the GPS* and *Creating GPS-located Objects* for a detailed description of these tools. To automatically prompt for a named style, or to edit attributes or coordinates, see *Object Creation*.

Discover Mobile provides inbuilt support for a wide selection of standard GPS devices. Discover Mobile can connect to any GPS receiver which outputs data in the NMEA 0183 version 2.0 protocol format and has a serial (COM) port connection.

**Note**

The first time you use Discover Mobile you will need to configure the GPS communication settings for your particular receiver. You can do this from *GO>GPS>Setup Connection* or *GO>Preferences* menu. It is important that you set the correct port number, communication format and speed for your GPS receiver. If these settings are incorrect Discover Mobile will not be able to communicate with the receiver. Refer to your GPS User Guide for details on the GPS communication settings and *Working with the GPS* in this guide.

**GPS Connect** button is used to connect/disconnect the GPS port. Tap the connect button to open the GPS connection. You will need to make sure that your GPS has been properly configured, is turned on and that appropriate communication settings have been made under the Discover Mobile *GO>Preferences>GPS>Connection* menu before opening the connection.

**GPS Point Track Log** button turns on/off the Point Track Log function. Discover Mobile can record a continuous Track Log showing your path as a series of points. See *GPS Point Log*.

**GPS Line Track Log** button turns on/off the Line Track Log function. The Line Track Log is made up of a series of consecutive line segments rather than one continuous polyline. If you want to record a single continuous line (e.g. a fault trace or track) then use the **GPS Line Capture** function instead. See *GPS Line Log*.

**GPS Point Capture** button captures a single point at the current position coordinates from the GPS receiver. See *Capturing Points*.

**GPS Structure Symbol** button captures structural measurements readings using the current position coordinates from the GPS receiver. See *Capturing Structure Objects*.

**GPS Insert Node** button adds a new node to the current GPS polyline or polygon while the pause button is active. To use, tap the **Insert Node** button when you wish to add a node to your line. You can return to continuous node logging mode at any time by turning off the **Pause** button.

**GPS Polyline Capture** button captures a continuous polyline using the GPS position coordinates. Tap the button again to stop the polyline capture. The node separation is controlled by the *Tolerance Min* and *Tolerance Max* settings on the **Preferences** menu.

**GPS Polygon Capture** button captures a polygon using GPS position coordinates. Tap the button again to stop the polgon capture. The polygon will automatically close by joining the last captured node to the first. The node separation is controlled by the *Tolerance Min* and *Tolerance Max* settings on the **Preferences** menu.

**GPS Polyline/Polygon Pause** pauses the capturing of a polygon or polyline without terminating the current capture. Tap the **Pause** button once to pause the current capture (the button is depressed). With the pause button depressed you can move without capturing further data. When you are ready to capture the next node tap the pause button again to restart the capture.

**Auto Rotate Map - North Up** button turns on and off the **Auto Map Rotate** function. The Auto Rotate Map function will automatically rotate the map view so that the top of the map is oriented towards the direction of travel. The auto map rotation preferences can be configured from *GO>Preferences>GPS>Map Rotation*.

**Center Map on GPS** option will re-center the map window so the GPS position symbol is in the center if the map window.

**Waypoint Navigation** enables you to select an existing map object (eg point, polygon) as a destination waypoint and Discover Mobile will then report the distance and bearing between your current GPS location and the selected waypoint feature to the waypoint readout window.

**GPS Display Settings** configures the GPS information displayed in the Status window. See *Display View Settings*. Tap the button to display the GPS display configuration dialog. Select or clear the information you want displayed.

## GO Menu

The GO menu system of Discover Mobile is used to control and configure the application. Many of the functions in the menu system are also available from the toolbars. To display the menu, tap the GO button in the lower left corner of the main toolbar.

For details of the commands available from the Go Menu, see *Using the GO Menu*.

## Customizing the Hardware Buttons

**GO>Edit>Hardware Button Options**

To customize the hardware buttons, choose **GO>Preferences** and under **System Settings**, select the *Hardware Buttons* option. Choose a function from the **Select Function** pull-down list and then press the desired hardware button on the hand-held device.

To use an existing button mapping configured through Windows (**Start>Settings>Buttons**, eg for Word or Excel), ensure that the **Check for Mapped Buttons** option is unticked/disabled.

# 6 Using the GO Menu

The GO menu system of Discover Mobile is used to control and configure the application. Many of the functions in the menu system are also available from the toolbars. The main menu is displayed by tapping the GO button in the lower left corner of the main toolbar. Additional functions are available on some toolbar buttons (see *Toolbars*).

- *Exit Menu* – exit and close the application
- *About Menu* – description of Discover Mobile
- *Licensing Menu* – User information and licensing details
- *Preferences Menu* – GPS communications, system and session preferences and maintenance
- *Tools Menu* – controls the buttons on the Draw/Edit toolbar
- *Query Menu* – create queries on data tables, find objects by attributes
- *Map Menu* – Create Cosmetic Layer, Set Insertion Layer, Save window, Add/Modify Theme, Map Projection
- *GPS Menu* – connect to a GPS, monitor/check a GPS connection, capture data and define preferred styles
- *XRF Menu* – connect to the Olympus Innov-X and Niton portable XRF devices
- *View Menu* – Layer control, Map zoom level, Map Rotation, Table structure
- *Edit Menu* – accesses layer editing, labelling, annotation, and styles
- *File Menu* – New Table, Open Table, Save Geoset, Save Table Copy As, Recent files, Edit Table Structure, and Pack Tables

# Exit Menu

**GO>Exit**

Use the Exit command to terminate the Discover Mobile application and remove it from the PPC memory. If you intend to restore your data and map display to the same state as when you closed the application, you must save the state to a Geoset file before you exit Discover Mobile (see *Saving and Restoring Your Workspace* ).

The **GO>Exit** command is not the same as the ***X*** button on the Title bar of Discover Mobile. Tapping the ***X*** button on the Title bar will only minimise Discover Mobile to the system tray of the device. It does not exit from the application or remove it from main memory. This means that the application is still operational, even though it may not be visible on the screen. If you power off the PPC by pressing the power button Discover Mobile will remain in main memory and be ready for use when you next turn the device on. However, the running applications will still consume power while the device is switched off.

**Note** To preserve battery power when you are not using your mobile device, make sure all applications are closed before turning the power off.

**To close all applications:**

1. Tap **Start>Settings**, navigate to the **System** tab, and then tap the **Memory** icon.

2. Select the **Running Programs** tab and stop all running applications on the device.

   Alternatively perform a **Soft Reset**.

# About Menu

### GO>About

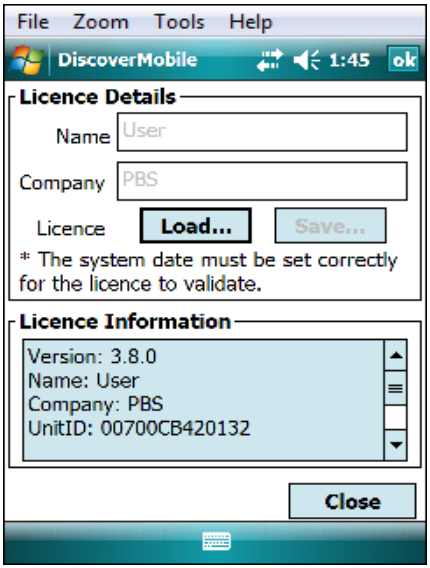
Use the About command to display information about the Discover Mobile installation (version and copyright details).

*About dialog*

# Licensing Menu

### GO>Licensing

Use the Licensing command to display information about the Discover Mobile licence including version, UnitID and Licence No. details.




*Licensing dialog*

# Preferences Menu

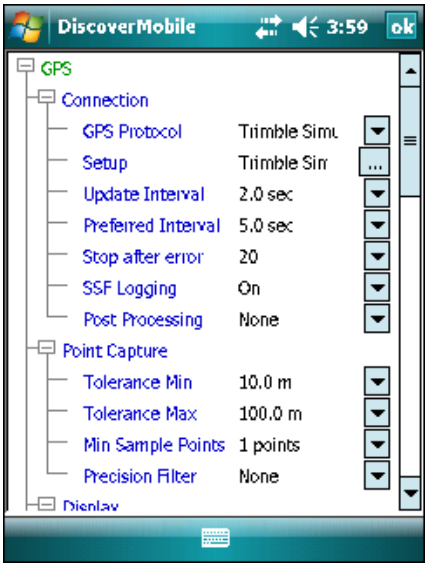
**GO>Preferences**

The Preferences menu is used to control various systems, session and display settings in Discover Mobile. It is also used to configure the communication settings for an attached GPS receiver. The GPS configuration settings are described in the GPS Connection section of this chapter.

The Preferences dialog allows you to configure the following parameters:

- *Connection* - GPS Protocol, Setup, Update Interval, Preferred Interval, Stop after error, SSF Logging, Post Processing
- *Point Capture* – Tolerance Minimum and Tolerance Maximum, Minimum Sample Points, Precision Filter
- *Display* – Re-centre GPS, Altitude units, Speed units, Default Scale, GPS Position Style
- *Map Rotation* – Degree Tolerance, Speed Tolerance, When Off
- *Object Creation* – Edit Attributes, Named Styles, Point XY Editing
- *Session* – Autoload last, Map Projection, User Projection, Distance Units, Area Units, Grid Overlay, Waypoint Tolerance

- *System Settings* – Busy Cursor, Font Size, Confirm Deletion, Hardware Buttons, Alert Configuration
- *Directories* – Project Root, Current Project, Track Log, Pick Lists, Named Styles, Hotlink files, New Tables, Image Files




*Preferences dialog*

A summary of all the settings available from this dialog is available at *Preference Settings*.

## Connection

**GO>Preferences>GPS>Connection**

The configuration and use of these parameters in discussed *Working with the GPS* and *Working with Differential GPS (DGPS)*. Consult these topics before adjusting the various GPS Connection parameters.

- *GPS Protocol*
- *Setup*
- *Update Interval*
- *Preferred Interval*
- *Stop After Error*

- *SSF Logging*
- *Post Processing*

## GPS Protocol

The GPS Protocol option allows specification of:

- NMEA (US-based National Marine Electronics Association) protocol
- Trimble protocol (only for use with Trimble Post-Process DGPS receivers)
- A log file option, available for troubleshooting NMEA connections
- A Trimble simulation mode

Typically, this will be set to default NMEA option.

## Setup

The Setup dialog will vary depending on which GPS Protocol has been selected

### NMEA Protocol

See *Connecting to an NMEA GPS Receiver* for a full description of the use of these options.

#### Port

Port setting refers to the serial communication (COM) port on the Pocket PC device to which the GPS receiver is connected. The COM port on which the GPS receiver is connected may change depending on the type of PPC device and the communication options it supports. By default, Discover Mobile will attempt to connect on COM 4, however if this should be unsuccessful you may need to try different COM ports. Generally CF (Compact Flash) type receivers will connect on COM 4 or COM 6 and Bluetooth GPS receivers on COM 5 or COM 8. To determine which COM port your GPS is connected to start the GPS and make sure it is set to output NMEA data.  Connect the GPS and use the “Scan” function in the Discover Mobile GO>GPS>Setup Connection dialog to scan the available COM ports for valid GPS data.

### Speed

The speed setting allows you to adjust the communication speed for the serial COM port to match the communication speed of the GPS receiver. It is important that you set the appropriate communication speed so Discover Mobile can communicate properly with your GPS receiver. Most GPS units, which output NMEA data, will communicate between 4800-9600 baud rate. The default setting is 4800 baud. Consult your GPS user guide to determine the correct communication speed for your GPS device. Some example speeds are listed below:

Garmin 12XL = 4800 baud

Socket Bluetooth GPS = 38600 baud

Navman GPS Sleeve = 57500 baud

### Parity

Parity is a form of error checking used in serial communication. Most modern devices use more advanced forms of software error checking and no longer use hardware parity. Set this value to match your GPS receiver. Consult your GPS user guide to determine the appropriate parity setting for your GPS receiver. Most modern GPS devices will use null Parity or “None” so this is the default setting for Discover Mobile. If you are not sure what the parity setting for your GPS should be then try setting it to none.

## Trimble Protocol

(only for use with Trimble Post-Process DGPS receivers)

See *Connecting to a Trimble Receiver* for a full description of the use of these options.

### Port

Specify the Port to which the DGPS receiver is connected.

**DOP Type**

Dilution of Precision (DOP) is an indication of the current satellite geometry. It is the result of a calculation that takes into account each satellite's location relative to the other satellites in the constellation. A low DOP indicates that the visible satellites are widely separated in the sky, which allows better position information to be recorded. When the DOP value rises above the DOP mask (set in the following options), the GPS receiver stops generating positional data until the DOP value falls below the DOP mask.

This option allows the DOP type to be specified either as Position (PDOP) or Horizontal (HDOP). The HDOP mask is useful when you are more concerned with horizontal accuracy rather than vertical accuracy.

**Max PDOP**

Use this field to set the Position (PDOP) mask. PDOP refers to horizontal and vertical measurements (latitude, longitude, and altitude). A PDOP value of 6 is recommended.

**Max HDOP**

Use this field to set the Horizontal (HDOP) mask. HDOP refers to horizontal measurements (latitude and longitude). A HDOP value of 4 is recommended.

**Min Elevation**

Use this field to set the elevation mask. Use the elevation mask to allow the GPS receiver to only use those satellites above a specified elevation in the sky. The GPS receiver does not use satellites below the set elevation mask to compute positions. A minimum elevation of 15° is recommended.

**Min SNR**

Use this field to set the Signal to Noise Ratio (SNR) mask, measured in decibel-Hertz (dBHz). The SNR value is used to determine whether the signal strength of each satellite is sufficient for that satellite to be used by the GPS receiver. If a satellite's SNR is below the SNR mask, it is not used to compute positions. An SNR value of 39 is recommended.

**Min Satellites**

Specify the minimum number of satellites required for a position fix. A value of 5 is recommended.

#### Apply Velocity Filter

Use this check box to enable or disable the velocity filter. Velocity filtering smooths the positions from the GPS receiver as they are generated, using velocity information. This filter reduces the effects of multipath error on positions computed by the GPS receiver.

#### Use GLONASS

Enables tracking of GLONASS satellites in the connected GPS receiver if the receiver is GLONASS-capable.

Tracking both GLONASS and GPS satellites can improve productivity by reducing the time required to achieve real-time or post-processed decimeter or subfoot solutions and increasing the amount of data collected (increased yield), particularly in tough environments such as around tall buildings and under heavy tree canopy.

For more information, see Trimble documentation.

### Trimble Simulation

Once enabled via the top-most tick box, Discover Mobile can simulate a live Trimble DGPS connection, either by sourcing a data file (.txt) previously generated, or via simulating a circular movement path. The latter option requires user-specified latitude, longitude, altitude and radius parameters.

## Update Interval

The update interval controls the time interval or rate at which Discover Mobile updates the current GPS position location on the map. This value is set to 2 seconds by default, which is generally adequate for most situations. If you do not need have your current position location updated as often then you may find it more appropriate to set this value to a higher interval, say 10 or 20 seconds as this will reduce the amount of information that Discover Mobile has to process and may improve overall performance.

### Preferred Interval

Each time Discover Mobile updates your current location on the map with a new GPS position it must redraw the entire contents of the Map window to show the updated information. If it takes longer to redraw the map window than the time set in the Update Interval control, then Discover Mobile will not be able to redraw the map window quickly enough to keep up with the GPS. In this situation Discover Mobile will automatically adjust the rate at which it polls the GPS for position information to match the re-draw speed of the map window. The Preferred Update Interval setting allows you to set a preferred update interval for the current GPS position and where possible Discover Mobile will attempt to honour this value. If you find the map redraw speed is too slow for your current needs try zooming in on the working area in the map window as this may improve re-draw time and restore the GPS update interval to the preferred value. Whenever Discover Mobile decreases or increases the update interval of the GPS to match the map redraw speed it alerts you with a warning sound. These warning sounds can be configured via the GO>Preferences>Alert Configuration control.

### Stop After Error

This item controls the number of consecutive errors (or poor data) that Discover Mobile will accept before terminating the GPS connection. If you are working in areas with poor GPS signal (e.g. heavily forested terrain, in valleys or near cliffs) it is recommended you increase the stop error to a high value (e.g. 30 or 50). If you still experience connection difficulties you can further increase this value by typing an alternative value in the box.

### SSF Logging

This option is only available with the Trimble GPS Protocol enabled.

Set this option to On to create a Trimble .SSF format Rover file with the same name as the file into which data is being captured.

This rover file is required to allow post-processing differential correction to be carried out on captured data.

**Note** This option is only designed for use with Trimble Post-Process DGPS units.

For recommended settings for Postprocessed DGPS, see *Working with Differential GPS (DGPS)*.

### Post Processing

This enables the Carrier phase signal of the Trimble output to be logged. Utilizing this signal (in tandem with the default Code phase signal) will increase the accuracy of the post-processing correction; however it requires the user to be within 50 kilometres of the base station, and to maintain continuous Carrier phase lock for 10 minutes.

Three logging modes are available:

- None: no carrier phase data is logged. The data set will not be able to be post-processed.
- Continuous: carrier phase data is logged at 1 second intervals
- Classic: carrier phase data is logged at heat beat rate when not capturing an object location, and at the object logging rate when logging an object.

**Note** This option is only designed for use with Trimble Post-Process DGPS units.

See *Carrier Phase Logging* for further information.

## Point Capture

**GO>Preferences>GPS>Point Capture**

- *Tolerance Min*
- *Tolerance Max*
- *Min Sample Points*
- *Precision Filter*

### Tolerance Min

Controls the minimum separation distance Discover Mobile will accept before recording a new point or line segment. For example, if the distance value is set to 5m then Discover Mobile will only record a new line segment in a polyline or polygon if the distance travelled between the previous position and the current position is greater than 5m. Any position data received which is closer than 5m will be filtered out. The default Tolerance value is 10m (the approximate accuracy of standard GPS receivers).

The minimum tolerance should be set at a value which is appropriate for your mapping requirements and GPS receiver accuracy. If you are using Discover Mobile with a conventional GPS receiver to walk out object boundaries, then a minimum tolerance of 10m should be sufficient. If you were using a differential GPS you may reduce the value to 1m or 5m. This will allow you to stop and take notes without Discover Mobile adding a series of unwanted points to your polyline. If you were mapping out roads or tracks with Discover Mobile using a vehicle then a minimum tolerance between 20m to 100m would be more appropriate.

### Tolerance Max

This option controls the maximum separation distance that Discover Mobile will accept when recording a new point or line segment. For example, if the maximum tolerance distance value is set to 100m, Discover Mobile will only record a new point if the distance between the current position and the previous position is less than 100m. Use this function to filter out unwanted points caused by bad GPS signal reception. The default value is 10000m.

Be careful not to set the GPS Maximum Tolerance value too small, particularly if the GPS signal quality is poor. Ideal values are between 500m and 10000m. If the Maximum Tolerance value is set to small (say 100m) and you are travelling in a car at 80-100 km/hr, it is possible that you could travel further than the tolerance value between consecutive points, especially if an error was encountered in one of the readings. In this case, Discover Mobile would consider any additional point to be outside the maximum tolerance and would not continue to record the polyline.

### Min Sample Points

This setting defines the number of point calculations required before a position is established.  A position is calculated by averaging the specified number of point calculations; thus the higher this parameter is set, the longer it will take to generate a position, but the more precise the position will be. It is recommended to use a setting of 15 points.

**Note** This option is only designed for use with Trimble DGPS units.

### Precision Filter

Various quality levels of position fix can be output by DGPS receivers, depending on factors such as the number of satellites, the quality of the satellite signal (influenced by the amount of satellite coverage and overhead cover), the quality of radio reception (for Real-Time DGPS) and the parameters assigned in the Setup dialog. The quality of the current position fix is indicated at the bottom left of the map screen.

Discover Mobile allows a Precision Filter to be selected, which prevents data capture when the position fix quality falls below a designated level. These Filter levels are detailed below; select the DGPS filter.

GPS - Any current position fix (GPS or DGPS) will be accepted

DGPS - Requires a Differential GPS fix (Real-time or Post-processed)

RTK LOW - Requires a low-quality Real-time Differential solution

RTK HIGH - Requires a high-quality Real-time Differential solution

**Note** This option is only designed for use with Trimble DGPS units.

## Display

**GO>Preferences>GPS>Display**

- *Re-centre GPS*
- *Altitude in*
- *Speed in*
- *Default Scale 1:*
- *GPS Position Style*

### Re-centre GPS

This option controls how the map window display redraws when the Current GPS Position marker approaches the edge or leaves the map window display. The options are:

- **Off Map** – Window will re-centre only when the Current GPS Position moves outside the display area.

- **Always** – Current GPS Position will stay fixed in the centre of the map. The map window contents will redraw at the rate of the GPS Interval.

**Note** The **Always** setting can slow down map redraw performance significantly. Only use this setting with simple vector maps or GPS Track Log function.

- **Never** – Window will never re-centre even when the Current GPS Position moves outside the map display.
- **n% Border** – Window will re-centre when the Current GPS Position is within a n% border of the map window. The default setting is 5%.

### Altitude in

This option allows you to specify the preferred units of measure for displaying GPS altitude in the Status window. The available options are metres or feet.

### Speed in

This option allows you to specify the preferred units of measure for displaying GPS altitude in the Status window. The available options are metres per second (m/s), kilometres per hour (km/h), miles per hour (mph) and knots (kt).

### Default Scale 1:

A default scale for the map view can be assigned for when a GPS connection is established and no data tables are open (between 1:1000 and 1:10000). If data is open in the map window when a GPS connection is established, the current view scale will be preserved (and the default scale will be ignored).

### GPS Position Style

A default symbol style for the current GPS location point can be defined. This is the same as defining it under GO>GPS>Default Styles>Current Position Style.

## Map Rotation

**GO>Preferences>GPS>Map Rotation**

Discover Mobile provides a display option to automatically rotate the map window contents so that the top of the screen is always in the direction of travel as defined by the GPS. The Auto Rotate function only works with vector maps and is only enabled when the GPS is active. The map rotation function cannot be used if a raster table is loaded in the map window. See *Auto-Rotate and Auto-Centre* for further information.

### Deg Tolerance

This control sets the angular tolerance for the Map Auto Rotate function. An angular tolerance value refers to the angular difference between two consecutive GPS locations. If the angle between two points is greater than the degree tolerance value then the map will rotate so the direction of travel is towards the top of the screen. The default value is 45 degrees and is generally sufficient for most situations. If you set a lower value, the map display will rotate more frequently. If your map is relatively complex and takes considerable time to redraw you may notice a performance decrease if the Auto Rotate function is turned on.

### Speed Tolerance

The speed tolerance control is used to set the minimum speed over ground below which the Auto Rotate function will be deactivated. The default setting is 2 kilometres per hour, however you can set it to any integer value. For most situations 2 km/h is generally adequate, however you may find increasing the value to 30 or 50km/h more appropriate when you are travelling in a vehicle.

### When Off

Determines what happens to the map window contents when the Auto Rotate map function is turned off. The options are:

- **Rotate North** – this will return the map window display to its original position with north up.
- **Keep Rotation** – will keep the map window positioned at the current rotation angle. If you need to reset the map window later so that north is towards the top of the screen you can do this using the GO>View>Map Rotation control.

## Object Creation

**GO>Preferences>Object Creation**

The following editable criteria are available when capturing object data.

- *Edit Attributes*
- *Named Styles*
- *Point XY Editing*

The preferences for these can be set as follows:

- **Always** – Upon data capture, the user is taken directly to the appropriate editing dialog
- **Ask** – The user is prompted as to whether the specified criteria is to be edited. If Yes, the appropriate editing dialog is opened; if No, the dialog is skipped.
- **Never** - The criteria is skipped, without display of a prompt or the editing dialog.

### Edit Attributes

The Edit Attributes option opens a browser for the new object, allowing the user to edit any of the object's attributes, as well as assign attributes from predefined Pick Lists.

### Named Styles

An existing style can be applied to the new object from the Named Styles library. This is an excellent way to visually differentiate identical object types; eg point samples such as rock-chips, lag and soil samples can have differing existing symbol types applied during data capture. See *Named Styles* for further information.

### Point XY Editing

After data capture, an object's X and Y coordinates can be manually edited

## Session

**GO>Preferences>Session**

- *Autoload last*
- *Map Projection*
- *User Projection*
- *Distance In*
- *Area In*
- *Grid Overlay*
- *Waypoint Tolerance*

### Autoload last

This option functions in a similar manner the Quick Start dialog in MapInfo Professional. Each time you exit Discover Mobile it saves a default Geoset (called DiscoverMobile.gst) to the \MY DOCUMENTS folder on your PPC. When you start the application you can configure the Autoload last function to perform one of the following functions:

- **Never** – the application will never load the Default Geoset file.
- **Ask** – the application will prompt you to load the last saved Geoset file. You can then elect to either load or cancel the operation.
- **Always** – the application will always load the default Geoset file on startup.

### Map Projection

This option governs the projection to be used for capturing GPS data as well as for displaying the Map Grid. This can be set as either the (Default) system projection or a (User) preferred projection. The Default option will display coordinates using the default map window projection (Latitude/Longitude WGS 84 GPS).

If you wish to display the current GPS position coordinates or the map Grid coordinates in a different projection to the map window (e.g. Australian Map Grid AGD 66, Zone 55) then you can set the Map Projection to User Defined. Discover Mobile will then display all coordinates (e.g. GPS Map X & Map Y in the Status window, the Map X and Map Y attribute coordinates in the browser and the Map Grid coordinates) in this projection. The GPS Lat/Long values in the Status Window and browser will always be displayed in Latitude/Longitude WGS 84 projection.

A user-defined map projection also overrides the coordinate units, which are displayed when using the XY cursor point tool on the main button bar.

### User Projection

The user projection dialog allows you to select a preferred projection for the Map Grid and for capturing GPS data. To enable a user projection, select the appropriate projection category from the user projection dialog and then set the Map Projection (above) control to User Projection.

### Distance In

The Distance In option allows you to select a preferred unit for displaying distance measurements. This controls the display units of the Distance and Measurement tool, the Scalebar, and the various Quick Pick measurement options (Object Length and Perimeter).

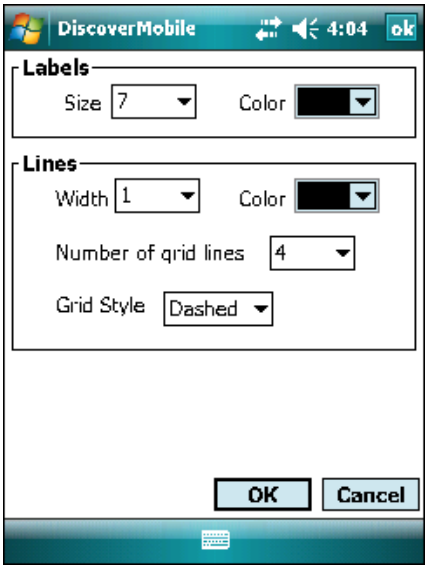
### Area In

The Area In option allows specification of the preferred area units for area measurements (eg using the Quick Pick Object Area option).

### Grid Overlay

The grid overlay dialog is used to override the default display settings for Discover Mobiles dynamic Map Grid. The display properties for grid label size and colour, grid line width, line colour and line style and the preferred number of displayed grid lines can be modified using this dialog. Although you can set a preferred value for the number of grid lines you want Discover Mobile to display, the grid spacing is automatically calculated to provide the best grid spacing for the current map scale so you may find that the actual number of lines displayed on the map may vary from the number specified.

The display properties for the Map Grid are also applied to the Discover Mobile Scale Bar.




*Dynamic map grid setup dialog*

**Note** The projection of the displayed map grid is controlled via the **Map Projection** section of the **Preferences** menu.

### Waypoint Tolerance

The waypoint tolerance control is used to set a minimum radial distance around a selected waypoint. When you approach to within the specified distance of the selected waypoint Discover Mobile will prompt you with a message saying that the waypoint has been reached. The default distance value is 10m which means Discover Mobile will report that you have arrived at your selected location when the distance between the GPS current position and the waypoint location is 10m or less.

See *Navigating to a Known Point* for further information.

## System Settings

**GO>Preferences>System Settings**

Provides some control over the following system settings.

- *Busy Cursor*
- *Font Size*

- *Confirm Deletion*
- *Hardware Buttons*
- *Alert Configurations*

### Busy Cursor

When Discover Mobile is processing a request from the user such as reading data from a file, processing a query, redrawing a map or loading a dialog, it will generally display a system busy cursor. Opening large datasets or raster images may take considerably longer on Discover Mobile than it does on you desktop or laptop computer. This is mainly because the system resources (memory and CPU speed etc) are considerably less powerful on the PPC. The busy cursor can be recognised as a **spinning colour wheel** button . On some PPC devices this icon may remain (i.e. appear to get stuck) on the screen after the PPC has completed a requested task. If this occurs you can generally clear it by tapping on the screen with the select tool. If you find that the busy cursor seems to get stuck on the screen regularly you can disable it by setting this option to off. In most cases Discover Mobile will then suppress the busy cursor from symbol.

**Warning** If you turn the busy cursor off you will no longer have any visual indication when Discover Mobile is processing data.

### Font Size

The font size setting controls the size of the font used for displaying data in the Status and Browser windows. The default size is 8 point, however if you find this size text difficult to read you can increase the text size by adjusting this control.

### Confirm Deletion

This controls whether Discover Mobile will provide a Confirmation dialog before attempting to delete an object from a table. The default value is set to YES. If you do not want to be prompted before deleting an object you can set this option to NO.

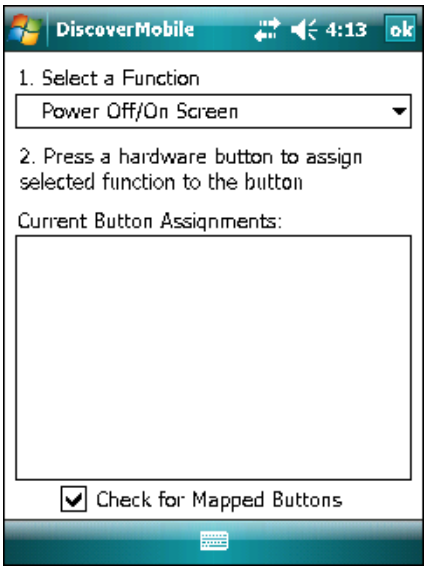
**Warning** There is no undo function in Discover Mobile, so when you delete an object from a table it is permanently removed and cannot be recovered.

## Hardware Buttons

The hardware button mapping dialog allows you to configure the hardware buttons on your PPC device so that they can be used to perform certain Discover Mobile functions. For example you can assign a hardware button to capture a GPS point, toggle the zoom tool, pan tool or selection tool or even to power off the screen to help conserve battery power. In Discover Mobile you can map virtually any inbuilt function to a hardware button on the device. To setup the hardware buttons on the device:

1. Tap the **Browse** button next to the **System Settings Hardware Buttons** entry to bring up the hardware mapping dialog

2. Select the particular function you want to map to a hardware button from the Select Function pick list at the top of the dialog.




3. Press an appropriate hardware button on the device to which you want to assign the particular Discover Mobile function.

4. Repeat the above process for any other hardware buttons you wish to map on your device.

To clear a function from one of the hardware buttons select the Clear Button Assignment entry from the Select Function pick list at the top of the dialog and then press the button you wish to clear. You should note the button assignment description is then removed from the list at the bottom of the dialog.

If the Hardware Button assignments set via Windows (Start>Settings>Buttons) are to be used (eg to access Word or Excel), ensure that the Check for Mapped Buttons option is unselected (disabled).

### Alert Configurations

Alerts such as sounds or warning messages can be setup to inform users when certain situations with their GPS unit arise. These situations include instances when the GPS is reporting values derived from a bad position fix, the user is trying to record a point outside the set distance tolerance limits, an XRF measurement has been received, or the GPS recording interval has been increased or reduced.

## Directories

**GO>Preferences>Directories**

- *Project Root*
- *Current Project*
- *Set Individually (advanced users only)*

### Project Root

The Project root setting will define where all Discover Mobile project data will be stored. By default this is set to the `\My Documents\` folder, however it is strongly recommended this is changed to a removable storage card (e.g. SD or CF memory card) so that your data will not be lost if the battery on the PPC becomes fully drained.

### Current Project

This sets the current project folder. By default after data is transferred using the Desktop DiscoverMobile Manager tool, it will be set to the last transferred project directory.

### Set Individually (advanced users only)

The following settings will be automatically set when the Project Root and Current Project is set - they should only be modified by advanced users. By default they will be placed in the Project directory or relevant sub-folders.

To manually over-ride the project settings, first change the Project settings to 'none set'.

### Track Log

You can specify a preferred directory in which to save your GPS Track Log files. By default this is in the current project directory.

### Pick Lists

You can specify a preferred directory in which to store and save pick list files which can be used in the Discover Mobile browser. By default Discover Mobile will store the picklist files in the `\Encom_DM_Picklists` directory in the current project directory.

### Named Styles

You can specify a preferred directory in which to save your Named Style Library files. By default Discover Mobile will store the Named Style Library files in the `\Encom_DM_Namestyles` directory in the current project directory. Range Styles will also be stored and loaded in this directory.

### Hotlink Files

You can specify a preferred directory in which to save your Hotlink files. By default Discover Mobile will store the Hotlink files in the `\Encom_DM_Hotlinks` directory in the current project directory. Keeping all the hotlink files together in a hotlink directory will also help maintain the links when the files are copied back to the desktop computer.

### New Tables

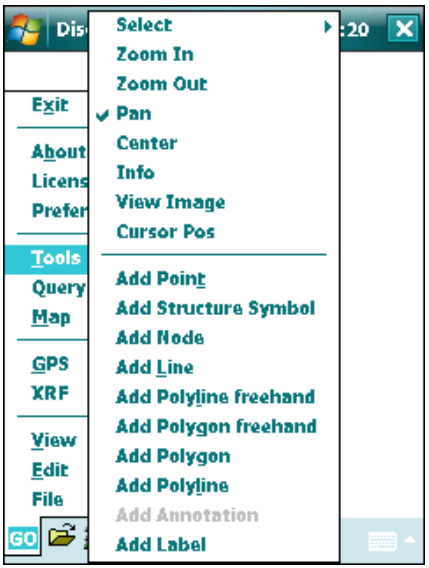
The **File>New Table** or **Save Copy As** commands will automatically create new tables in the location specified by this option. By default this is in the current project directory.

### Image Files

You can specify a preferred directory where the in-built PPC camera saves images. This directory is used by Discover Mobile when linking PPC camera images to a map object.

# Tools Menu

### GO>Tools




*Tools menu*

The Tools menu item is divided into two groups. The upper group controls the tools that are available on the Main and View toolbars. Items in the second group relate to tools on the Draw/Edit toolbar. These menu options all replicate buttons available on the relevant toolbars.

- *Select*
- *Zoom In*
- *Zoom Out*
- *Pan*
- *Center*
- *Info*
- *Cursor Position*
- *Add Point*
- *Add Structure Symbol*

- *Add Node*
- *Add Line*
- *Add Polyline Freehand*
- *Add Polygon Freehand*
- *Add Polyline Freehand*
- *Add Polygon*
- *Add Polyline*
- *Add Annotation*
- *Add Label*

## Select

**GO>Tools>Select**

- **Radius Select** – selects objects within a radius around an initially located point. All selectable objects within the radius are selected and highlighted. Operate by placing the stylus at a point on the map and then dragging the stylus away from the point until the radial search area increases to the required diameter.

- **Polygon Select** - select objects within a user-drawn polygon area. Place the stylus at a start point and then tap out an enclosing polygon of any shape by tapping a series of vertices. Complete the polygonal area by tapping twice. All selectable objects within the polygon are selected and highlighted.

- **Rectangular Select** - select objects within a rectangular area drawn from an initially located point. All selectable objects within the area are highlighted. Operate by locating the stylus at a rectangle corner point and then drag the stylus away from the point until the search area increases to the required size.

- **Point Select** - activates the point select tool, which allows single point picking of objects. This is the default mode used for data entry, object selection and editing. Selection is done by positioning the stylus over the required object and tapping. A selected object is identified by a change of colour, pattern change or highlighting.

- **Annotation Select** – allows existing annotation to be selected and edited.

## Zoom In

### GO>Tools>Zoom In

The Zoom-In tool increases the view of the display area. The tool is operated by simply tapping once in the Display Area. This magnifies the view by a factor of 2x and uses the point of the stylus tap as the centre of magnification. Alternatively, place the stylus on the screen and drag out a dotted rectangle. When the stylus is removed, the Display Area will zoom to fill the extents of the rectangle area.

## Zoom Out

### GO>Tools>Zoom Out

The Zoom-Out tool operates identically to the Zoom-In function, but in a reverse sense such that the display area shrinks instead of magnifies. A single tap of the stylus decreases the view by a factor of 2x with the view centred on the located point.

## Pan

### GO>Tools>Pan

The Pan tool is used to move the view around the Display Area. To operate, position and hold the stylus on the screen. As you move the stylus on the screen, the map view display moves with the stylus movement.

## Center

### GO>Tools>Center

The Center tool is another useful tool for navigating around the map view. This tool operates by re-centering the map display to show the tapped location at the centre of the view.

## Info

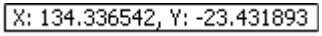
### GO>Tools>Info

The Information tool operates similarly to the Arrow tool, but instead of selecting an item, this tool displays any available attribute information about the object. An item must have associated attribute information for it to be displayed in a browser view.

## Cursor Position

### GO>Tools>Cursor Position

The Cursor Position tool displays the easting (X) and northing (Y) location of the stylus when it is placed within the map display area. The location is shown in a moveable text display dialog. The coordinate display units are shown in the Session Coordinate Projection which can be defined from *GO>Preferences>Session*..




## Add Point

### GO>Tools>Add Point

Add a located symbol to the current Insertion Layer. To add symbols, tap the stylus at the required location on the screen.

## Add Structure Symbol

### GO>Tools>Add Structure Symbol

The Add Structure Symbol tool will activate the Structure symbol dialog, and place the appropriate symbol in the current Insertion Layer. Tap the stylus at the required location on the screen: the structure symbol dialog will then appear, allowing the user to select the appropriate symbol and enter in the structure measurements.  See *Creating Structure Objects*.

## Add Node

**GO>Tools>Add Node**

The Add/Insert Node tool allows extra nodes to be added to completed editable polyline or polygon. Select the object, and then select the Add Nodes menu option or toolbar button. Tap with the stylus on a line segment (between two existing nodes) within the selected object to add a new node at this location. See Edit Modes for more information.

This function also allows a new node to be added to the current polyline or polygon being captured via the GPS. The Add Node tool is only used when a polyline or polygon is being captured and the Pause button is active. To add new nodes, walk to the required location and tap the button. The new node will be added to the current polyline or polygon. See *Creating GPS-located Objects*.

## Add Line

**GO>Tools>Add Line**

Draws a Straight line into the current Insertion Layer. To use, place the stylus at the line start point and drag the stylus across the screen to the endpoint. When the stylus is removed, a straight line will be drawn between the two points.

## Add Polyline Freehand

**GO>Tools>Add Polyline Freehand**

This tool allows a Polyline to be drawn into the current Insertion Layer in freehand mode. Place the stylus at the start of the line, and then trace the line extent, keeping the stylus in continuous contact with the screen. Removing the stylus from the screen will complete the polyline.

## Add Polygon Freehand

**GO>Tools>Add Polygon Freehand**

This tool allows a polygon to be drawn into the current insertion layer in freehand mode. Place the stylus at the start of the region, and then trace the region's extent, keeping the stylus in continuous contact with the screen. Removing the stylus from the screen will complete and close the polygon.

## Add Polygon

**GO>Tools>Add Polygon**

Draw a Polygon into the current Insertion layer using the point and tap polygon mode. Use by tapping the first vertex of the polygon and then continue by tapping in a second and subsequent vertices. Complete the polygon by double tapping the final vertex.

## Add Polyline

**GO>Tools>Add Polyline**

Draw a Polyline using the point and tap Polyline mode. To use, tap a start location, then move the stylus to another point and tap the next vertex. Continue tapping vertices until complete. To finish the line, double tap the last point.

## Add Annotation

**GO>Tools>Add Annotation**

The Annotation tool allows text annotations to be added to or removed from the annotation layer. Text labels placed in the annotation layer are temporary and cannot be saved. To remove all annotations use the Clear Annotations sub menu accessible via the Label button on the Draw/Edit toolbar or the **GO>Edit>Clear Annotations** menu.

## Add Label

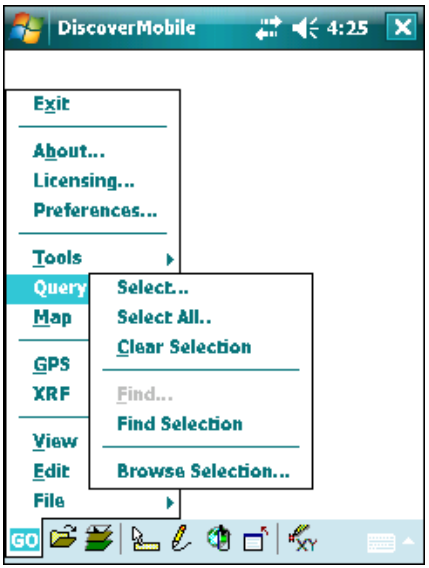
**GO>Tools>Add Label**

The Label tool allows text labels to be placed on individual objects. The information for the labels is retrieved from an attribute column in the associated table. To alter the source column used for labelling use the Labels button on the Layer Control dialog. To remove all labels from the annotation layer use the Clear Custom Labels sub menu accessible via the Label button on the Draw/Edit toolbar or the **GO>Edit>Clear Custom Labels** menu.

# Query Menu

### GO>Query

The Query menu items are used to create and maintain queries that may be used in interrogation of data tables.



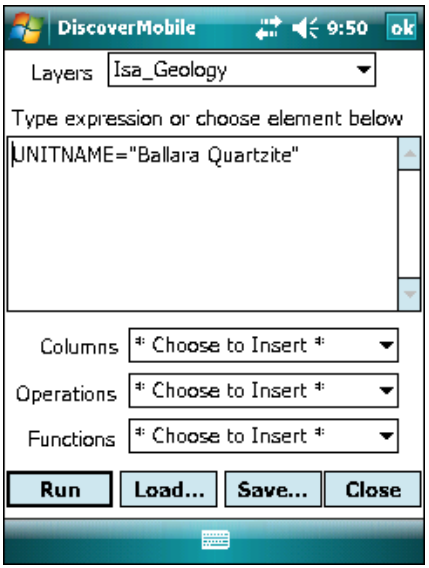

*Query menu*

- *Select*
- *Select All*
- *Clear Selection*
- *Find*
- *Find Selection*
- *Browse Selection*

## Select

### GO>Query>Select

The Select query dialog enables the concise construction of SQL queries within Discover Mobile. The first step to creating a query is to select a Layer or base table to query.




*The Query dialog with layer and query specified*

Construct the query using the appropriate columns and operators and then tap the Run button to initiate the query. When Discover Mobile has found all the items which meet the selection criteria a prompt will appear asking you to either select the objects in the map or cancel the query.

If you choose to select the items, Discover Mobile will extract the data from your base table and store the results in a temporary selection table. The selection table contains only the rows and columns that meet your criteria. The default name of the results table is Selection.

If you wish to save your query for re-use at a later time then use the Save button and assign an appropriate name for the query. To re-use the query, tap the Load button, select the appropriate query file and the query will be restored.

### Columns

After you have chosen the layer to be queried, the column drop down list displays the available data fields in the layer. If you place the stylus over a field and select it, the entry will be placed in the query expression area.

### Operations

Quite complex queries can be created using the operators and functions in Discover Mobile. A drop-down list of operators is available to assist in creating the query expression.

For information on Query operators, see *Operators*.

### Functions

A drop-down list of functions is available to assist in creating the SQL text of the query.

For information on Query functions, see *Functions*.

## Select All

### GO>Query>Select All

The Select All menu item selects all records from a table and places the items in the Selection table. The selection will only select objects from a single layer. Discover Mobile displays a dialog to allow you to choose which table to apply the Select All query to.

After a Select All command is given, all the objects in the selected layer will be highlighted and the items placed in the Selection table.

## Clear Selection

### GO>Query>Clear Selection

The Selection table can be populated from a query or a Select All menu command (as described above). If you wish to unselect the various items in the Selection table, use this option (**GO>Query>Clear Selection**).

## Find

### GO>Query>Find

The Find menu item allows a fast method of interrogating data and viewing the selection results. With the Find dialog you can specify the target Layer and search for a keyword in the selected column. The keyword needs to match exactly (in case and spelling) with the word in the search column.

When items are found and the search is successfully completed, the number of found items is displayed in a message box. The items are also shown in a preview window with the found objects highlighted. You can then view and interrogate the objects found by the search.

## Find Selection

### GO>Query>Find Selection

Occasionally a query may be run and although the query successfully found one or more items, it may not be obvious where they are in the map window (due to the map zoom level). In these circumstances, the Find Selection command centres the display to indicate the location of the items in the Selection table.

## Browse Selection

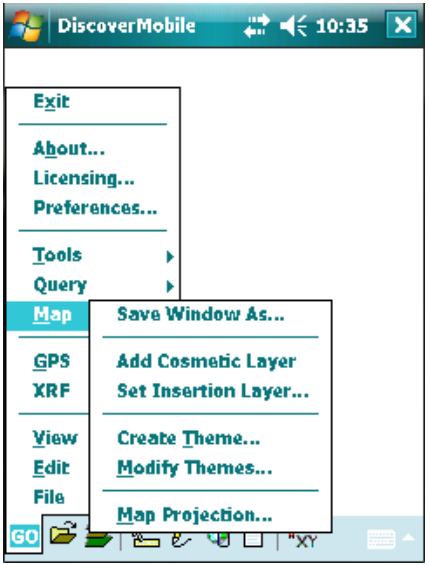
### GO>Query>Browse Selection

The Browse Selection tool enables the viewing of selected map objects in a Browser Window. Only the map objects which were selected will be displayed in the Selection Browser.

# Map Menu

**GO>Map**

The Map menu items are used to set the Insertion Layer, add a Cosmetic Layer to the map display, create themes for a given layer or modify the projection of the map window.




*Map menu*

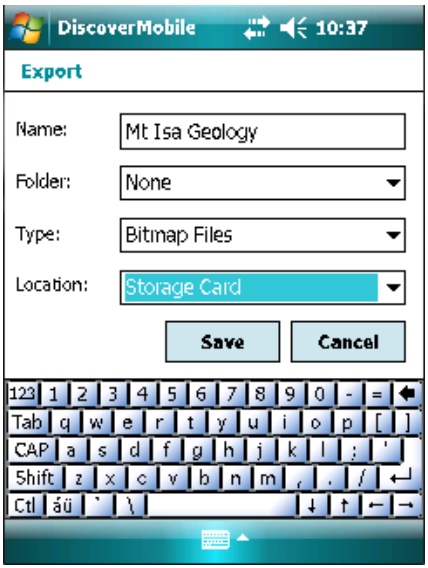
For more information, see:

- *Save Window As*
- *Add Cosmetic Layer*
- *Set Insertion Layer*
- *Create Theme*
- *Modify Themes*
- *Map Projection*

## Save Window As

### GO>Map>Save Window As

Any display can be saved as a Windows compatible bitmap. The **GO>Map>Save Window As** menu option requires that a filename and folder be specified. The output filename specifies a bitmap having a default .BMP file extension.




*Specify the name and location to save a display window as a bitmap file*

## Add Cosmetic Layer

### GO>Map>Add Cosmetic Layer

The cosmetic layer is a temporary layer which can be used to hold graphic objects. When a cosmetic layer is created it will be placed at the top of the Layer Control list and is set as the insertion layer.

For more information, see *Adding a Cosmetic Layer*

## Set Insertion Layer

### GO>Map>Set Insertion Layer

The Insertion Layer is where drawing objects created with the Drawing tools are stored. Drawing objects will be stored on the selected layer until a new layer is selected.

For more information, see *Setting the Insertion Layer*.

## Create Theme

### GO>Map>Create Theme

You can change the appearance of maps with themes. For more information, see *Thematic Mapping*.

### Dataset

The dataset specifies the layer to be used for the theme. The various fields (columns) of the dataset are shown in the list box.

### Type

The theme Type determines the method of distributing the values within the nominated data field. Select a theme type from:

- **Auto** – An automatically scaled data range determined from the numerical data field selected.
- **Ranged** – A type of thematic map which displays numerical data according to data ranges set by the user. The ranges are shaded using colours or patterns.
- **Bar Chart** – A type of thematic map, which displays a bar chart of thematic variables for each record in the table.
- **Pie Chart** - A type of thematic map which displays a pie chart of thematic variables for each record in the table.
- **Graduated Symbol** – A type of thematic map that shows symbols (point objects) sized by order of magnitude representing specified threshold values.
- **Dot Density** – A type of thematic map which displays data as a series of tiny dots, where each dot represents some specific quantity. For example, in a dot-density map of rock age, each dot might represent 10,000 years.
- **Individual Value** - A type of thematic map that shades records according to individual values.

For more information, see *Theme Type*.

### Theme Fields

Select the fields that the selected theme is applied to. Theme types that involve comparison of field values allow multiple data field selection (for example, pie and bar charts).

### Compact Legend

The normal sized legend shows the entire sampling and the ranges used. The compact format shows less detail of theme style and data range. For more information, see *Thematic Legend*.

## Modify Themes

### GO>Map>Modify Themes

Opens the Themes dialog, from where you can modify and remove existing themes.

### Modify

Tap the Modify button to change the data specification, symbols, annotation and appearance. The displayed dialog and associated controls vary depending on the thematic Type being used. For more information, see *Modifying Themes*.

### Legend

Tap the Legend button to modify the title, subtitle, text appearance, and to select compact or normal format. For more information, see *Thematic Legend*.

### Remove

Removes the selected theme.

### Remove All

Removes all themes.

## Map Projection

### GO>Map>Map Projection

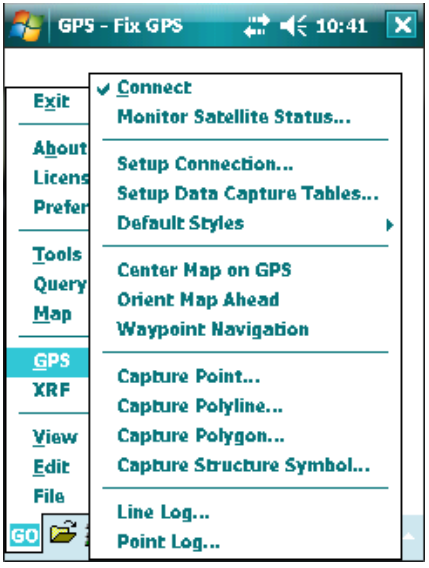
For information about the native map projection, and how this changes as you open tables and raster images, see *Controlling the Map Projection*.

Use the **GO>Map>Map Projection** command to specify the map projection. This is the projection into which objects are captured with the Drawing tools. Discover Mobile supports the same range of map projections as MapInfo Professional.

# GPS Menu

### GO>GPS

The GPS menu provides full control of GPS connections, data capture, logging, GPS object display styles and GPS debugging.




- *Connect*
- *Monitor Satellite Status*
- *Setup Connection*
- *Setup Data Capture Tables*
- *Default Styles*

- *Center Map on GPS*
- *Orient Map Ahead*
- *Waypoint Navigation*
- *Capture Point*
- *Capture Polyline*
- *Capture Polygon*
- *Capture Structure Symbol*
- *Point Log*
- *Line Log*

## Connect

### Go>GPS>Connect

Make a GPS connection. For instructions on setting up and connecting the GPS, see *Connecting to the GPS*.

## Monitor Satellite Status

### GO>GPS>Monitor Satellite Status

The Monitor Satellite Status dialog shows the number and position of satellites currently in view. If a satellite is red it is not used in the GPS fix. Each available satellite is numbered and the corresponding signal strength is displayed as a bar in the Satellite Strength Plot.

## Setup Connection

### GO>GPS>Setup Connection

Configure the GPS connection. For instructions on setting up and connecting the GPS, see *Connecting to the GPS*.

## Setup Data Capture Tables

### GO>GPS>Setup Data Capture Tables

This option is similar to the Map>Set Insertion Layer function, but is specific to GPS data capture. It allows a default capture table to be specified for each GPS object type (point, polyline and polygon). See *Assigning GPS Capture Layers*.

## Default Styles

### GO>GPS>Default Styles

Define default styles for different types of GPS-located objects. For more information, see *Setting Default Styles for GPS-Located Objects*.

## Center Map on GPS

### GO>GPS>Center Map on GPS

If **GO>Preferences>Re-Center GPS** is set to **Never**, this command will redraw the view with the current GPS location at the center.

## Orient Map Ahead

### GO>GPS>Orient Map Ahead

The **Orient Map Ahead** menu option (or GPS toolbar button) will turn On/Off the **Auto Map Rotate** function. The **Auto Map Rotate** function will automatically rotate the map view so that the top of the map is oriented towards the direction of travel. The sensitivity of the auto map rotation can be configured using the **GO>Preferences>GPS>Map Rotation** options.

## Waypoint Navigation

### GO>GPS>Waypoint Navigation

The waypoint navigation tool allows the selection of an existing map object (eg point, polygon) as a destination waypoint; it will then report the distance and bearing between the current GPS location and the selected waypoint feature in a waypoint message window.

For more information, see *Navigating to a Known Point*.

## Capture Point

**GO>GPS>Capture Point**

Capture a GPS-located point. For more information, see *Creating GPS-located Objects*.

## Capture Polyline

**GO>GPS>Capture Polyline**

Capture a GPS-located polyline. For more information, see *Creating GPS-located Objects*.

## Capture Polygon

**GO>GPS>Capture Polygon**

Capture a GPS-located polygon. For more information, see *Creating GPS-located Objects*.

## Capture Structure Symbol

**GO>GPS>Capture Structure Symbol**

Capture a GPS-located structure symbolt. For more information, see *Creating GPS-located Objects*.

## Point Log

**GO>GPS>Point Log**

Record a log of the travelled path as a series of points. For more information, see *GPS Point Log*.

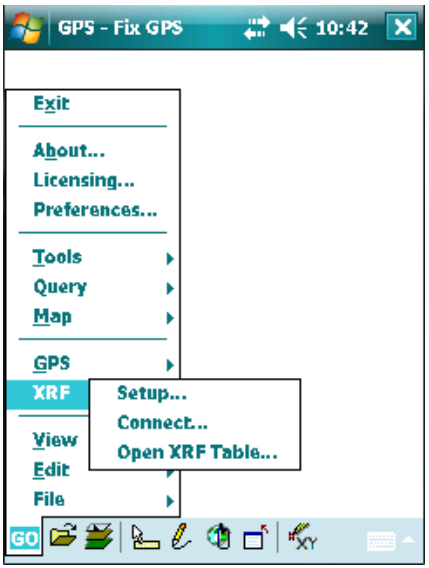
## Line Log

**GO>GPS>Line Log**

Record a log of the travelled path as a series of line segments. For more information, see *GPS Line Log*.

# XRF Menu

**GO>XRF**




- *Setup*
- *Connect*
- *Open XRF Table*

## Setup

**GO>XRF>Setup**

Setup a connection to either an Olympus Innov-X or Niton portable XRF device. For detailed instructions, see Appendix C:*Configure the XRF Connection*.

The Bluetooth COM port needs to be specified (a higher number such as 7, 8 or 9 is recommended). This can also be setup via the Bluetooth Manager. For detailed instructions, see Appendix C:*Setting Up the Bluetooth Connection to an XRF Device*.

A short list of summary elements can be selected: these are the elements that will be listed on the second tab of the XRF output (Summary tab). All elements will still be listed in the following data tabs: this Summary is an excellent way of quickly examining just the key indicator elements of interest as each sample is measured.

## Connect

### GO>XRF>Connect

After the Setup option has been configured, use this option to connect to the portable XRF device. For detailed instructions, see Appendix C:*Connect to the XRF device*.

## Open XRF Table

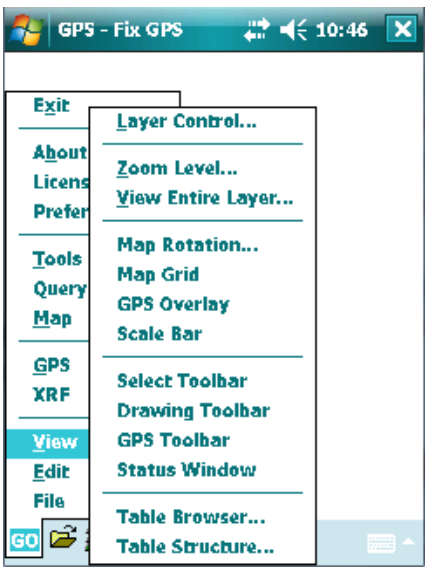
### GO>XRF>Open XRF Table

Open and view previously created XRF batch files. Note that XRF batch files do not need to be open to be selectable in the **XRF>Connect** dialog.

# View Menu

### GO>View

The View menu provides controls to adjust the appearance (displayed layers and zoom level) of the map display.




*View menu*

- *Layer Control*
- *Zoom Level*

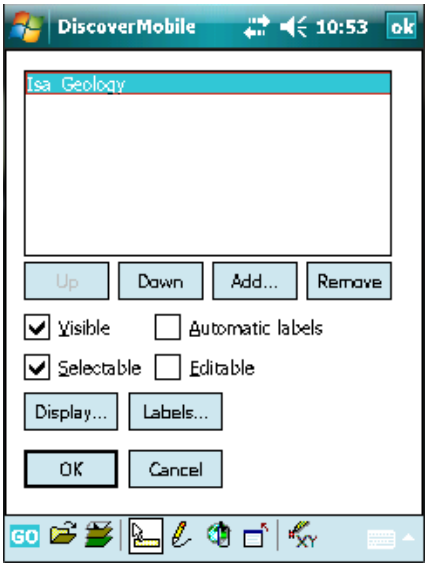
- *View Entire Layer*
- *Map Rotation*
- *Map Grid*
- *GPS Overlay*
- *Scale Bar*
- *Show Toolbars*
- *Status Window*
- *Table Browser*
- *Table Structure*

## Layer Control

**GO>View>Layer Control**

The Layer Control command (also available from the Main toolbar) displays the **Layer control** dialog, from where you can control the display properties of a layer (.TAB file). From the Layer control dialog you can add tables, change the display order, control visibility, turn on editing, and display labels.

For information on adding and removing layers, and changing the properties of layers in the display list, see *Managing Layers*.




*Dialog of the Layer Control*

**Display List**

The Layer list controls the drawing order of the layers within it. The layers are drawn in order from bottom-to-top The layer order can be modified using the **Up** or **Down** buttons. You can add and remove layers from the list with the **Add** and **Remove** buttons.

**Visible**

Hide and show the layer selected in the display list.

**Selectable**

Make objects on the layer selected in the display list selectable with tools like Select, Label and Info.

**Editable**

Make objects on the layer selected in the display list editable.

**Automate labels**

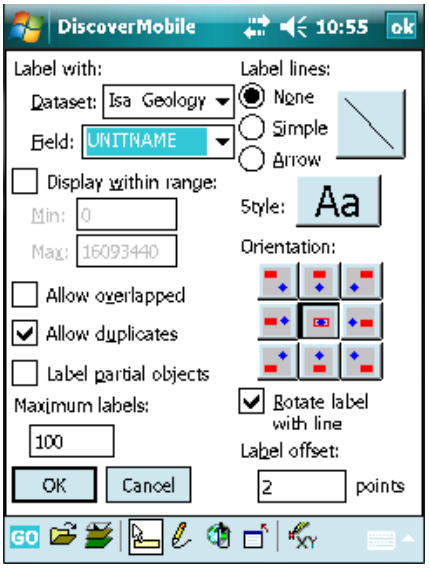
Annotate objects on the selected layer using the settings controlled from the **Label** button.

### Display

Change the display settings of the layer selected in the display list. With this option you can override the style properties of objects on the layer, hide objects when you zoom out from the map, and control line direction, node display and centroid display of polygons. For more information, see *Layer and Object Visibility*.

### Labels

Change the automatic label settings on the selected layer. To apply these changes, the **Automate labels** option must be selected.




*Label dialog for controlling automatic labelling*

#### Dataset and Field

The layer (table) and field (column) to be used when labelling.

#### Label lines

The format of callout lines drawn between the object and the label (no line, simple or arrowed).

#### Display within range

Show labels only within a specified zoom range.

**Style**

Label text style (font, size, boldness, italic, colour etc).

**Allow overlapped**

Allow labels to overlap.

**Allow duplicates**

Allow duplicated labels.

**Label partial objects**

Label objects that are only partially displayed.

**Orientation**

The orientation of the label around the object.

**Maximum labels**

Restrict the number of labels to be drawn.

**Rotate label with line**

Rotate the label with the call-out line.

**Label offset**

Offset the position of the label in pts.

## Zoom Level

**GO>View>Zoom Level**

Set a precise zoom level or map scale for the map window.

**Width**

Set the display distance (measured in metres) for the screen width. Select from the preset values or type a value in the box.

**Scale**

Set map window scale. Select from the preset values or type a value in the box.

## View Entire Layer

**GO>View>View Entire Layer**

Show the full extents of a selected layer or all layers.

## Map Rotation

**GO>View>Map Rotation**

Rotate the map view. Adjust the slider bar or type a value into the rotation box. To return the map view to default (north up), drag the slider back to zero degrees or type 0 (zero) in the rotation value box.

**Note** Map rotation is not available if there are any raster image layers in the display list (even when the raster image is not visible in the map window).

## Map Grid

**GO>View>Map Grid**

Show and hide the map grid. The map grid is displayed in the native projection of the current map window and is always positioned as the top most layer in the map. The grid interval is determined automatically by Discover Mobile to provide best grid spacing for the current zoom level and will be dynamically updated as you zoom in/out or pan around the map.

## GPS Overlay

**GO>View>GPS Overlay**

Show and hide the Satellite Strength Plot information in the bottom left hand corner of the map window.

## Scale Bar

**GO>View>Scale Bar**

Show and hide a dynamic scale bar on the map window. Like the map grid, the scale bar is automatically updated to the most appropriate distance interval as you zoom in and out of the map window.

The scale bar is always displayed as the top most layer in the map window and its position is fixed in the lower right corner of the screen.

## Show Toolbars

### GO>View>Select Toolbar

### GO>View>Drawing Toolbar

### GO>View>GPS Toolbar

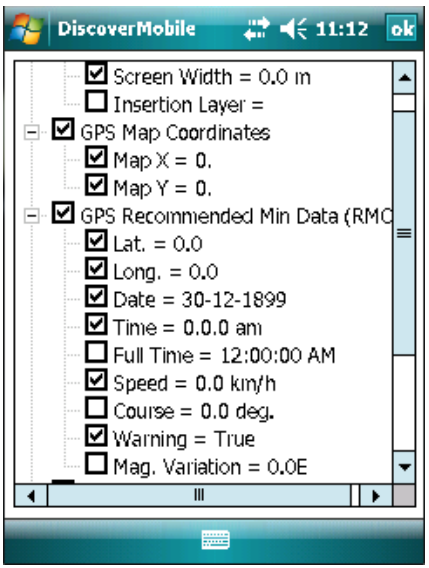
Use these commands to hide and show the Discover Mobile toolbars. You can also hide and show toolbars from the Main toolbar (see *Main Toolbar*).

## Status Window

### GO>View>Status Window

Displays a floating Status window which displays information about the view and GPS data.

You can customize the Status window from the Setup dialog. To open the Setup dialog, hold the stylus over the Status window.




*Some of the Setup options displayed from the Status Window*

**Map Window**

- **Screen Width** – displays the distance across the screen in metres
- **Insertion Layer** – displays the name of the current Insertion Layer

**GPS Map Coordinates**

- **Map X** – displays the current X (Easting or Longitude) position received from the GPS in the map Session Projection. To change the coordinate display to another projection use the GO>Preferences menu and change the Session Projection to the required format.
- **Map Y** - displays the current Y (Northing or Latitude) position value received from the GPS in the map Session Projection. To change the coordinate display to another projection use the GO>Preferences menu and change the Session Projection to the required format.

**GPS Recommended Min Data (RMC)**

The information in this section includes GPS data received from the RMC (Recommended minimum data) sentence of the NMEA data stream. An example of this data sentence in provided below:

$GPRMC,044912.280,A,3753.0880,S,14500.0965,E,0.19,,210503,,*05

The information reported from the RMC sentence includes:

- **Lat** – Latitude position in decimal degrees referenced to the WGS84 ellipsoid
- **Long** – Longitude position in decimal degrees referenced to the WGS84 ellipsoid
- **Date** – Date taken from the GPS and converted into the current date format on the PPC
- **Time** – Time taken from the GPS and converted into the current time zone format on the PPC
- **Full Time** – Date and Time taken from the GPS and converted into the current data and time format on the PPC
- **Speed** – Speed over the ground and reported in kilometres per hour
- **Course** – Course over the ground measured in degrees clockwise from north

- **Warning** – Current status of RMC data from the GPS. Possible values include:

  **True** = No RMC data available

  **False** = Valid RMC data available

- **Mag Variation** - magnetic variation between true north and magnetic north reported from the GPS

**GPS Fix Information (GGA)**

Contains GPS information received from the GGA sentence of the NMEA data stream. The GGA sentence provides 3D position location data and accuracy information. An example of this data sentence in provided below:

$GPGGA,044913.280,3753.0882,S,14500.0964,E,1,04,7.8,19.5,M,,M,,0000*63

The information reported from the GGA sentence includes:

- **Lat** – Latitude position in decimal degrees referenced to the WGS84 ellipsoid
- **Long** – Longitude position in decimal degrees referenced to the WGS84 ellipsoid
- **Altitude** – Altitude measured in metres above sea level
- **GMT** – Time GPS fix was obtained in Universal Time (UTC) or Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) format
- **Quality** – Quality of the GPS fix.
- **No Fix** = no GGA data available
- **GPS** = Standard GPS fix
- **DGPS** = Differential GPS fix
- **Num Sats.** – Number of satellites currently being tracked
- **H. Dilution** – Horizontal dilution of precision

### GPS GNSS DOP (GSA)

Contains GPS information received from the GSA sentence of the NMEA data stream. The GSA sentence provides details on the nature of the GPS fix, the number of satellites being used to calculate the current position and the dilution of precision (DOP). The DOP is an indication of the effect of satellite geometry on the accuracy of the fix. The DOP is a unit less number where the smaller the value the better. For a 3D fix, a value of 1.0 would be considered almost perfect.

An example of this data sentence in provided below:

$GPGSA,A,3,28,07,08,04,,,,,,,,,12.5,7.8,9.8*0B

The information reported from the GSA sentence includes:

- **Mode** – GPS selection mode. Options are Auto 2D/3D or Forced 2D/3D
- **Fix Type** – GPS fix type. Values include: No Fix, 2D Fix or 3D Fix. To obtain a 3D fix the GPS must be tracking 4 or more satellites.
- **P. Dilution** – Dilution of Precision (PDOP)
- **H. Dilution** – Horizontal Dilution of Precision (HDOP)
- **V. Dilution** – Vertical Dilution of Precision (VDOP)

### GPS Satellites in View (GSV)

Contains GPS information received from the GSV sentence of the NMEA data stream. The GSV sentence provides data about which satellites may be able to provide GPS information, based on its viewing mask and almanac data.

Examples of this data sentence are provided below:

$GPGSV,2,1,08,07,83,111,36,28,42,115,43,26,38,283,,29,32,313,*79

$GPGSV,2,2,08,08,24,047,45,09,24,226,,04,20,026,44,11,08,138,*74

The information reported from the GSV sentence includes:

- **Sats** – Unique satellite numbers used for the position solution

## Table Browser

### GO>View>Table Browser

Use this command to view data records within a table. You can enter new data or modify existing data in this browser view. To display the attributes for a single map object, use the Info icon on the Select/View Toolbar.

## Table Structure

### GO>View>Table Structure

Use this command to display a summary view of the fields (columns) within a layer and their associated data types. You can view the structure of different tables but you cannot modify the table structure.

# Edit Menu

### GO>Edit

The Edit menu consists of five grouped options and appears as shown:

*The Edit menu options*

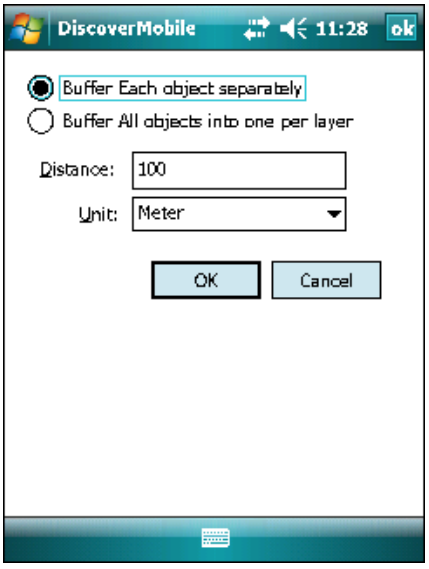
- *Buffer*
- *Edit Mode*

- *Clear Custom Labels and Annotations*
- *Delete*
- *Raster Transparency*
- *Selected Point Location*
- *Selected Object Style*
- *Quick Pick Options*
- *Hardware Button Options*
- *Named Styles*
- *New Object Styles*
- *Range Styles*
- *Apply Range Style*

## Buffer

**GO>Edit>Buffer**

A buffer selects objects that fall within a given distance of one or more selected objects.




**Buffer each object separately**

Create a buffer around each selected object.

**Buffer all objects into one per layer**

Create a single buffer around all selected objects.

**Distance**

Type the buffer distance.

**Unit**

Choose the unit of measurement for the buffer distance.

## Edit Mode

**GO>Edit>Edit Mode>Feature Edit Mode**

**GO>Edit>Edit Mode>Add Edit Mode**

**GO>Edit>Edit Mode>Node Edit Mode**

The edit modes enable different editing operations on selected objects. For information on how to use these modes, see *Editing Objects*.

## Clear Custom Labels and Annotations

### GO>Edit>Clear Custom Labels

### GO>Edit>Clear Annotations

Removes all custom labels or annotations from the Annotation Layer. Individual labels and annotations cannot be removed.

## Delete

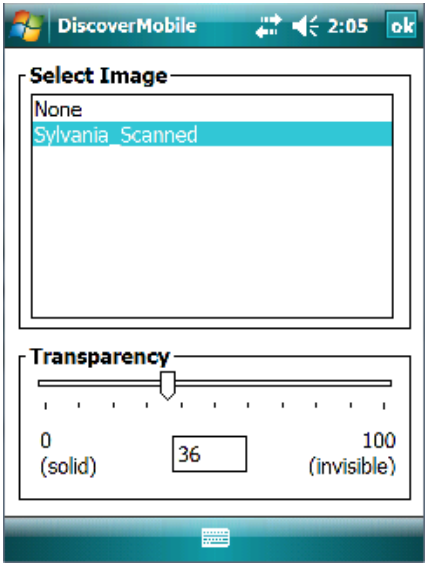
### GO>Edit>Delete

Removes all selected objects from editable layers.

## Raster Transparency

### GO>Edit>Raster Transparency

Controls the level of transparency of a selected layer. Use the slider bar or type a percentage value into the box between 0 (opaque) and 100 (transparent).



## Selected Point Location

### GO>Edit>Selected Point Location

Edit the coordinates of a selected object.

## Selected Object Style

### GO>Edit>Selected Object Style

Modify the appearance of a symbol, line or polygon object. The dialog displayed depends on the type of object selected. For more information about using the style dialogs, see *Formatting Drawing Objects*.

### Symbol Style

Modify symbol style, size and colour and symbol rotation.

### Line Style

Modify line style, line thickness (in either pixels or points (32 points equals 2.54 cm or 1 inch) and colour. A preview sample of the line style is displayed.

### Fill Style

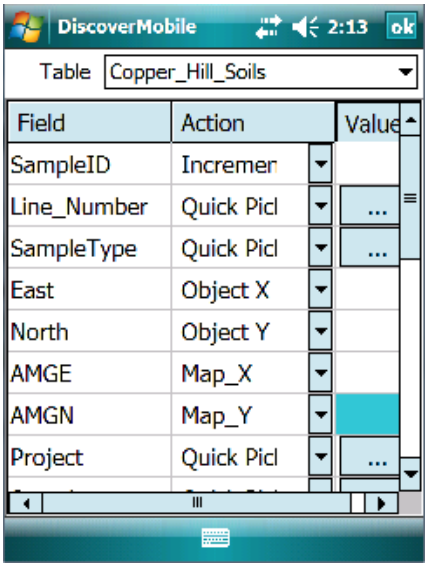
Modify fill patterns, colour and outline style of polygon objects.

## Quick Pick Options

### GO>Edit>Quick Pick Options

The Quick Pick menu option allows users to set actions for data entry fields prior to capturing or creating map objects. These actions may include incrementing or decrementing values from a starting value, updating fields with an object X and Y centroid coordinate, object area, perimeter, length or object rotation angle. If you do not wish to assign an action to a field in the table select Quick Pick as the default action.

**Note** It is recommended you use the Desktop *Picklist Editor* tool to create and edit picklists (Quick Pick options, auto-picks and special fields are synonyms).




*Quick Pick Table Setup*

For more information, see *Quick Pick Fields*.

## Hardware Button Options

### GO>Edit>Hardware Button Options

### Select Function

Choose a function from the pull-down list and then press the desired hardware button on the hand-held device.

### Check for Mapped Buttons

Select to use an existing button mapping configured through Windows (**Start>Settings>Buttons**).

## Named Styles

### GO>Edit>Named Styles

Assign named styles when creating new objects such as points, lines and polygons. Styles can also be linked to specific tables, with specific Quick Pick options for each style.

For more information, see *Applying Named Styles*.

## New Object Styles

**GO>Edit>New Object Styles**

Set the default display style for newly created objects. The default styles can be applied to symbols, lines and polygons.

For more information, see *Setting Default Styles for New Drawing Objects*.

## Range Styles

**GO>Edit>Range Styles**

The symbol style of numeric point data can be permanently altered with a Range Style library. This functionality is similar to the **Point Classification** tool in the Discover **Geochem** module.

A Range Style library consists of a series of user-defined numeric ranges, each with an assigned symbol style. These libraries can be created within Discover Mobile with the **Go>Edit>Range Styles** option (see *Range Styles* for more information), or (recommended) via the Discover Mobile desktop *Range Style Editor*.

## Apply Range Style

**GO>Edit>Apply Range Styles**

Apply a Range Style library to a numeric field of a selected table. This is a one-off permanent style change (see *Range Styles* for more information).

Range Styles can also be automatically applied as XRF data is captured (see Appendix C:*Applying Range Styles* for more information)

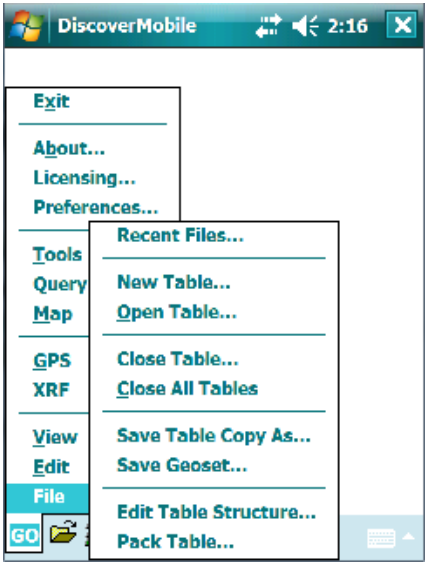
# File Menu

**GO>File**

The File menu item is used to:

- open and restore  recently accessed files
- create and open tables
- close individual or all open tables

- make copies of a table
- save a map session (Geoset) describing all opened tables and their display characteristics.



File menu

- *Recent Files*
- *New Table*
- *Open Table*
- *Close Table*
- *Close All Tables*
- *Save Table Copy As*
- *Save Geoset*
- *Edit Table Structure*
- *Pack Table*

## Recent Files

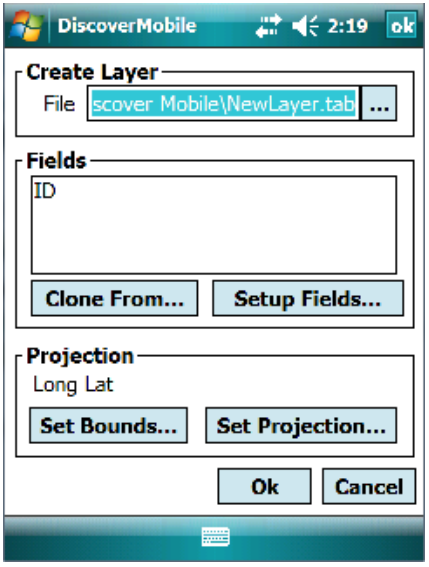
### GO>File>Recent Files

Any recently used Tables or Geosets are listed in the Recent Files option of the File menu. Highlight the required table or Geoset, and press OK to open the file into Discover Mobile. Alternatively, double click on the target file to open it.

## New Table

### GO>File>New Table

Use this command to create new (.TAB) tables directly in Discover Mobile. Tables used in Discover Mobile are identical to those used in MapInfo Professional. You can also create and maintain tables on your desktop PC using MapInfo Professional and then transfer these to Discover Mobile for use in the field.




*New Table dialog accessed from the File>New Table menu item*

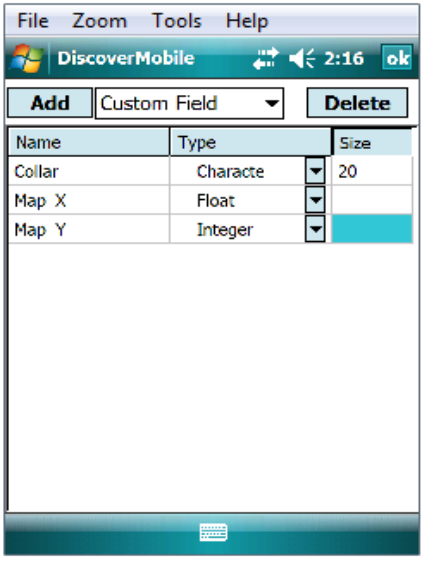
### Create Layer

The name and location of the new table is displayed in the **File** box. To edit, tap the browse button.

### Fields

Displays the fields in the new file. Tap the **Setup Fields** button to add and remove fields (columns) in a table.

### Setup Fields




*Creation of new data fields for a new table*

#### Add

To add a user-defined field, tap the Add button. A new entry titled NewField will be added to the field grid. You can assign a name to the field by tapping on the NewField entry and typing in the required field name.

#### Delete

If a field is added by mistake or is not required you can remove it by first selecting it with the stylus and then tapping the Delete button. Removal of a field is permanent and a message confirming the deletion is displayed.

#### Auto Fields

You can also choose to add Auto fields from the drop-down list next to the Add button. Auto fields are predefined fields which automatically capture information from the attached GPS receiver. To add an auto field, select the required field name from the list and the entry will be added to the field grid. The data type and size will then be set for that field type. Any Auto Fields which exist in a table will be automatically updated when capturing objects via the GPS.

**Note**

The **Map_X** & **Map_Y** auto fields will automatically capture object coordinates in the user-defined projection set with *GO>Preferences>Session* (the default is Longitude/Latitude WGS84).

The **Pos_Lat** and **Pos_Long** fields will always automatically capture object coordinates in Longitude/Latitude WGS84.

These GPS fields can be assigned automatically to custom fields (of the appropriate type) using the *Auto Fields* options.

**Name**

The default name for a new field is NewField. A field name can be up to 31 alphanumeric characters in length. You can use any combination of letters, numbers or an underscore. Any spaces in a field name will be automatically replaced with underscore character ("_"). Field names cannot start with a number and cannot contain any reserved characters (eg $,%, *, &,?,<,> etc). You can use upper and lowercase for legibility but Discover Mobile ignores case when referring to column names.

**Type**

The field type is displayed. The following types are available from the drop-down list:

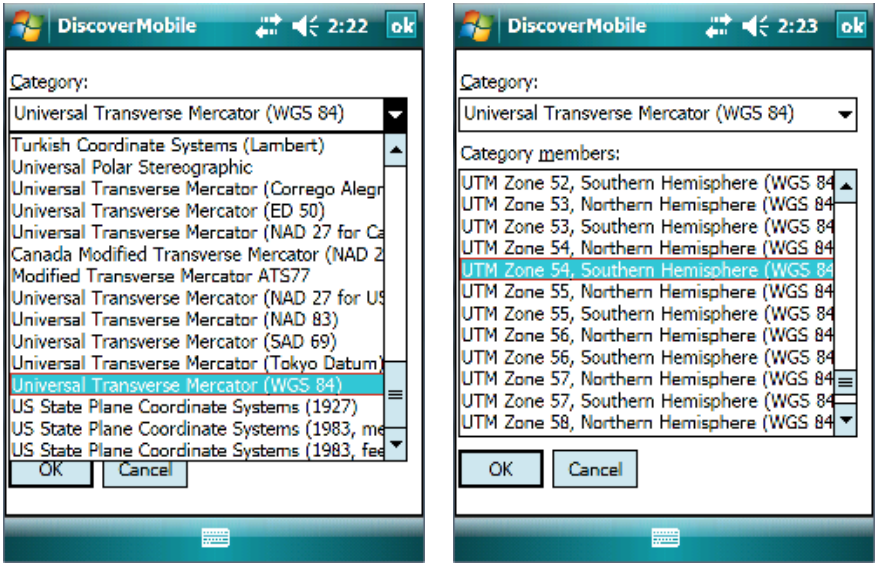
- **Character** – Stores up to 254 alphanumeric characters. You cannot perform arithmetic operations on character fields.
- **Decimal** – Stores numbers in decimal form. Do not use commas when entering numeric values.
- **Date** – These fields can contain a calendar date in the format MM/DD/YYYY. The year can be specified by two or four digits and is optional. Use slashes or hyphens to separate components of a date. The following are valid dates: 01/23/91, 5-6-1989, 10/07.
- **Integer** – Stores integers or whole numbers (numbers without a decimal). The range is from approximately -2 billion to +2 billion.
- **Small Integer** – Integers between -32,767 and +32,767.
- **Float** – Stores numbers in floating-point decimal form.
- **Logical** – These fields contain only True/False or yes/no information. A True/Yes value is stored as "T" and a False/No value as "F".

### Size

Type the number of characters in the field (string and decimal fields only). Maximum field width is 254 for character fields and 10 for numeric fields. The width of a decimal value includes the total number of numeric characters, including the decimal point.

### Projection

All table (*.TAB) files in MapInfo Professional which have graphic objects (i.e. a *.MAP file) have an assigned native map projection. When you create a new table in Discover Mobile the native map window projection will initially default to Latitude/Longitude (WGS84). You can specify an alternative projection for the table by selecting Set Projection option in the New Table dialog. Discover Mobile supports the same range of map projections that are used in MapInfo Professional.




*Select the projection Category and then the Category Member*

When creating new tables in Discover Mobile it is strongly recommended to use the same map projection for all tables. Although Discover Mobile can dynamically transform map objects from one projection to another on-the-fly, this process is very resource intensive and can significantly increase the time taken to redraw the map window. If you wish to capture data from a GPS it is recommended that you set the native map projection for the table to be Latitude/Longitude WGS84. You will then be able to capture new objects in their native projection (raw GPS position information references the WGS 84 ellipsoid). These objects can then be converted into any other map projection using MapInfo's **File>Save Copy As** command.

### Set Bounds

The Set Bounds button is used primarily when a non-earth projection is selected. The Easting and Northing table bounds can be set using this option.

### Clone From

When creating new tables it is often convenient to use the structure and projection of an existing table as a template, particularly if you wish to add several new fields to an existing table. To use an existing table as a template tap the Clone File button. Discover Mobile will then prompt you to choose any one of the open tables as a template for the new table. Discover Mobile will then clone structure of this table and use it for the new table.

**Note** Any Quick Pick options setup for the source table will be copied across for the cloned table.

**Note** No data will be transferred to the new table from the old table; only the table structure will be copied.

## Open Table

**GO>File>Open Table**

Use this command to open .TAB tables (created with Discover Mobile, MapInfo Professional, or Discover), .TAB files with referenced raster files (.BMP, .TIFF, .GIF, JPG, .PCX, .SPOT, .ECW), GeoTIFF images (without an associated TAB file), and Geoset files.

## Close Table

**GO>File>Close Table**

Use this command to close any open table.

## Close All Tables

**GO>File>Close All Tables**

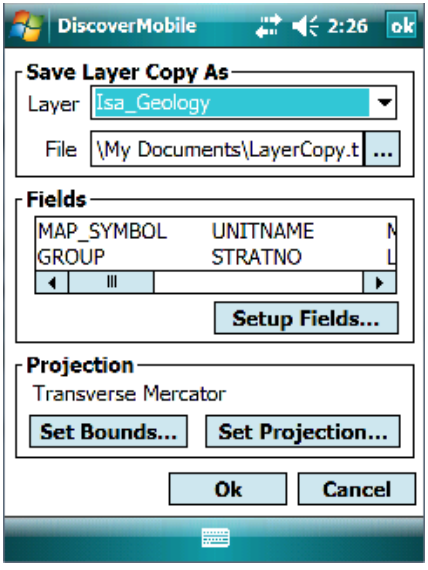
Use this command to close all open tables. Note that when closing all tables, the map display will show no data.

**Note** Using Close All Tables will also disconnect a GPS connection.

## Save Table Copy As

### GO>File>Save Table Copy As

A new table can be created from any open table providing it is not a raster table. The original table remains unchanged and open for all further edits.




*Save a copy of a table dialog*

### Layer

The layer that you want to copy.

### File

The name of the new layer and where the table is stored. Tap the browse button to edit.

### Fields

The fields to be copied to the new table are displayed. To add or remove fields, tap the Setup Fields button.

### Setup Fields

**Important** Make sure that you fully define the table structure when it is first created or copied, because it cannot be changed later.

For information about fields and their properties, see *Fields*.

### Set Bounds

Use this button to change the coordinate bounds of the new table.

### Set Projection

Use this option to change the map projection of the new table.

**Note** The **Save Table Copy As** function will copy both the source tables structure and data into the new table.

## Save Geoset

### GO>File>Save Geoset

A Geoset is a table where a workspace is saved. A Geoset saves the state of all open tables plus the characteristics of displayed objects, including style overrides, zoom layering, map projections and zoom details.

For more information, see *Saving and Restoring Your Workspace*.

## Edit Table Structure

### GO>File>Edit Table Structure

An pre-existing MapInfo Professional vector table structure can be edited. Fields can be either added, deleted, renamed, field size changed.

**Note** When modifying large tables this process make take sometime to complete so you will need to be patient, or perform on a subset of the table.

## Pack Table

### GO>File>Pack Table

When map objects are deleted from the Map Window the record in the Browser Window remains as an undeleted row and therefore the row and map object counts can be different. It is also a good idea to pack a table to make it perform more efficiently.

# 7 Controlling Layers and the View

In this section:


- *About Layers*
- *Managing Layers*
- *Layer and Object Visibility*
- *Managing Objects in Layers*
- *View Controls*
- *Display View Settings*


## About Layers

A layer is a table (.TAB) which contains data objects (points, lines, and polygons) with attributes (fields). For information on creating and managing tables, see *Managing Tables*. You can add tables to the display, change the order of display, control visibility, make the layer editable, and display labels. For information on controlling layers, see *Managing Layers*.

### Editable Layers

Editing of objects can be done on any layer specified as editable. Discover Mobile operates differently from MapInfo Professional in that it allows simultaneously editing of multiple layers. You can move, reposition, resize, format, and delete objects on any editable layer. To make a layer editable, see *Managing Layers*.

### Selectable Layers

Many Discover Mobile functions require that map objects be selected before performing a particular operation. To use the Select tool, Label tool or Info tool you must first make the layer selectable. Like layer editing, more than one layer may be selectable at the same time. However, you can only select an object from one layer at a time. If two objects overlap and you need to select one of those objects then you will need to turn off the table selection property for the object which is not required. To make a layer selectable, see *Managing Layers*.

### Insertion Layer

New drawing objects are added to the current insertion layer. Discover Mobile operates slightly differently to MapInfo Professional in that it supports the editing of multiple layers, so the user must specify which one of the editable layers to add the new objects to. For information on setting the insertion layer for drawing objects, see *Setting the Insertion Layer*.

### GPS Capture Layers

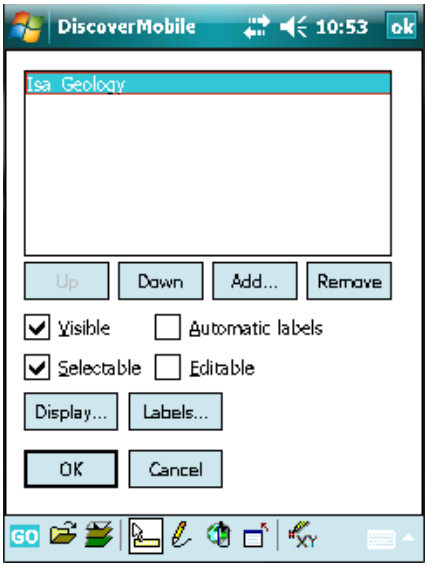
New GPS-located objects are added to capture layers specific to each object type. For information on setting GPS capture layers, see *Assigning GPS Capture Layers*.

### Cosmetic Layer

The Cosmetic Layer is a temporary layer which can be used to hold graphic objects. Unlike MapInfo Professional, the Cosmetic Layer in Discover Mobile is an optional layer. If a Cosmetic Layer has been added to the map then it will be automatically set as the Insertion Layer. For more information, see *Adding a Cosmetic Layer*.

## Managing Layers

Tap the Layer Control tool (or choose *GO>View>Layer Control*) to display the **Layer Control** dialog, from where you can control the display properties of selected tables.




*Layer Control dialog*

The display list shows the drawing order of the current layers. Layers are drawn from bottom-to-top. Image layers should be placed at the bottom of the list to prevent them from obscuring vectors, drawing objects, and text.

### To change the display order:

- In the display list, select a layer, and then tap the **Up** and **Down** buttons.

### To add new layers:

- Tap the **Add** button.

  Adding a layer from the **Layer Control** dialog is the same as opening a table with the **GO>File>Open** command (see *Opening Tables*).

### To remove a layer from the display:

- In the display list, select a layer, and then tap the **Remove** button.

  Removing a layer from the Layer Control dialog is the same as closing a table with the **GO>File>Close Table** command (see *Closing Tables*).

### To make a layer editable:

1. Tap the Layer Control tool (or choose *GO>View>Layer Control*) to display the **Layer Control** dialog.

2. In the display list, select a layer, and then tap the **Editable** check box.

   When you close the Layer Control dialog, the layer will be editable and the appropriate tools on the Draw/Edit toolbar are available.

**To make a layer selectable:**

1. Tap the Layer Control tool (or choose *GO>View>Layer Control*) to display the **Layer Control** dialog.

2. In the display list, select a layer, and then tap the **Selectable** check box.

## Layer and Object Visibility

Often it is convenient to have a layer open but not visible. The layer control can be used to turn the visibility of a layer off, removing it from the display without closing the table.

You can also control the visibility of objects on a layer based on a zoom range. Specifying the zoom range for which a raster layer is visible can greatly increase map redraw speed and remove unnecessary detail from the map display at larger zoom levels, particularly when dealing with complex or detailed map layers.

**To change the visibility of a layer:**

1. Tap the Layer Control tool (or choose *GO>View>Layer Control*) to display the **Layer Control** dialog.

2. In the display list, select a layer, and then tap the **Visible** check box.

**To change the visibility of objects when zooming:**

1. Tap the Layer Control tool (or choose *GO>View>Layer Control*) to display the **Layer Control** dialog.

2. In the display list, select a layer, and then tap the **Display** button.

3. Select the **Display withing range** check box and type the range in the **Min** and **Max** boxes.

4. Ensure the **Automate labels** check box is selected for the layer.

**Note** Zoom layering can also be set in MapInfo before transferring data to Discover Mobile. Zoom layering is set in the Display option of the MapInfo Professional Layer Control.

## Managing Objects in Layers

New drawing objects are added to the current insertion layer. You can also create a temporary cosmetic layer which can be used to hold graphic objects. If a cosmetic layer has been added to the map then it will be automatically set as the insertion layer. You can add labels to objects with any field in the table, and control the format and visibility of the labels.

GPS-located objects are not added to the insertion layer, but are added to GPS capture tables assigned for each type of GPS object.

- *Setting the Insertion Layer*
- *Assigning GPS Capture Layers*
- *Adding a Cosmetic Layer*
- *Labelling Objects*

### Setting the Insertion Layer

Before adding drawing objects to the map window, you must choose which layer the objects are added to.

To determine which layer is currently set as the insertion layer, tap the Status Window tool on the Main toolbar, or choose **GO>View>Status Window**

The current insertion layer will remain selected for as long as the current object type (point, polyline or polygon) remains active. For instance, if the Point capture button is enabled when the insertion layer is set to ‘soils’, all points captured will be automatically inserted into the ‘soils’ table. As soon as a different object type is selected (e.g. polygon), the Insertion Layer dialog will be displayed so that you can select another table.

**To change the insertion layer:**

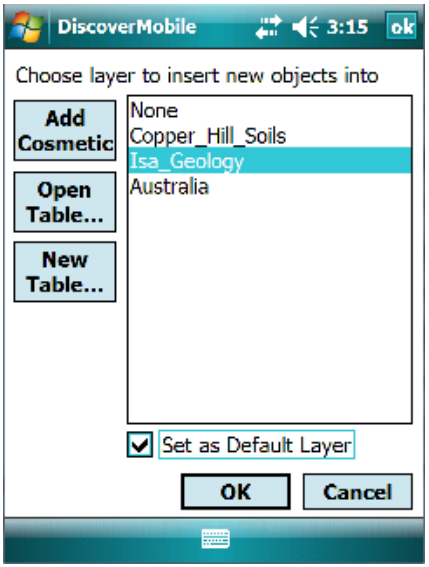
1. Choose *GO>Map>Set Insertion Layer*.

   The current insertion layer is highlighted.

2. From the list of displayed layers, select the required layer.

3. If you want to store all data types on the same layer (e.g. the “geology” table), select the **Set as Default Layer** option. Otherwise the selected table will only remain as the insertion layer for as long as the current drawing object type is selected.

4. Press **OK**.




*Insertion dialog used to specify a layer for editing*

To add objects to a different layer, reopen the Insertion Layer dialog and select a different layer from the list.

**Note** When a layer is selected as the insertion layer, it is automatically made editable and the Draw/Edit tools are made available.

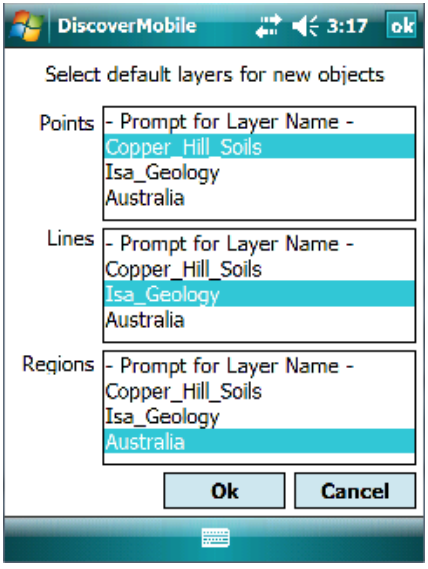
## Assigning GPS Capture Layers

A default capture table needs to be specified for each GPS object type (point, polyline and polygon). This can simplify field data capture, removing the need to respecify the capture table for each new data type. For example, all polygonal objects captured by the GPS can be assigned to a geological mapping polygon table, whilst point data can be assigned to a soil sample table. If a number of tables are being used to enter objects into choose the “Prompt for Layer Name” option to enable different tables to be selected to store captured data.

**To setup capture tables:**

1. Choose *GO>GPS>Setup Data Capture Tables*.

2. Under **Points**, **Lines** and **Regions**, select the default capture layer for new GPS-located objects.




*Setting default tables for each object type can simplify field data collection*

**Note** To automatically use multiple insertion tables for a single object type (such as point data into various soil, lag and rock-chip tables), utilise the **auto-table assignment** functionality within *Named Styles*.

## Adding a Cosmetic Layer

To add a cosmetic layer to the map window use *GO>Map>Add Cosmetic Layer*. When a cosmetic layer is created it is placed at the top of the display list (i.e. it is drawn last). You can alter the position of the cosmetic layer like any other layer (see *Managing Layers*).

When a cosmetic layer is added to the map window it is automatically set to be the insertion layer even if another layer has been previously been set as the insertion layer.

The cosmetic layer is a temporary layer and all inserted objects are held in memory. If Discover Mobile is shutdown, then the contents of the cosmetic layer are discarded.

### To save objects in the cosmetic layer:

1. Choose *GO>File>Save Table Copy As*.

2. Select the cosmetic layer from the list of available tables, and save it as a new table.

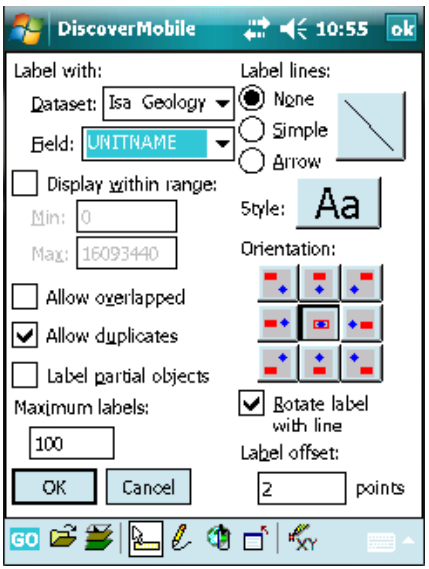
### To remove objects from the cosmetic layer:

1. Select the objects using one of the select tools or, to select all objects in the layer, choose **GO>Query>Select All**

2. Tap the **Delete** tool or choose **GO>Edit>Delete**.

## Labelling Objects

The Layer Control provides an option for automatically labelling objects within a layer using an attribute column in the table. Select the layer you wish to label and then tap the **Labels** button. The Labels dialog is displayed from where you can adjust the label placement options. After setting the label properties, return to the Layer Control dialog and select the **Automate Labels** check box.. All objects in the selected layer table will be labelled with their corresponding attribute.




*Label dialog accessed from the Layer Control for automatic labels*

For information about the labelling options on this dialog, see *Labels*.

# View Controls

- *Zoom and Scale*
- *Pan and Center*
- *Rotate*
- *Map Grid*
- *GPS Overlay*
- *Scale Bar*
- *Save and Restore View*

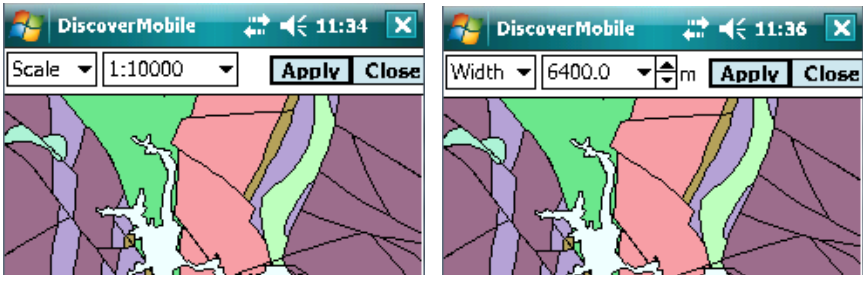
## Zoom and Scale

A selection of tools are provided for controlling the scale or zoom level of the display.

- *Set Zoom Width and Scale*
- *Zoom In and Out*
- *View Extents*

### Set Zoom Width and Scale

The zoom level can be set either from the **Previous Zoom** tool on the Select toolbar (tap the arrow button next to the tool) or by choosing *GO>View>Zoom Level*. This allows you to specify a precise zoom level or map scale for the map window.




*Zoom Level dialogs – setting zoom level by screen width or map scale*

The map zoom level can be set using one of two methods:

- The **Width** option allows you to set the display distance (measured in metres) for the screen width. A range of preset values are available via the selection list, however you can also type any value you require in the box.
- Alternatively, the map window display can be specified using a preferred **Scale**. A range of preset scales are available via the selection list, however, you can also enter an alternative scale in the box if required. The Scale option will adjust the map zoom level so the contents are displayed at the selected scale.

### Zoom In and Out

The **Zoom In** and **Zoom Out** buttons on the Select toolbar increase and decrease the view scale. To use, select one of the tools and then tap inside the display. The view magnifies by a factor of 2x or 0.5x centred at the point of the stylus tap. Alternatively, tap and drag the stylus to define a zoom rectangle.

### View Extents

Choose *GO>View>View Entire Layer* to display the full extents of a selected layer or all layers.

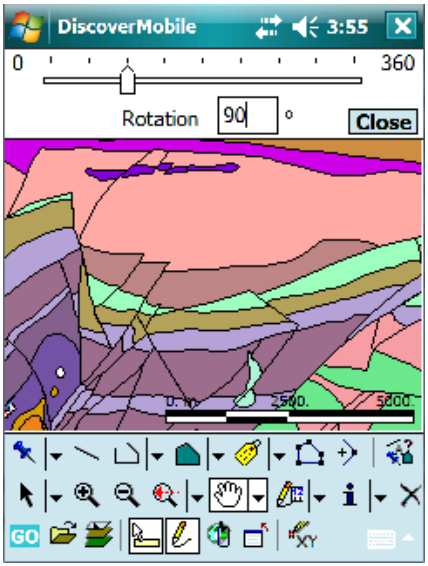
**Note** For large or complex datasets, it may take a long time to draw the entire layer.

## Pan and Center

The **Pan** and **Center** tools share the same position on the Select toolbar. Tap the arrow button next to the tool to select the other tool. To pan the view, tap the tool button, and then tap and drag the stylus on the map in the direction you want the map to move. To centre the view, tap the tool button, and then tap the display where you want the new centre of the display to be positioned.

## Rotate

Discover Mobile provides an option to interactively rotate the map view. This option is only available for vector layers and cannot be used if a raster layer is present in a map window. Choose **GO>View>Map Rotation** to display the rotation dialog. Adjust the slider bar to set the map rotation angle or type a value into the rotation box. To return the map view to default (north up), drag the slider back to zero degrees or type 0 (zero) in the rotation value box.




*Map Rotation dialog and slider bar*

The rotation angle is measured in degrees and can range in value from 0 – 360. The bearing is measured clockwise from North.

**Note** Map rotation is not possible when a raster image layer is listed in the Layer Control dialog (even when the raster image is not visible in the map window).

## Auto-Rotate and Auto-Centre

These functions are only available when the GPS is connected.

### Auto-Rotate View

**Auto Rotate Map** button will turn on/off the **Auto Map Rotate** function. The Auto Rotate Map function will automatically rotate the map view so that the top of the map is oriented towards the direction of travel. The auto map rotation preferences can be configured using the **GO>Preferences** menu. Two settings are available for the auto rotate function.

- **Rotation Degree Tolerance** - specifies the angular difference required between two consecutive points before the map view will rotate. The recommended and default value is 45 degrees although the value can be set to any integer between 0 and 360 degrees.

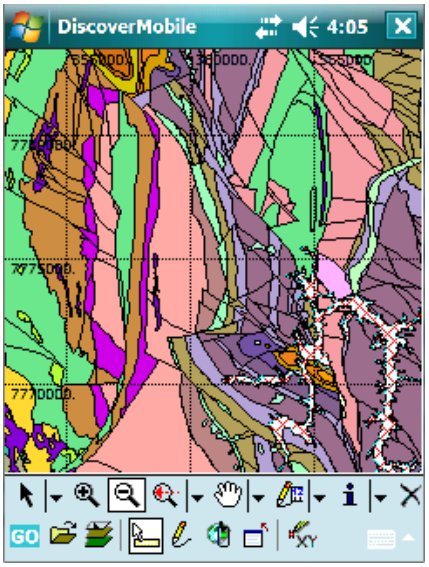
- **Speed Tolerance** – specifies a speed value below which the map view will not rotate. By adjusting the Speed Tolerance you can control the rotation so that the map view will only rotate if the GPS speed across ground is greater than the set value. This setting is useful to prevent the map view from rotating when you are standing still or travelling slowly. The default value is 2 km/hour.

### Auto-Centre View

Set the **GO>Preferences>Re-Center GPS** setting to **Always**, to keep the current location centred in the map window. If this option is set to **Never**, you can also manually recentre the view by choosing **GO>GPS>Center Map on GPS**. If you wish to quickly re-center the map on the GPS navigate to the **Auto Rotate Map** button and select the option **Center Map on GPS**.

## Map Grid

You can display a dynamic map grid over the contents of the map window. The map grid is displayed in the native projection of the current map window and is always positioned as the top-most layer in the map. The grid interval is determined automatically by Discover Mobile to provide best grid spacing for the current zoom level and will be dynamically updated as you zoom in/out or pan around the map.




*Discover Mobile map window showing the dynamic map grid displayed over a geology map*

### To show and hide the map grid:

1. Choose *GO>View>Map Grid* and turn on or off the map grid display.

**Grid Format**

You can set preferences for the number of grid lines which are displayed on the map, the size and colour of the grid labels and the style, width and colour of the grid lines on the Grid Overlay properties dialog. The actual number of grid lines which are displayed on the map may vary at different zoom levels from the preferred number entered on the setup dialog to maintain an even grid spacing interval for the current zoom level and map window extents.

### To change the display properties of the grid:

1. Choose *GO>Preferences*.

2. Under **Session**, select **Grid Overlay** and open the setup dialog.

3. Set the number of lines, label size, label colour, and line style. width and colour.

For more information, see *Grid Overlay*.

### Grid Projection

You can override the default grid projection so that it is displayed in a different coordinate system to the map window. The user projection will override the native map window projection so that the map grid will always be displayed in the user coordinate system rather than the native map projection.

**To change the map grid projection:**

1. Choose *GO>Preferences*.

2. Under **Session**, select **User Projection** and open the setup dialog.

**Important** Take care when overriding the Default Map Projection with a User Projection. This may reduce map redraw performance and it will also override the default map projection when creating or capturing new objects to a table.

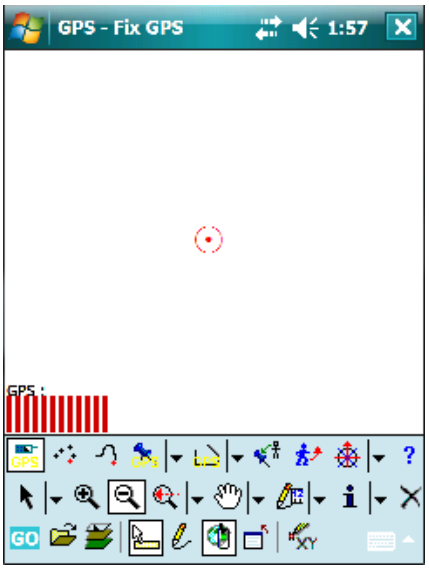
For more information, see *User Projection*.

### Rotated Grids

The dynamic map grid can be used when the Map Rotation function is active (see *Rotate*) providing there are no raster layers present in a map window. When the Map Rotation function is active and the map grid is displayed, you may not be able to see all the text labels for each grid line as they may be positioned off the screen.

## GPS Overlay

You can display the Satellite Strength Plot information in the bottom left hand corner of the map window. Use the *GO>View>GPS Overlay* command to hide and show the GPS information.




*Discover Mobile map window showing the Satellite Strength Plot as series of green bars in bottom left of screen.*

## Scale Bar

You can display a dynamic scale bar on the map window. Like the map grid, the scale bar is automatically updated to the most appropriate distance interval as you zoom in and out of the map window.

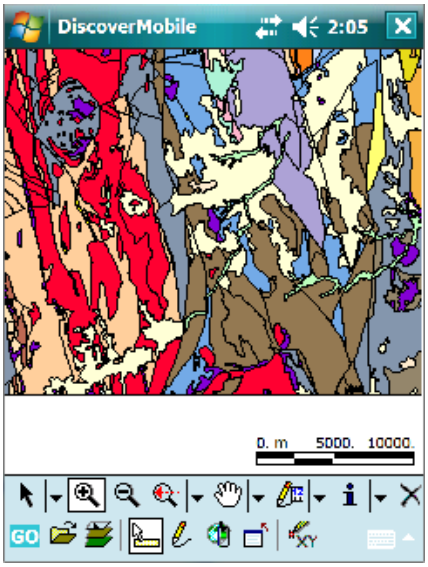
The scale bar is always displayed as the top most layer in the map window and its position is fixed in the lower right corner of the screen. The Scale Bar uses the same line colour and label size properties as the map grid (see *Map Grid*).

**To change the distance units:**

1. Choose *GO>Preferences*.

2. Under **Session**, select **Distance In** and choose the distance units.

**Note** Changing the distance units will also affect the operation of the distance measurement tools on the Select/View toolbar.




*Discover Mobile map window showing the dynamic Scale Bar in the lower right corner of the map window*

### Save and Restore View

Restoring a view will return the map display to the same scale and map centre at the time it was saved. It will not reopen layers that were in use when the view was originally saved. If you want to save a view which includes all associated map layers and display properties you need to save a Geoset. For details refer to the *Saving and Restoring Your Workspace*.

The **Previous Zoom** button on the Select/View toolbar provides a selection of options for saving and restoring multiple views.

Tap the arrow button to select a saved view and to display the functions available from this tool:

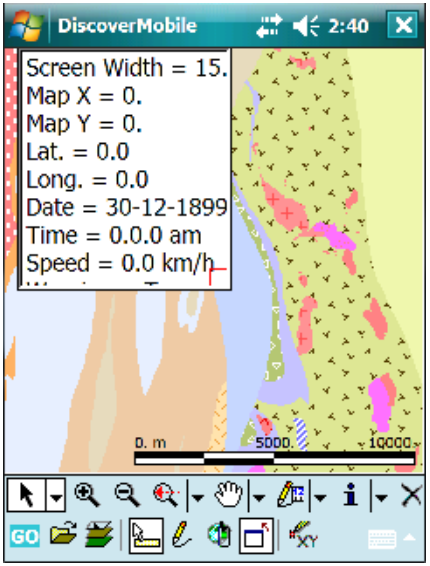
**Save View** – saves the current view properties with a unique name. Multiple views can be defined and restored directly from the pop-up menu. Note that only the display area properties are saved, not the view contents.

**Delete View** – deletes a saved view from the list.

## Display View Settings

Information about the view settings is available from the Status Window.This is a floating window displays the following information:

- The screen width (in metres) of the map window display .
- The current object Insertion Layer.
- GPS information such as GPS position, GPS Map Position, Date, Time, Speed, Fix Dilution, Number of Satellites etc.




*Floating Status Window displayed*

The display and contents of the Status window can be customized.

### To hide and show the Status window:

- Tap the Status Window tool on the Main toolbar or choose **GO>View>Status Window**.

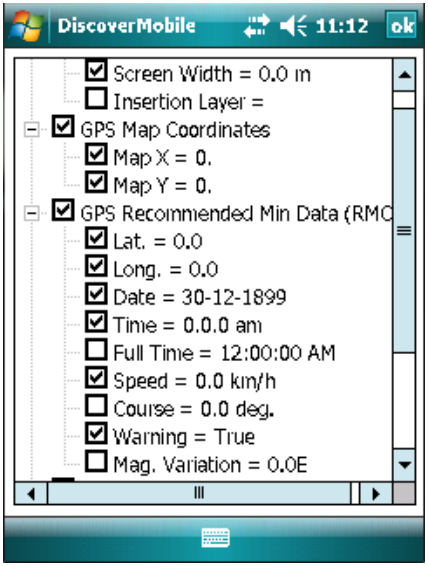
### To change the window size and font:

- You can adjust the size of the Status window by dragging the red box in the lower right corner. Discover Mobile will remember the size and position of the window when you next activate the Status Window.
- You can also adjust the display size of the text in the Status Window with the *Font Size* setting under the **GO>Preferences>System Settings** command.

### To change the information displayed in the Status window:

1. Hold the stylus over the Status window until the the Setup dialog is displayed.

2. Check or clear a check box to add or remove that item from the Status Window.




*Some of the Setup options displayed from the Status Window*

You can also tap **GPS Display Settings** button on the GPS toolbar to configure the GPS information in the Status window.

The items available for display in the Status Window are described in *Status Window*.

# 8 Working with Maps

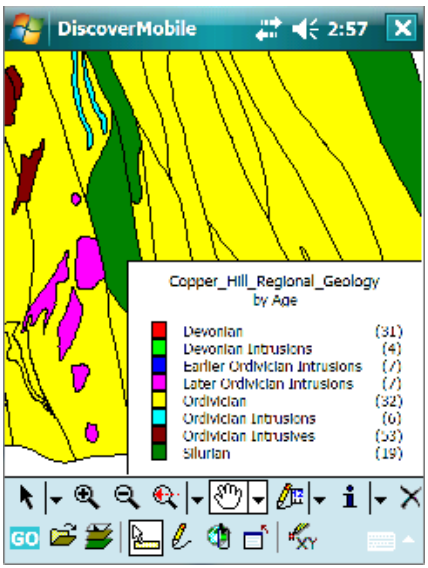
In this section:


- *Thematic Mapping*
- *Controlling the Map Projection*
- *Raster Transparency*


For information about individual commands used to control the map display, see *Map Menu*

## Thematic Mapping

The display of map objects (points, lines and polygons) can be modified with a temporary fill pattern or colour based on the value of attributes associated with an object (eg. geology type, size, geological age, date). Such shading is called "thematic mapping" or "theme" mapping.. An example of a thematic map display is shown below:




*Thematic geology map based on the ages of mapped unit*

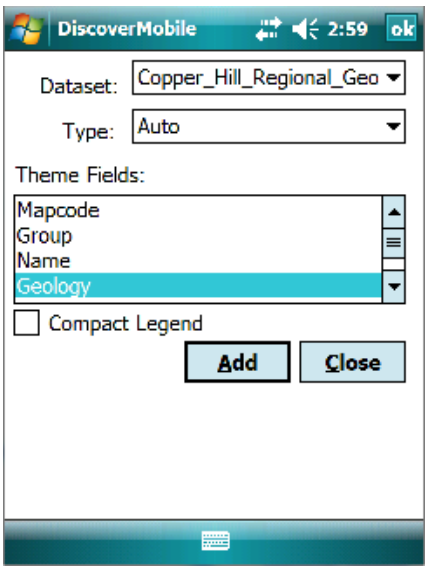

- *Creating a Theme*
- *Theme Type*

- *Thematic Legend*
- *Modifying Themes*

## Creating a Theme

**Note** For a permanent style modification, use *Range Styles*.

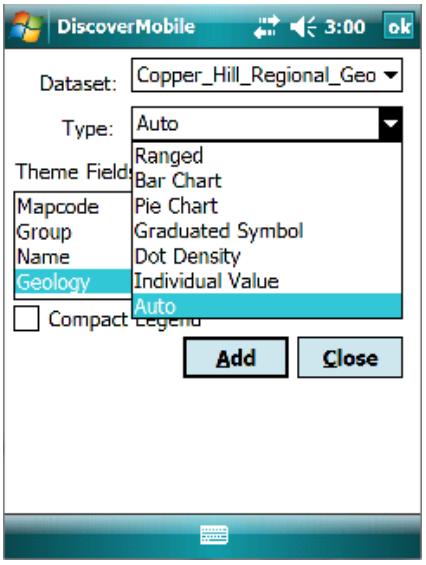
When creating a theme, objects with attributes of similar value are shaded with the same thematic colour. To add a theme layer to a map use the *GO>Map>Create Theme* command. The following dialog will be displayed:




*The dialog to specify a theme*

The dataset specifies the layer to be used for the theme. The various fields (columns) of the dataset are shown in the list box. The type of theme is defined by the Theme Type pick list.

The *Theme Type* determines the method of distributing the values within the nominated data field.




*Available theme Types*

Depending on the theme Type selected, one or more layers may be selectable from the available list. Theme types that involve comparison of data field values allow multiple data field selection (eg pie and bar charts).

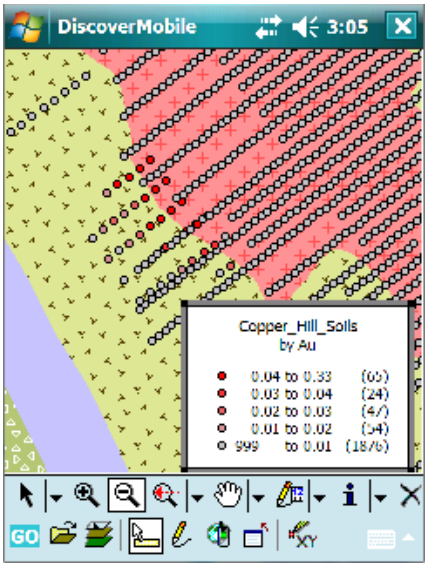
## Theme Type

- *Ranged Thematic Maps*
- *Bar Chart Thematic Maps*
- *Pie Thematic Maps*
- *Graduated Symbol Thematic Maps*
- *Dot Density Thematic Maps*
- *Individual Value Thematic Maps*

### Ranged Thematic Maps

A Ranged Thematic Map displays table data according to ranges you specify. The ranges are shaded with colours and/or patterns. Ranged thematic maps allow you to illustrate data values across points, lines and regions. They are used to show a relationship between the data values and geographical area (e.g. assay figures, geochemical sampling results) or to present ratio information such as assay result density (copper geochemical results divided by area).

Below is an example of a range thematic map showing the use of colour to modulate the copper data value at each sample site in a geochemical sampling grid.

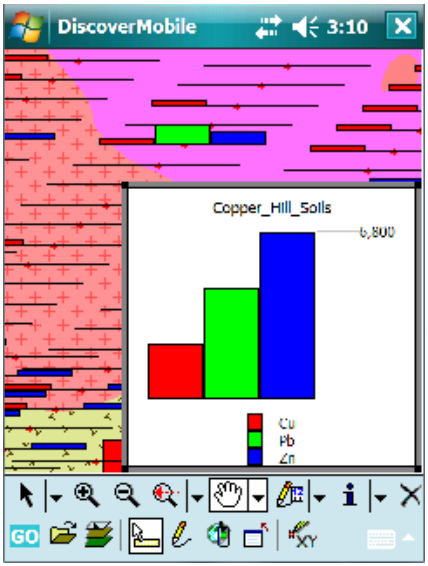



*Ranged thematic map of geochemical sampling for copper using colour*

## Bar Chart Thematic Maps

Bar charts can be used to analyse multiple variables per record. Comparing the size of bars in each chart can be useful for obtaining information about a set of values in a table or comparing one bar in all the bar charts can also help draw conclusions about a variable across all records in a table. Thin lines extending in the opposite direction to the bar chart orientation indicate negative values in the column. Negative values do not display in stacked bar charts.

An example of a bar chart thematic map using assay geochemical sample results is shown below.

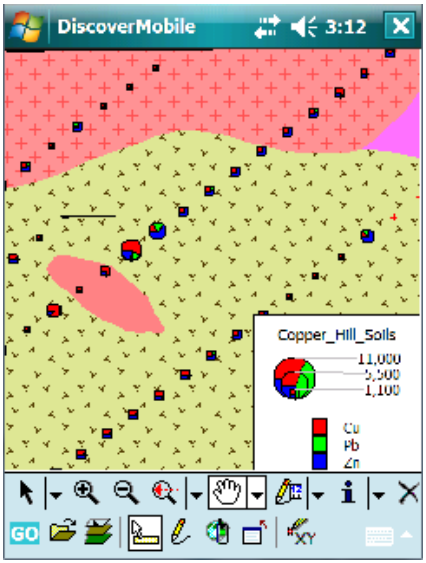



*Example bar chart thematic map with expanded legend*

## Pie Thematic Maps

Pie charts are multi-variable displays and can be used on a map to analyse several variables at a time. You can compare the size of the pie wedges in each chart to obtain information about a record in the table, or compare one pie wedge in all of the pie charts to draw conclusions about a variable across all the records. Pie chart diameters can also be compared to obtain information about the entire data set.

An example of a pie chart map is shown below relating various assay values.




*Example pie chart thematic map with expanded legend*

## Graduated Symbol Thematic Maps

Graduated symbol maps show data points with specific numerical values such that the size of the symbol for each record in your table is directly proportional to the data values. It is useful for illustrating quantitative information, such as high-to-low rankings. The size of the symbols is proportional to the data values of the points. Points that have larger data values appear larger and points that have smaller data values appear smaller..

## Dot Density Thematic Maps

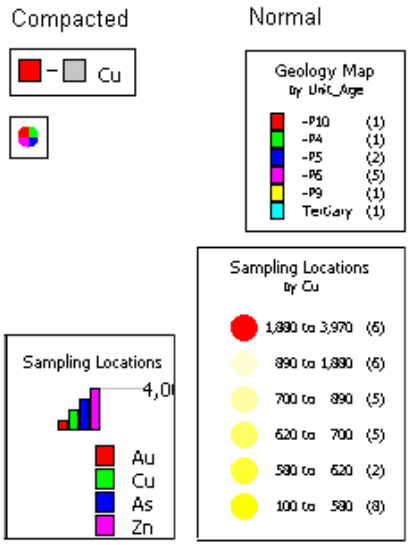
Displays the data values as dots on your map where each dot is equal to a number and the total number of dots in a region is proportional to the data value for that region. A dot density map allows you to examine raw counts of data (e.g. gold assays or stream sediment samples). Each dot represents a number of units. That number, multiplied by the total number of dots in the region, equals the data value for that region.

## Individual Value Thematic Maps

Individual value thematic maps allow you to shade records according to unique attribute values in the table. Individual value templates can be multi-variable. Choose from shaded lines, points or regions. A thematic map that draws map objects according to individual values is useful when you want to emphasise categorical differences in the data rather than show quantitative information (for example types of samples in a given area, zoning classifications in a given area etc.).

## Thematic Legend

The legend associated with thematic maps can be in either a compacted or normal presentation style, which can be selected when either creating the theme or from the Themes dialog (see *GO>Map>Modify Themes*).




*Types of legends both Compacted and Normal*

The compact format shows only the minimal information of theme style and data range. The normal sized legend shows the entire sampling and the various ranges used.

**To reposition the legend:**

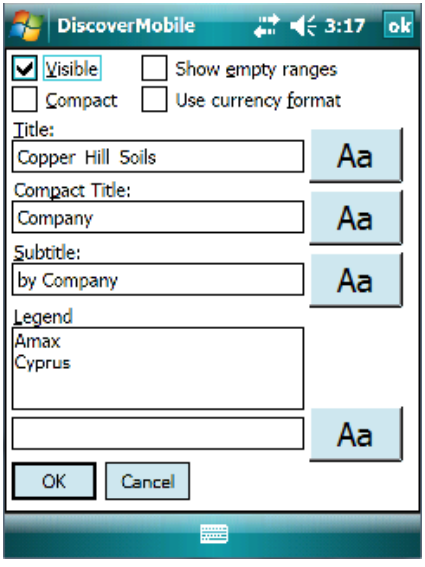
- Legends can be positioned on the screen by selecting and dragging the stylus to a new, more convenient location. Similarly, by selecting a legend corner, you can resize the area covered by the legend.

### To edit the legend:

1. Display the legend format dialog in two ways:

   - Double-tap the legend.
   - Choose **GO>Map>Modify Themes**, select a theme, and tap the **Legend** button.

2. Modify the title, subtitle, text appearance, and choose compact or normal format.



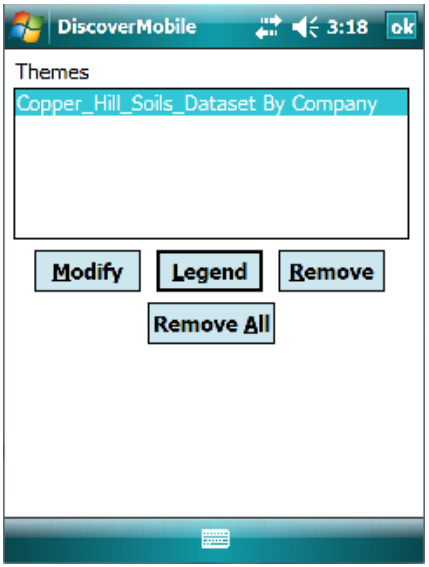

*Legend format dialog*

3. Tap **OK**.

**Note** The controls provided in the legend dialog may alter depending on the legend and Theme Type used.

## Modifying Themes

Themes can be modified from the modify themes dilaog, which displays a list of existing themes.



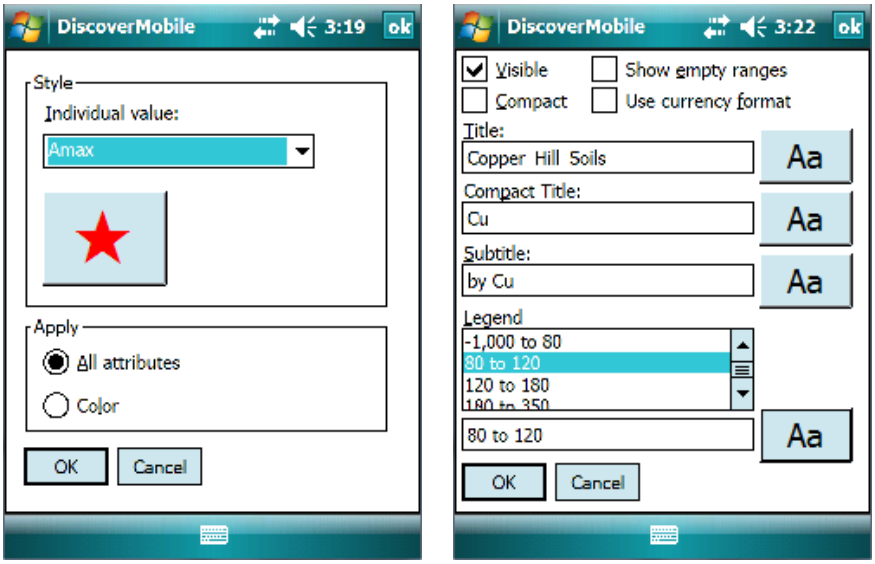

*Modify themes dialog*

**To modify a theme:**

1. Choose *GO>Map>Modify Themes* to display the modify themes dialog.

2. Select a theme from the list, and tap **Modify**.

3. Edit the data specification, symbols, annotation and appearance. The displayed dialog and associated controls vary depending on the thematic type being used. Below are examples of two such dialogs.




*Theme modification dialogs*

**To remove themes:**

1. Choose *GO>Map>Modify Themes* to display the modify themes dialog.

2. Select a theme from the list, and tap **Remove**. To remove all themes (not just the selected theme), tap **Remove All**.

**Note** Once the themes have been removed, they cannot be restored.

**Note** The display style of point objects can also be permanently changed by applying *Range Styles*.

## Controlling the Map Projection

The Discover Mobile map window has a native map projection which determines how all objects in the window are displayed. By default, an empty map window (i.e. one with no tables loaded) is initially assigned a projection of Latitude/Longitude WGS84. If you connect and start a GPS with a blank map window then the current position symbol will be displayed in the native Latitude/Longitude WGS84 projection (the default projection of the window and GPS coordinate system).

The first time you open a data table into an empty map window, Discover Mobile will check the native projection of the table and compare it with the projection of the map window. If the native projection of the table is different to projection of the map window then Discover Mobile will automatically change the map window projection to match the native projection of the first opened table. This only occurs for the first table that is opened. All subsequently data tables which are loaded into the map window will be added in the map window projection, regardless of their native projection. If the native projection of any of these tables is different to the map window projection, then Discover Mobile will dynamically convert the map objects on-the-fly so they are displayed in their correct relative position on the map.

The only exception to this behaviour occurs with raster tables. If a raster table is opened in Discover Mobile, the map window projection will automatically change to the native projection of the raster table, even it there are already vector tables open in the window. Any open vector tables, which have a different native projection to the raster table, will be dynamically reprojected on-the-fly so that the map objects are displayed in the correct position relative to the raster image.

Although dynamic re-projection can be a very powerful feature, it can also have adverse effects on map redraw performance on PPC devices. Dynamic map re-projection requires considerable system resources to perform the necessary projection calculations for each map object and can therefore slow down the redraw performance of the map window by as much as 70%. If you experience slow map redraw performance then check your data to make sure that the native projection of all your data tables are the same. Refer to Chapter 3 Desktop Data Preparation for Discover Mobile for more information on improving map redraw performance.

**Note**

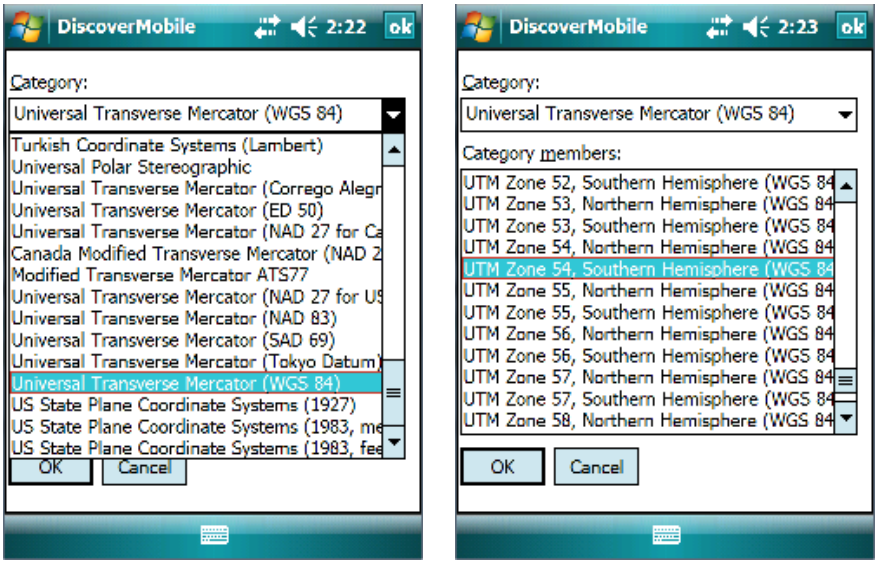
Dynamic re-projection of map objects from one projection to another requires considerable system resources and can therefore have adverse effects on map redraw performance. It is highly recommended that you convert all large data tables (e.g. with more than 1000 objects) which are to be used in Discover Mobile to the same native map projection.

Discover Mobile provides two methods for altering the data projection, depending on whether data is being captured using the Drawing tools or GPS tools.

**To set the map projection for capturing drawing objects:**

1. Choose *GO>Map>Map Projection*.

2. Select the projection **Category** and **Category Member**. Discover Mobile supports the same range of map projections as MapInfo Professional.




*Projection Selection dialog showing Projection Category and then the Category Member*

**To set the map projection for capturing GPS objects:**

1. Choose **GO>Preferences**.

2. On the Preferences dialog navigate to the **Session** entry and change the **Map Projection** entry to **User Defined**.

3. Tap the button next to the **User Projection** entry and change the projection category by selecting the required projection from the drop-down list.

4. Tap **OK** on the dialog and then **OK** in the Title bar to return to the main window.

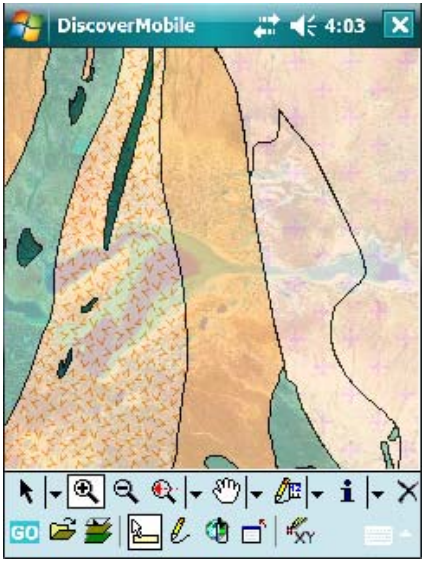
The Map Grid and Status Window display units should then be displayed in your user-defined projection rather than the map window projection.

## Raster Transparency

Choose **GO>Edit>Raster Transparency** to adjust the transparency of raster images.

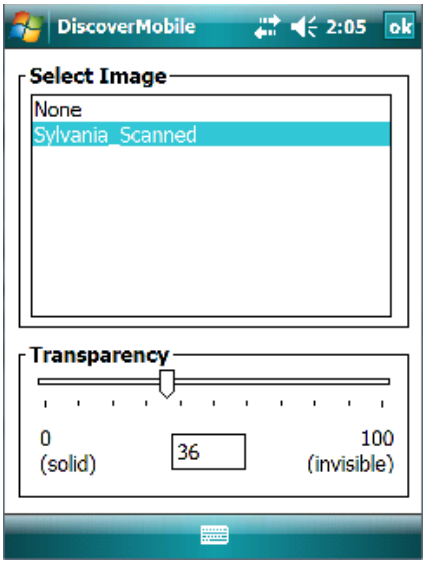
Raster images displayed by Discover Mobile can have their degree of opacity or transparency altered. This is useful when you have multiple images displayed such as a scanned geological map overlain by a Landsat image. In these circumstances you can adjust the transparency of the overlying image so that information from the underlying raster can be seen.

An example of this is shown below where a partially transparent scanned geology map overlays a Landsat image.




*Transparent geology map overlying a Landsat image*

You can control the level of transparency of a selected layer using the slider bar or by entering a specific percentage value into the central text box. Note that no transparency will be applied to the image if the level is set to 0 (zero). A value of 100 will make the image completely invisible or transparent.




*Raster Transparency controls*

# 9 Working with Tables

In this section:


- *Adding Tables, Maps, and Fields*
- *Defining Field Properties*
- *Managing Tables*
- *Searching for Data*


## Adding Tables, Maps, and Fields

You can add a new table by either:


- *Using MapInfo Tables and Raster Images*
- *Creating a New Table with Discover Mobile*
- *Cloning Tables*
- *Using Templates*


### Using MapInfo Tables and Raster Images

Discover Mobile supports standard MapInfo Professional table formats (.TAB files). These include MapInfo Professional native .TAB files as well as .TAB files which reference raster files (.BMP, .TIFF, .GIF, JPG, .PCX, .SPOT, .ECW). Discover Mobile can also open GeoTIFF images directly even if they do not have an associated .TAB file.

When the table is opened (see *Opening Tables*), it is placed at the top of the Layer Control list. When a GeoTIFF is opened, Discover Mobile loads the image and creates a .TAB file in the same directory. If Discover Mobile does not recognise the registration parameters, then an error will be displayed. If this happens, you will need to manually register the image in MapInfo Professional and then copy the image file and .TAB file back to the PPC.

For information on copying files to the PPC, see *Transferring Data Between Devices*.

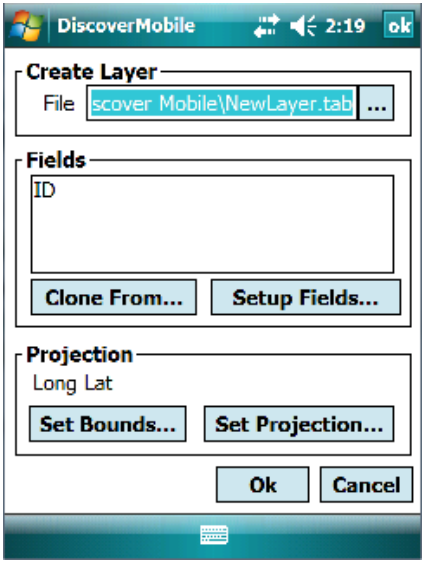
## Creating a New Table with Discover Mobile

You can create a new table and create the field structure, or you can clone the new table from an existing table. Table fields can be user defined, or you can add a predefined Auto field for capturing GPS data. When you create the table, you can select where the table is stored. The default folder for tables can be changed with *GO>Preferences>Directories*. You can also select the map projection for each table, or use the default projection. For more information about map projections, see *Controlling the Map Projection*.

**Important** Make sure that you fully define the table structure when it is first created, because it cannot be changed later.

### To create a new table:

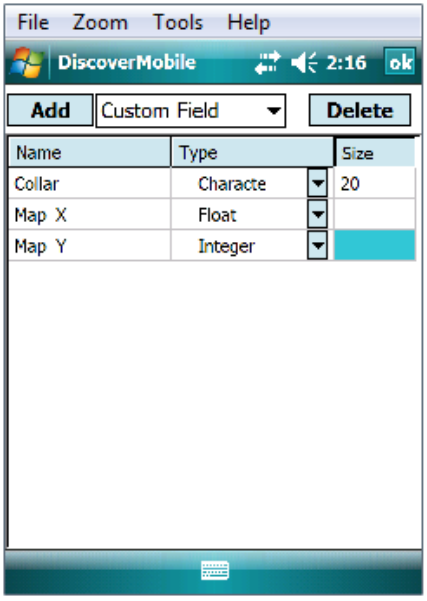
1. Choose *GO>File>New Table* command. The New Table dialog is displayed.




*New Table dialog*

2. Under **Create Layer**, tap the browse button and type a name for the new table and select a folder in which to store the table.

3. To define fields, tap the **Setup Fields** button.




*Creation of new data fields for a new table*

4. To add a user-defined field, tap the **Add** button.

   A new entry titled NewField will be added to the field grid. You can assign a name to the field by tapping NewField in the **Name** column and typing the required field name. In the **Type** and **Size** columns, select the field properties. For more information about fields and their properties, see *Field Types*.

   To remove a field, tap the field name and then tap the **Delete** button. Removal of a field is permanent and a message confirming the deletion is displayed.

5. To add an Auto field, which automatically captures data from the GPS, select a field from the pick list next to the **Add** button. The name and properties of Auto fields are predefined. For more information about Auto fields, see *Auto Fields*.

6. To select the map projection, tap **Set Projection**. If you do not set the projection, the default map projection will be used. For more information about map projection, see *Projection*.

**Important** When creating new tables in Discover Mobile it is strongly recommended that you use the same map projection for all tables.

7. To set the easting and northing table bounds, tap the **Set Bounds** button. For more information, see *Set Bounds*.

## Cloning Tables

When creating new tables it is often convenient to use the structure and projection of an existing table as a template, particularly if you wish to add several new fields to an existing table. You can use any open table as a template for the new table.

**To clone a table from an existing table:**

1. Choose *GO>File>New Table* command. The New Table dialog is displayed.
2. Under **Create Layer**, tap the browse button and type a name for the new table and select a folder in which to store the table.
3. Tap the **Clone From** button.
4. Select the table you want to clone and tap **OK**.
5. To add and remove fields in the new table, tap the **Setup Fields** button.

**Important** Make sure that you fully define the table structure when it is cloned, because it cannot be changed later.

6. When you are finished modifying the table structure tap **OK** and the new .TAB file will be created.

**Note** Any *Quick Pick Fields* setup for the source table will be copied across for the cloned table.

**Note** No data will be transferred to the new table from the old table; only the table structure will be copied. To copy the data and structure, see *Copying Tables*.

### Using Templates

It is good practice to create a standard set of templates, from which tables are cloned (see *Cloning Tables*). This saves time when creating new tables, and these templates can be provided to all field users to ensure that field data collection is standardised. It also minimises data loss in the case of user error: multiple daily or weekly files provide more redundancy that a single file for a month-long field campaign.

For example, create a series of field data collection template tables, e.g. soil_template, lag_template, streams_template, etc. Ensure that the required *Quick Pick Fields* have been set for these templates (e.g. incrementing sample numbers by 1, sample type field set to a constant “soil”, geologist set to constant “BJ”, etc). Save these to a template directory on the storage card. Then clone a new table from these templates (e.g. soils_240507, lag_240507, etc.) as required and capture the field data into these cloned tables.

## Defining Field Properties

- *Field Types*
- *Quick Pick Fields*
- *Pick Lists*
- *Auto Fields*
- *Structural Data Fields*

### Field Types

The following field types are available when creating fields in a new table (see *Creating a New Table with Discover Mobile*):

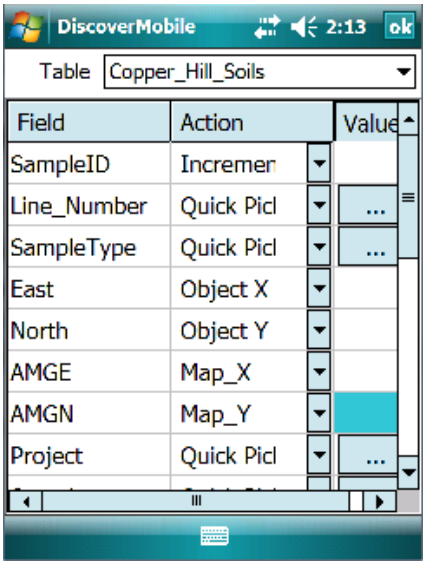
Character
Decimal
Date
Integer
Small Integer
Float
Logical

For more information about each field type, see *New Table*.

## Quick Pick Fields

**Note** Only use the following creation and editing procedures in Discover Mobile if you do not have access to the desktop *Picklist Editor* tool, which is much quicker andeasier to use.

You can set actions for data entry fields prior to capturing or creating map objects. These actions may include incrementing or decrementing each new object from a starting value, updating fields with an object X and Y centroid coordinate, object area, perimeter, length or object rotation angle. If you do not wish to assign an action to a field in the table select Quick Pick default action.




*Quick Pick Table Setup*

Users can also create and use custom Quick Pick lists for streamlined entry of attribute information. See *Pick Lists*.

## Pick Lists

Discover Mobile supports the use of fully customisable pick lists in the table browser window to simplify repetitive data entry tasks and to permit you to use standard look-up codes.

**Note** Only use the following creation and editing procedures in Discover Mobile if you do not have access to the desktop *Picklist Editor* tool, which is much quicker andeasier to use.

### Format

The pick list files used in Discover Mobile are standard ASCII text files and can either be created on a Desktop computer using the desktop Picklist Editor tool or a text editor such as Notepad or exported from a database, spreadsheet or MapInfo Professional as a text file and then loaded into Discover Mobile. Alternatively, pick lists can also be created and edited on-the-fly in Discover Mobile. If intending to create a pick list file on a desktop computer, it must conform to the format expected by Discover Mobile. The pick list files must be ASCII text files with each attribute on a separate line.The pick list file name must also conform to one of the following formats:

- **TableName_FieldName.txt** – this naming convention means that the pick list file will only be available for the field name in the specified table name. For example, if your table is called Geology and the field you want to use the pick list with is called Lithology, then you would give the pick list the name Geology_Lithology.txt. This is the default convention for pick list files which are automatically created in Discover Mobile.

- **FieldName.txt** – this naming convention means that the pick list file will be available for ALL tables which contain the specified field name. For example if you call your pick list Comments.txt then that pick list will be available for all tables which contain a field called Comments.

Picklists are stored in the Picklist Directory specified under the **GO>Preferences** menu option (default `\My Documents`). It is recommended to set this location to a location such as a storage card.

### Use

To use a Picklist to add attribute data to an object, open the object browser window (accessed for a new object via the **Edit Attributes** option, or via the Info tool or View Browser options for existing objects). Select the pull-down arrow adjacent to the relevant field; the contents of the appropriate pick list will be displayed. Selecting an entry will auto-populate the field.

If the Picklist does not appear, check that it is in the correct format, has been placed in the assigned Pick List directory and that it has the same name as the target field (and same prefix as the Table name if required).

### Example Pick Lists

The Discover Mobile desktop installation includes an Example dataset. This data is installed to an Example Data directory under the Discover Mobile folder (default location `C:\Program Files\Encom\Discover Mobile\Example Data`).

The example dataset includes a number of standard geological Pick List text files in an `.\Example Data\PickList` subdirectory:

Grain_clast_size
Lithology
Lithology_example
Occurrence
Percentage
Regime
Regolith_example
Sample_Type

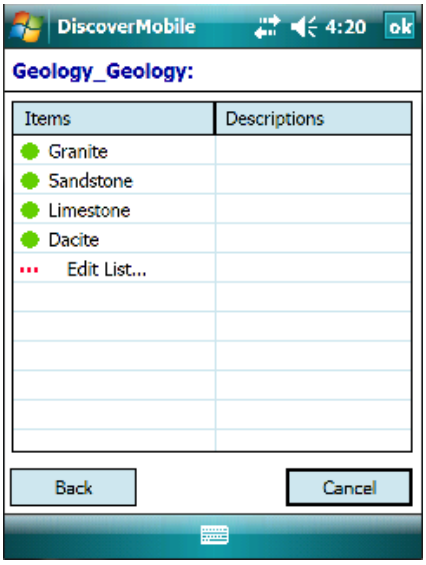
To use these files, copy them to the mobile device's Pick List directory (as set via **GO>Preferences>Directories>Pick Lists**). Then ensure that the appropriate field name in the capture table and the pick list name patch. It is recommended to truncate/edit the longer Pick Lists down to only those entries commonly used, and then save these files with a new name (e.g. Lithology) to the removable storage card. This will allow easier attribute selection within the Discover Mobile interface, without having to scroll through the entire list.

### Create a Pick List in Discover Mobile

**Note** Only use the below creation and editing procedures in Discover Mobile if you do not have access to the desktop *Picklist Editor* tool – this is much quicker and simplified tool.

1. Bring up the table browser either by using the Information icon or the **GO>View>Table Browser** menu.

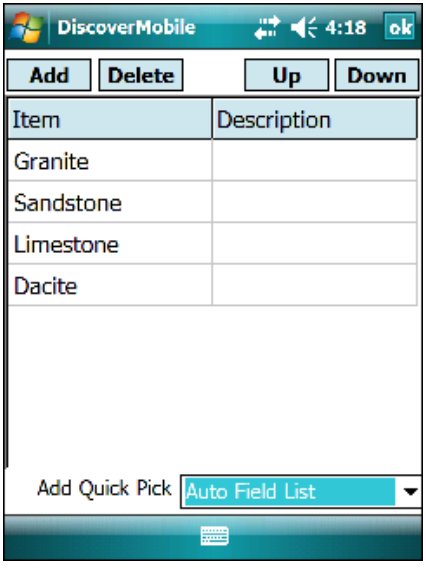
2. Tap on the down arrow to the right of the field in the browser for which the pick list file is to be created. The edit list dialog will then display.




*Selecting the Edit List option from the table browser*

3. Type in the attributes required for the field.

**Note** Quick Pick auto-fields can also be added to the picklist – see *Auto Fields* for more information.




*Entering a custom quick pick list*

4. When the Pick List of items is complete tap the OK button in the top right of the dialog to save the pick list file.

5. The browser dialog will redisplay, allowing the user to select any of the entries just created from the drop-down menu.

## Auto Fields

### GO>Edit>Quick Pick Options

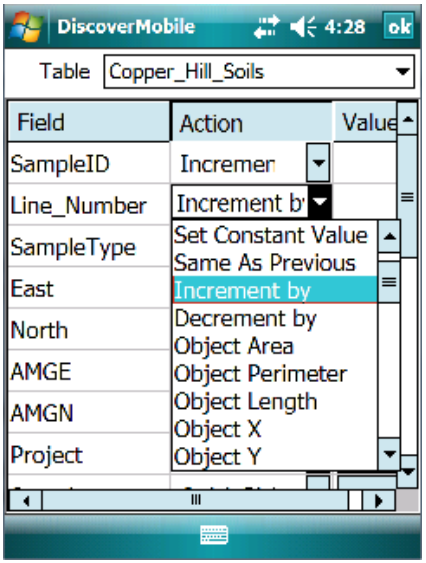
Discover Mobile provides a range of Quick Pick options. These allow specified fields to be automatically incremented or decremented, or to be populated with a constant value. Quick Pick options can also be used to assign object statistics such as region area or line length, as well as assigning GPS data to custom fields.

**Note** Only use the following creation and editing procedures in Discover Mobile if you do not have access to the desktop *Picklist Editor* tool, which is much quicker and easier to use.

To set a Quick Pick option, select the **GO>Edit>Quick Pick Options** menu option. Select the required table from the pull-down list at the top of the following dialog. The table view will show three columns: Field name, Action, and Value. Quick Pick options can only set for custom fields (not preset GPS fields). Custom fields will have a ‘Quick Pick’ option displayed in the Action column (though it is not recommended to set Quick Pick options for Structural fields).

**Note** An easier way to add QuickPick Auto field to *Create a Pick List in Discover Mobile*.

Tap the Quick Pick pull-down arrow adjacent to the target field (e.g. Sample_number). A list of available Quick Pick options will be displayed. Select the required option (e.g. ‘Increment by’). If a value or character string is required by the Quick Pick option (‘Set as Constant Value’, ‘Increment by’ and ‘Decrement by’), type this into the adjacent Value column. Both the ‘Increment by’ and ‘Decrement by’ options will automatically set a default value of 1.




*The Quick Pick list*

Press OK to save these settings. Upon capturing a new object into the table, the Quick Pick options will be used to populate the specified fields. Note that for the 'Increment/Decrement by' and 'Same as previous' options, an initial field value will need to be specified; otherwise numeric fields will start incrementing from 0.

The following Auto Fields are available for use:

- **System Date** – populates the field with the current date as set on the Mobile device (**Start>Settings>System>Clock**). This capture field must have a Date type. Alternatively a string field (of 20 characters width) can be utilised.

- **System Time** - populates the field with the current time as set on the Mobile device (**Start>Settings>System>Clock**). This field must be a string field (of 20 characters width).

- **Set Constant Value** – assigns the user specified value every time a new object is created (e.g. date, sampler, data type, mesh size, etc). This value must entered into the Value column.

- **Same As Previous** – will update the current field with the same attribute as the previous record. This function will only work if there is an existing record in the table with an attribute value.

- **Increment by** – increments the current numeric value by any user specified value. The increment value must be entered in the Value column (default of 1). This function will work for both numeric and character (string) data fields. For string fields, it will add the increment value after any characters; e.g. if the initial string value is CHRC, following entires will be CHRC1, CHRC2, etc. If the string value already incorporates a numeric suffix, this suffix will be incremented; e.g. FAN345, FAN346, etc.

- **Decrement by** – decrements the current numeric value by any user specified value. The decrement value must be entered in the Value column (default of 1). This function will work for both numeric and character (string) data fields (see the “Increment by’ option above for further information.

- **Object Area** – updates the attribute field with the Area value of the current object if it can be computed. The Object Area function can only be used with closed polygon objects.

- **Object Perimeter** – updates the attribute field with the Perimeter of the current object if the perimeter value can be computed. The Perimeter function can only be used with closed polygon objects.

- **Object Length** – updates the attribute field with the Length value of the current object if it can be computed. The Length function can only be used with line or polyline objects.

- **Object X** – updates the attribute field with the Centroid X value of the current object. The Object X function can be computed for all object types.

- **Object Y** – updates the attribute field with the Centroid Y value of the current object. The Object Y function can be computed for all object types.

- **Object Rotation** – updates the attribute field with the Rotation value of the current object. The rotation function can only be used with point objects.

- **GPS-specific output** – the various GPS specific output streams can be linked to custom fields of the appropriate formats (i.e. Float fields for most GPS data types such as Map_X, Pos_Lat, etc, Date field for Pos_Date, etc). These special fields record the data as displayed in the GPS Status Window.

The following additional options are available when the **Quick Pick** tag is set. Press the adjacent browse button, select the Auto Field List tab, and choose a Quick Pick option:

- **Link File** – hotlink the file path of any file on the PPC device to a map object.

- **Link Image** – hotlink the file path of an image file on the PPC device to a map object.
- **Link New Audio** – hotlink the file path of a new Audio file (such as a voice recording) as an attribute to a map object. This can be particularly useful for recording voice notes at sample locations.
- **Link New Pocket Word** – hotlink the file path of a new Pocket Word document as an attribute to a map object.
- **Link New Pocket Excel** – hotlink the file path of a new Pocket Excel document as an attribute to a map object.
- **Link New Custom** – hotlink the file path of any file on the PPC device an attribute to a map object.
- **[Read Only]** – set the pick list file to be read only. If the read-only flag is added to the pick list you cannot edit the pick list using the Edit List menu in Discover Mobile. If you set a pick list to be read-only and you want to edit it in Discover Mobile you will have to directly open the pick list file using a text editor and remove the Read Only flag.

## Structural Data Fields

Discover Mobile has a structural data mapping utility which enables you to record structural measurements manually by tapping on the map in the appropriate location or by using your current GPS position. When you capture a structure measurement Discover Mobile will automatically prompt you for the data type (eg bedding, cleavage etc) and then allow you to enter in the appropriate orientation data and finally display the appropriate structure symbol for the measurement in the map window. By using the structure mapping tool in Discover Mobile features such as fold axes, bedding or cleavage orientations can all be displayed immediately on your map.

Capturing structural-specific data using the **GO>GPS>Capture Structure Symbol** or **GO>Tools>Add Structure Symbol** tools requires the insertion table to have been created using the preset Structural fields, as provided in the pull-down list in the Setup Fields dialog of the **GO>File>New Table** option (Struct_Strike or Struct_DipDir, Struct_Dip, & Struct_Code). See *Creating a New Table with Discover Mobile* for further information.

Before you can collect structure measurements in Discover Mobile you first need to create a structural data table to store the point objects and attribute data.

Structure measurements can be recorded to any open map table in Discover Mobile providing the table contains the required Custom Fields for structure mapping. The following numeric fields must be present in the table in order to record structure data:

Map_X
Map_Y
Struct_Strike
Struct_DipDir
Struct_Dip
Struct_Code

The Map_X and Map_Y fields are used to store the easting and northing values of the structural data measurement and are automatically read from the GPS if it is connected and turned on.

For more information, see:

- *Azimuth Measurements*
- *Structure Dip and Plunge Angles*
- *Structure Codes and Symbol Libraries*
- *Adding Structural Data Fields*
- *Customizing the Structure Symbol Picklist*

### Azimuth Measurements

The orientation information for structural measurements may be recorded using either a Strike or Dip Direction measurement. Strike orientation measurements are interpreted by Discover Mobile using the right-hand rule convention. Therefore, all strike measurements are converted to dip directions by adding 90º. If you intend to record data using the Strike convention you need to make sure the structure data table contains at least the Map_X, Map_Y, Struct_Strike, Struct_Dip, Struct_Code fields.

To record data using a Dip direction measurement make sure the table contains at least the Map_X, Map_Y, Struct_DipDir, Struct_Dip, Struct_Code fields. If you include both the Struct_DipDir and Struct_Strike fields in a table Discover Mobile will automatically calculate and populate both fields from the measurement data you enter.

Many structural codes measure the direction of plunge rather than a strike or dip direction (for example a lineation or fold axis). For these codes, the azimuth information is always used as plunge direction regardless of whether strike or dip direction has been selected.

### Structure Dip and Plunge Angles

A dip or plunge value may be entered for most of the structural types that Discover Mobile supports. Selected structural types such as wrench faults, trend lines, monoclines, etc. do not require a dip value.

Discover Mobile expects a numeric value of between 0 and 90 degrees to be entered for the dip. However, there may be instances where a dip measurement cannot be measured for a variety of reasons. Because dip values are stored in numeric columns, the field value cannot be blank. Therefore, if you leave the dip entry box blank (to indicate no dip measurement was taken) Discover Mobile will automatically store a value of –99 in the dip column to represent a blank entry. If you subsequently process the structural measurements table using the Structure Symbol utility in Discover, it will interpret a value of -99 as a null dip value and will not display a dip value label next to the measurements.

### Structure Codes and Symbol Libraries

In order for Discover Mobile to store your structural measurements correctly the structure data table must contain a Struct_Code field. This field will store the corresponding Discover Structure Code for the nominated structural measurement type.

In accordance with Discover, Discover Mobile provides three structural symbol font files for Australian, Canadian and US structural symbols.

- Australian Structural Symbols (modified by AGSO)
- Canadian Structural Symbols (modified by the GSC)
- USA Structural Symbols (modified by USGS)

Structure symbols are based on those described in the Australian Geological Survey Organisation (AGSO) mapping style guide with the addition of extra symbols such as schistosity, L1-L3 lineation and general trend lines. A full table of symbols for the Australian, US and Canadian symbol sets, together with Discover structural codes and keyboard codes, is given in Appendix A of this manual.

**Note** For a number of structure types, such as bedding or cleavage, Discover uses different symbols for horizontal and vertical dip.

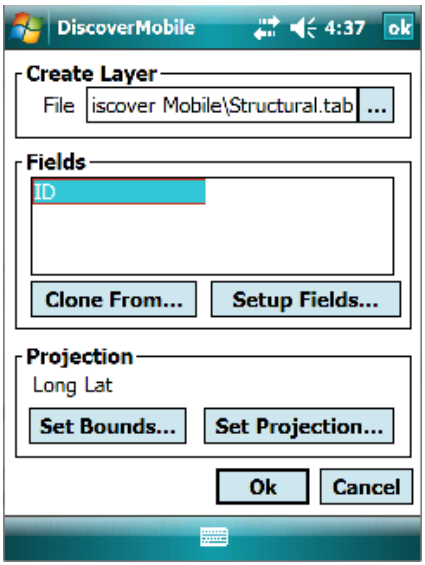
## Adding Structural Data Fields

The structural data tables may be created in MapInfo Professional prior to being transferred to Discover Mobile or they may be created directly in Discover Mobile as required. If you create the tables in MapInfo Professional you must ensure that the field names and data types conform to the standard convention expected by Discover Mobile. Because Discover Mobile uses a standard set of field names to internally match the data columns in the structure data table with the appropriate information entered in the structure dialog, you need to make sure the field names in the structure table are consistent with the default field names listed above.

If you intend to create a structure table directly in Discover Mobile, perform the following steps:

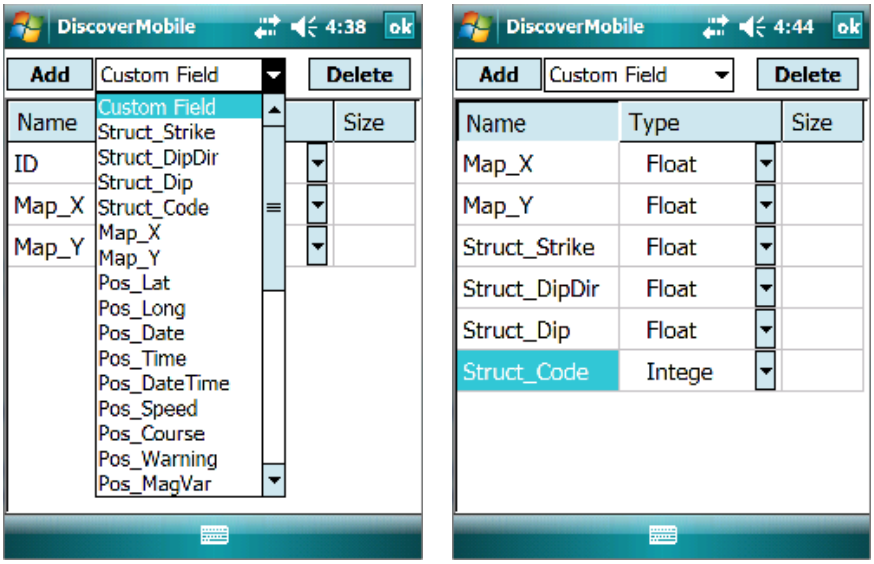
1. Tap the **GO>FILE>New Table** menu

2. Type a file name in the name box and select a location for the new table




*Setting a name for a new structural table.*

3. Tap the **Setup Fields** button to bring up the setup fields dialog. From the Custom Field pull-down list select the mandatory structural data fields Map_X, Map_Y, Struct_Strike, Struct_Dip, Struct_Code. You can then add any other additional attribute fields you wish to populate to the table.




*Setting up the fields for a structural table.*

4. Tap the **Projection** button to assign an appropriate projection for the table and then tap OK to create the table.

## Customizing the Structure Symbol Picklist

Discover Mobile stores the picklist of Structure Symbols in the designated Pick List directory as an `Encom_StructureCodes.txt` file (this file is installed to the default example data on the desktop, `Example Data\Picklists`. This contains every structure symbol in the Discover library (see *Appendix B: Structural Symbols* for a complete listing) listed alphabetically.

This list can be customized to a user specific order an/or to display only those structure types commonly used in the field area (thus the drop down list may be setup to display only 15 structure types rather than the entire 79, saving the user having to scroll up and down a long list every time a structural measurement is made). Open the file into a text editor such as Notepad or WordPad, and reorder or delete entries as required. For each structure type, the entire row entry must be deleted or preserved (including the integer value at the end of each row). When completed, the original file name must also be preserved (`Encom_StructureCodes.txt`) for the Structural Symbols tool to recognize the file.

Copy this customized file into your project's picklist folder, and ensure this file is copied to the Discover Mobile picklist directory on the device.

# Managing Tables

Tables are used to store the attributes of all types of objects, including data captured from the GPS. Tables used in Discover Mobile are .TAB files—identical to the tables used in MapInfo Professional. You can create and maintain tables on your desktop PC using MapInfo Professional and then transfer them to Discover Mobile for use in the field. You can also create new MapInfo Professional tables directly in Discover Mobile.

For information about managing tables, see:

- *Cloning Tables*
- *Using Templates*
- *Opening Tables*
- *Closing Tables*
- *Copying Tables*
- *Viewing Tables*
- *Modifying Table Structure*
- *Packing Tables*

For information about individual commands, see *File Menu*.

## Opening Tables

Discover Mobile supports standard MapInfo Professional table formats (.TAB files). These include MapInfo Professional native .TAB files as well as .TAB files which reference raster files (.BMP, .TIFF, .GIF, JPG, .PCX, .SPOT, .ECW). Discover Mobile can also open GeoTIFF images directly even if they do not have an associated .TAB file.

**To open a .TAB file in Discover Mobile:**

1. Choose **GO>File>Open Table** or tap the **Open Table** button on the main toolbar
2. From the displayed file list of .TAB files, select the table to be opened

After the table has been selected, Discover Mobile automatically places it at the top of the Layer Control list and displays the table.

**To open a recently opened table:**

1. Choose **GO>File>Recent Files**.

2. Select the table and tap **OK**, or double-tap the table name.

**To open a GeoTiff file:**

1. Choose **GO>File>Open Table**.

2. Change the **Type** to **GeoTiff Files (.TIF)** using the pick list and select the GeoTiff to be opened.

After the GeoTiff has been selected, Discover Mobile will automatically load the image into the map window and create a .TAB file in the same directory. If Discover Mobile cannot recognise the registration parameters then an error will be displayed. In this situation you will need to manually register the image in MapInfo Professional and then copy the image file and .TAB file over to the PPC.

## Closing Tables

Any open table can be closed using the Close Table command.

**To close a table:**

1. Choose **GO>File>Close Table**.

2. From the list of open tables, tap on the required table to be closed.

3. Tap **OK** and the table is then closed and removed from the display.

Alternatively,

1. Tap the Layer Control button or select **GO>View>Layer Control**.

2. Select the layer you wish to close and then tap the Remove button. The table will be removed from the layer control and the file closed.

**To close all open tables:**

- Choose **GO>File>Close Table**.

When you close all tables, the map display will show no data.

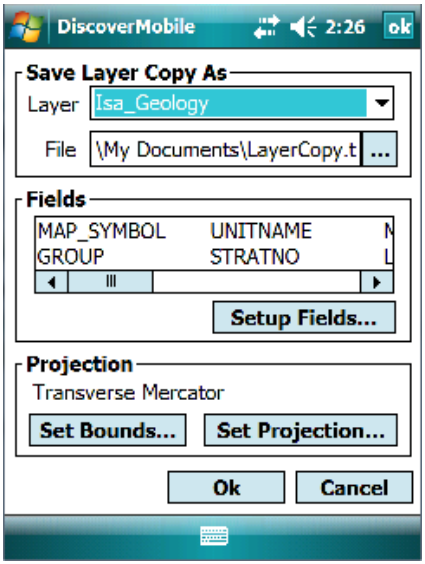
**Important** The **Close All Tables** command will disconnect the GPS connection.

## Copying Tables

A new table can be created from any open table providing it is not a raster table. The original table remains unchanged and open for all further edits.

### To save a copy of a table as a new file:

1. Choose **GO>File>Save Table Copy As**.




*Save a copy of a table dialog*

2. In the **Layer** box, select the layer to use as the source table.

3. Tap the browse button next to the **File** box, and then type a new layer name and select the folder where the new table is to be saved.

4. If you want to change the table structure, tap the **Setup Fields** button and modify and delete fields as required.

**Important** Make sure that you fully define the table structure when it is copied, because it cannot be changed later.

5. If a different projection is to be used for the copy, tap the **Set Projection** button.

6. Tap **OK**.

The new table is added to the Layer Control and is immediately displayed.

**Note**

The **Save Table Copy As** function will copy both the source tables structure and data into the new table. To copy just the structure without the data, see *Cloning Tables*.

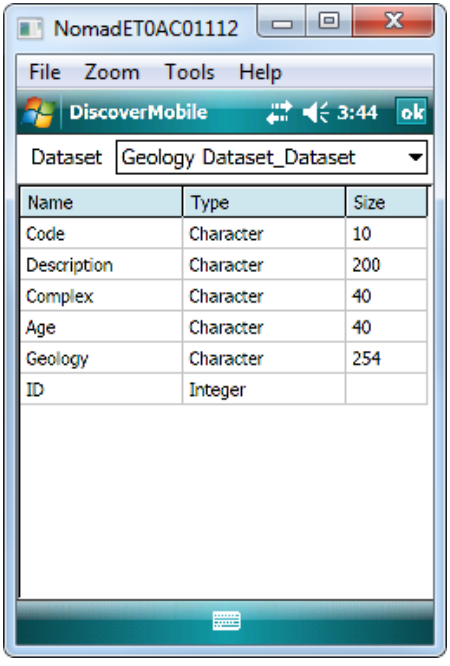
**Tip**

The operation of saving a copy of a specified layer can be especially useful when used with the **Cosmetic Layer**. All objects in the Cosmetic Layer can be permanently saved using the **Save Table Copy As** option.

## Viewing Tables

Use **GO>View>Table Browser** to view the data records within a table. You can enter new data or modify existing data in this browser view.

Use **GO>View>Table Structure** to display the fields (columns) within a layer and their associated data types. You can view the structure of different tables but you cannot modify the table structure.




*Structure of a table*

## Modifying Table Structure

An existing table structure can be modified which includes adding fields, deleting fields, changing field type, changing field size and renaming fields.

**To modify the structure of a table:**

1. Choose **GO>File>Edit Table Structure**.
2. In the **Layer** box, select the layer to modify.
3. If you want to change the table structure, tap the **Setup Fields** button and modify and delete fields as required.
4. Tap **OK** to save the modifications.

**Note** Due to the limited computing power of PPC devices it is recommended to only modify tables no more than couple of Mega Bytes (MB). If a large table is modified it may complete within a couple of minutes so you will need to be patient.

## Packing Tables

When records or objects are deleted from a MapInfo Professional Table the deleted records remain as unpacked or deleted records. This will cause an apparent mismatch between the map objects and browser records. Unpacked rows also reduce the efficiency of a table.

**To pack a table:**

1. Choose **GO>File>Pack Table**.
2. On the Pack Table dialog select the table to pack and tap **OK**.

**Note** Due to the limited computing power of PPC devices it is recommended to only pack tables no more than couple of Mega Bytes (MB). If a large table is packed it may complete within a couple of minutes so you will need to be patient.

# Searching for Data

In this section:

- *Searching Tables by Query*
- *Searching Tables by Keyword*

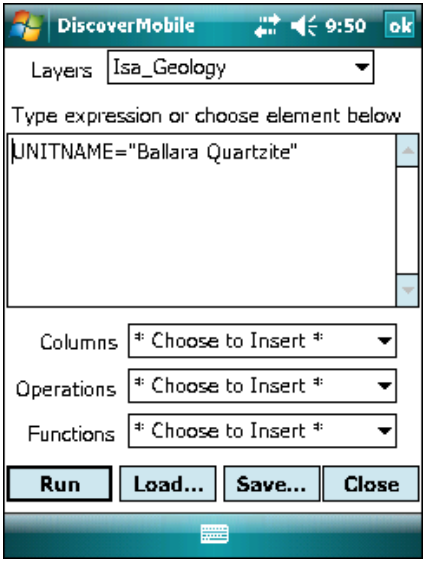
For information about individual commands used to search tables, see *Query Menu*.

## Searching Tables by Query

The general procedure for using queries is to specify a query statement that is then applied to nominated layers. Where the items within the nominated layers meet the selection criteria of the query, the results are temporarily stored and highlighted in the display.

**To create a query:**

1. Choose *GO>Query>Select* and select the table you wish to query. This table is referred to as the base table.

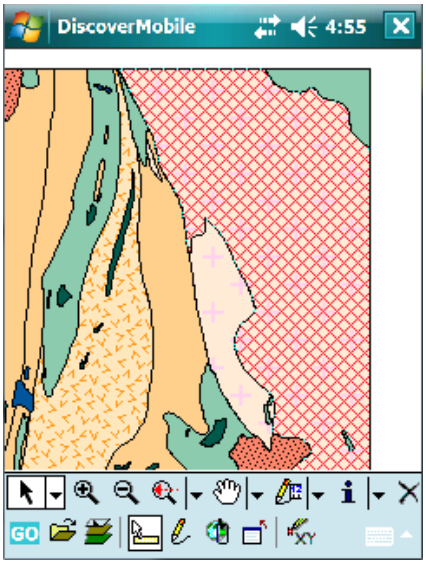



*The Query dialog with layer and query specified*

2. Construct the query using the available columns and operators and then tap the **Run** button to initiate the query.

3. When Discover Mobile has found all the items which meet the selection criteria a prompt will appear asking you to either select the objects in the map or cancel the query.

   If you choose to select the items, Discover Mobile will extract the data from your base table and store the results in a temporary selection table. The selection table contains only the rows and columns that meet your criteria. The default name of the results table is Selection.



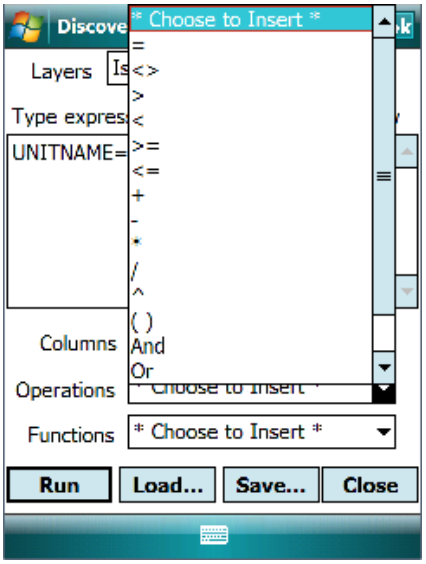

*Items found by a query and highlighted in the display*

**To save and re-use a query:**

- To save the query, tap the **Save** button and assign an appropriate name.
- To re-use a saved query, tap the **Load** button and select the query.

## Using Query Operators and Functions

At the base of the Query dialog are drop-down lists that can be used to build queries. Quite complex queries can be created using the operators and functions in Discover Mobile. A drop-down list of operators is available to assist in creating the query expression.




*A selection of the operations available from the Query dialog*

## Operators

- *Comparison Operators*
- *Logical Operators*
- *Operator Precedence*

### Comparison Operators

A comparison operator is often used in creating query expressions to describe differences between values. The following shows the comparison operators and a description.

| | |
|---|---|
| **=** | equals |
| <> | not equal |
| > | greater than |
| < | less than |
| >= | greater than or equal to |
| Like | like (a wildcard for selecting subsets of multiple characters) |

### Logical Operators

"And", "Or", and "Not" are logical operators. They are used to combine expressions. Discover Mobile treats these expressions as a test and applies it to each record in the table. Each test will evaluate to a yes/no (true/false) answer. Discover Mobile uses the logical operators to tell it how to combine the individual yes/no answers. For example, does the current record meet the selection condition?

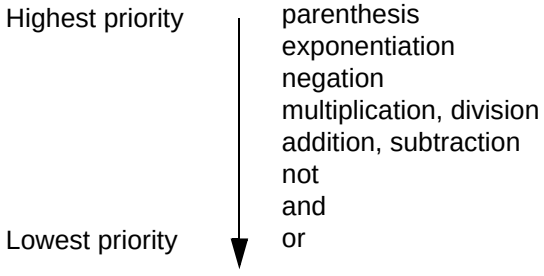
**And** is "true" when (and only when) both of its arguments (the expressions it joins together) are true. A record must satisfy both of these conditions to be selected.

**Or** is "true" when either one, or both, of its arguments (the expressions it joins together) are true. A record need satisfy only one of these conditions to be selected. It is also selected when both of its conditions are satisfied.

**Not** is "true" when its argument (the expression it applies to) is false. A record is selected when it does not meet the stated condition.

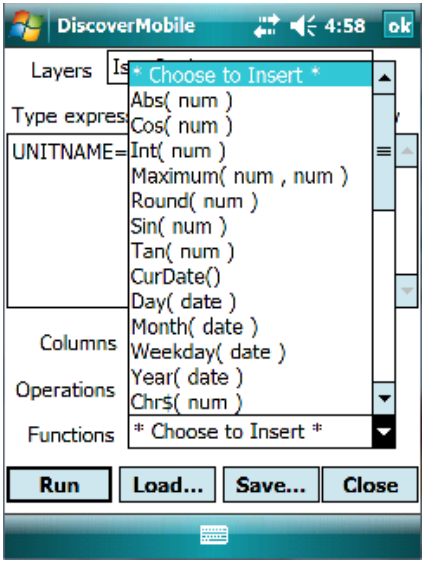
### Operator Precedence

When Discover Mobile evaluates a query, it needs to know which components of an expression to evaluate first. This is called precedence. By convention, certain operators are assigned different levels of precedence. Those with the highest level are evaluated first. The following table lists the Discover Mobile operators in the order in which they are evaluated. Operators at the same level of precedence are evaluated from left to right.



## Functions

A drop-down list of functions is available to assist in creating the SQL text of the query.




*Functions available in a drop-down list from the Query dialog*

A query can include one or more function calls. In the following list, num is any numeric expression or value (e.g. 5 or a column in a table containing numeric values), str is any string expression (e.g. "km" or a column in a table containing strings), and obj is any object expression (e.g. an object in a table).

| Math Functions | Description |
|---|---|
| Abs (num) | Returns the absolute value of a number. |
| Cos (num) | Returns the cosine of a number; num is in radians. |
| Int (num) | Returns the integer (whole number) portion of a number. |
| Maximum (num, num) | Returns the larger of two numbers. |
| Minimum (num, num) | Returns the smaller of two numbers. |
| Round (num1, num2) | Returns a number (num1), rounded off to the nearest value of num2 (e.g. if num2 is ten, then num1 is rounded to the nearest ten). |

| Math Functions | Description (Continued) |
|---|---|
| Sin (num) | Returns the sine of a number; num is in radians. |
| Tan (num) | Returns the tangent of a number; num is in radians. |

| Date Functions | Description |
|---|---|
| CurDate ( ) | Returns the current date. |
| Day (date) | Returns the day-of-month (1 - 31) portion of the date. |
| Month (date) | Returns the month (1 - 12) portion of the date. |
| Weekday (date) | Returns the day-of-week (1 - 7) portion of the date; 1 represents Sunday. |
| Year (date) | Returns the year portion (e.g. 2001) of the date. |

| String Function | Description |
|---|---|
| Chr$ (num) | Returns a character that corresponds to a character code (e.g. Chr$(65) returns the string "A"). |
| DeformatNumber$(str) | Reverses the effect of the FormatNumber$ function, returning a string that does not include thousands separators. |
| Format$(num, str) | Returns a string representing a formatted number. Example: Format$( 12345.678, ”$,#.##”) returns “$12,345.68”. |
| FormatNumber$(num) | Returns a string representing a formatted number. This function is simpler to use than Format$, but it gives you less control over formatting (e.g. you always get thousands separators). |
| Instar(num, str1, str2) | Searches the string str1 starting at character position num, and looks for an occurrence of the string str2. Returns the position where str2 was found, or zero if not found. To start search at beginning, use a num value of one (1). |
| Laces$(str) | Returns a lowercase version of the string str. |

| String Function | Description (Continued) |
|---|---|
| Left$(str , num) | Returns the first num characters of the string str. |
| Len(str) | Returns the number of characters in a string. |
| Trim$(str) | Trims any spaces from the start of str and returns result. |
| Mid$(str, num1, num2) | Returns a portion of the string str starting at character position num1 and extending for num2 characters. |
| Proper$(str) | Returns a string with proper capitalisation (first letter of each word capitalised). |
| Right$(str , num) | Returns the last num characters of the string str. |
| Trim$(str) | Trims any spaces from the end of str and returns result. |
| Str$(expert) | Returns a string approximation of an expression. |
| Ukase$(str) | Returns an uppercase (all capitalised) version of str. |
| Val(str) | Returns the numeric value of the string; for example, Val("18") returns the number 18. |

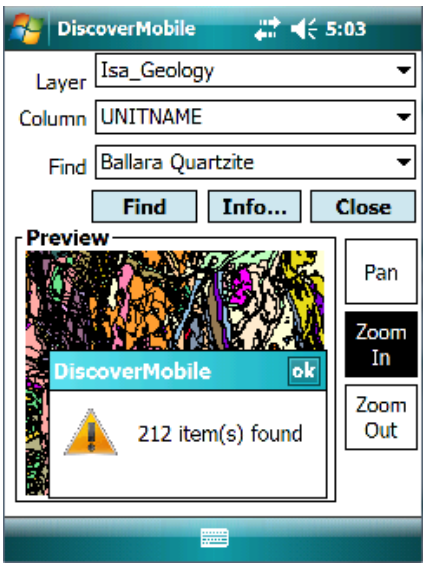
| Geographical Functions | Description |
|---|---|
| Area(obj,str) | Returns the area of the object. The str parameter specifies an area unit name, such as "sq mi" or "sq km". |
| CentroidX(obj) | Returns the x-coordinate of the object centroid. |
| CentroidY(obj) | Returns the y-coordinate of the object centroid. |
| Distance(num_x, num_y, num_x2, num_y2, str) | Returns the distance between two locations. The first two parameters specify the x and y value of the start location; the next two parameters specify the x and y value of the end location; the str parameter is a distance unit name, such as "mi" or "km". |

| Geographical Functions | Description (Continued) |
|---|---|
| ObjectLen(obj , str) | Returns the length of the object. The str value specifies a distance unit name such as "mi" or "km". Only line, polyline and arc objects have non-zero lengths. |
| Perimeter(obj , str) | Returns the perimeter of the object. The str value specifies a distance unit name, such as "mi" or "km". Only region, ellipse and rectangle objects have non-zero perimeters. |

| Object Functions | Description |
|---|---|
| Centroid(obj ) | Returns a point object located at the centroid of obj. |

## Searching Tables by Keyword

Use the *GO>Query>Find* command to quickly search for a keyword and view the selection results.




*The Find dialog and the result of successfully interrogating the data*

### To find a keyword in a table:

1. Select **GO>Query>Find**.

2. Choose a **Layer**.

3. Choose the search **Column**.

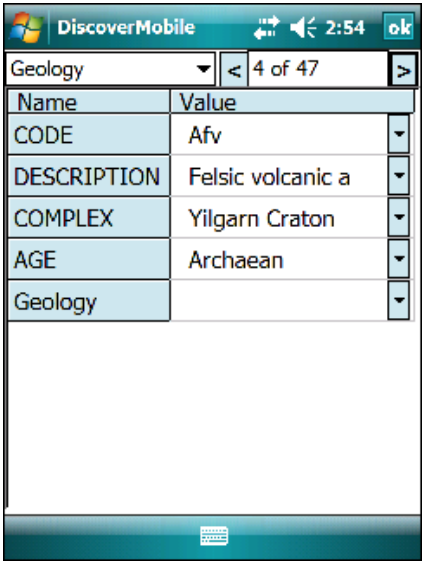
4. In the **Find** box, type in a keyword to search for in the selected column. The keyword needs to match exactly (in case and spelling) with the word in the search column.

5. Tap the **Find** button to start the search.

   When items are found and the search is successfully completed, the number of found items is displayed in a message box. The items are also shown in a preview window with the found objects highlighted.

6. Pan and zoom the sub-window to view the found objects.

7. Tap the Info button and tap on an object to display attribute information for the selected records.




*The attribute items of a layer displayed in the Info tool*

# 10 Working with Objects

In this section:


- *Creating Objects*
- *Field Data Entry and Editing*
- *Selecting Objects*
- *Editing Objects*
- *Formatting Objects*
- *Named Styles*
- *Range Styles*
- *Labels and Annotation*
- *Hotlinking Files to Map Objects*


## Creating Objects

Before creating objects, open and select the layer in which you want the object stored (see *Controlling Layers and the View*). The attributes of the object are determined by the structure of the layer table in which it is created (see *Adding Tables, Maps, and Fields*).


- *Setting Object Creation Preferences*
- *Creating Drawing Objects*
- *Creating GPS-located Objects*


**Note** Fields cannot be added to existing tables (and hence objects). They must be defined when the table is first created.

## Setting Object Creation Preferences

The procedure followed when creating objects is controlled by the preference settings available from the **GO>Preferences>Object Creation** command. The following editable criteria are available when capturing object data.

- *Edit Attributes*
- *Named Styles*
- *Point XY Editing*

The preferences for these can be set as follows:

- **Always** – Upon data capture, the edit dialog is opened.
- **Ask** – The user is prompted to open the edit dialog.
- **Never** – The edit dialog is not opened.

### Edit Attributes

The Edit Attributes option opens a browser for the new object, allowing the user to edit any attributes, as well as assign attributes from predefined Pick Lists.

### Named Styles

An existing style can be applied to the new object from the Named Styles library. This is an excellent way to visually differentiate identical object types; eg point samples such as rock-chips, lag and soil samples can have differing existing symbol types applied during data capture. See *Named Styles*.

### Point XY Editing

After data capture, the X and Y coordinates can be edited.

## Creating Drawing Objects

Use the *Draw/Edit Toolbar* to:

- Place a symbol.
- Place a structural symbol
- Draw a straight line.

- Draw a polyline or freehand polyline.
- Draw a polygon or a freehand polygon.

New objects can only be added to one layer (or table) at a time.

You can set a layer to receive new objects (points, lines or polygons) by setting that layer as the insertion layer (see *Setting the Insertion Layer*). If an insertion layer has not been set you will be prompted to select one the first time you use any of the drawing tools. This layer will then remain as the insertion layer until you either close it or select another layer. For additional information on working with insertion layers refer to *Managing Layers*.

Discover Mobile provides a Cosmetic Layer for storing temporary map objects. Unlike MapInfo Professional, the Cosmetic Layer is optional in Discover Mobile and can be added to the map window with *GO>Map>Add Cosmetic Layer*. You can use the Cosmetic Layer to store temporary map objects rather than add them to an existing layer. Any objects placed into the Cosmetic Layer will be permanently deleted if you exit Discover Mobile without saving them.

The tools available from the Draw/Edit toolbar are described in:

- *Creating Points and Symbols*
- *Creating Lines and Polygons*
- *Creating Structure Objects*

## Creating Points and Symbols

Before creating objects, you should open and set the insertion layer. If an insertion layer has not been assigned, when objects are created, a dialog will appear allowing selection of the insertion layer.

1. To select or change the symbol style, see *Setting Default Styles for New Drawing Objects*.

2. Tap the **Symbol** tool or choose **Go>Tools>Add Point**.

3. Tap on the display to locate the point.

4. Depending on the options selected under **GO>Preferences>Object Creation**, a number of dialogs may appear which will allow you to select and enter line style, field values, and coordinates. For more information about object creation options, see *Setting Object Creation Preferences* and *Field Data Entry and Editing*.

## Creating Lines and Polygons

Before creating objects, you should open and set the insertion layer. If an insertion layer has not been assigned, when objects are created, a dialog will appear allowing selection of the insertion layer.

1. To select or change the line and fill style, see *Setting Default Styles for New Drawing Objects*.

2. Tap one of the line object tools (see below) or choose from the **Go>Tools** menu.

3. In the display, tap or tap-and-drag (see below for a description on the operation of each tool) to create and terminate the line object.

4. Depending on the options selected under **GO>Preferences>Object Creation**, a number of dialogs may appear which will allow you to select and enter line style, field values, and coordinates. For more information about object creation options, see *Setting Object Creation Preferences* and *Field Data Entry and Editing*.

Line creation tools available from the Draw/Edit toolbar:

The **Line** Tool draws a straight line into the Insertion Layer. To use position and tap the stylus at the line start point and then drag a line to an end point. When you remove the stylus, a straight line is drawn between the two points.

The **Polyline Line** tool is used to draw polylines by tapping the location of vertices (nodes) on the screen. To use, first tap a point on the screen to add the first node, then move the stylus off the screen surface and tap another point. Continue tapping vertices until the polyline is complete. To finish double tap the screen at the position of the last node.

The **Freehand Polyline** tool is used to draw polylines on the screen using freehand drawing. To use, place the stylus at the start of the line and then while holding the stylus on the surface, draw the required line. To finish, remove the stylus from the screen and the polyline will be automatically created.

The **Polygon** tool is used to draw a polygon node-by-node. To use, tap the stylus on the screen at the location of the first vertex and then continue by tapping the second and subsequent vertices. Complete the polygon by double tapping the location of the final vertex.

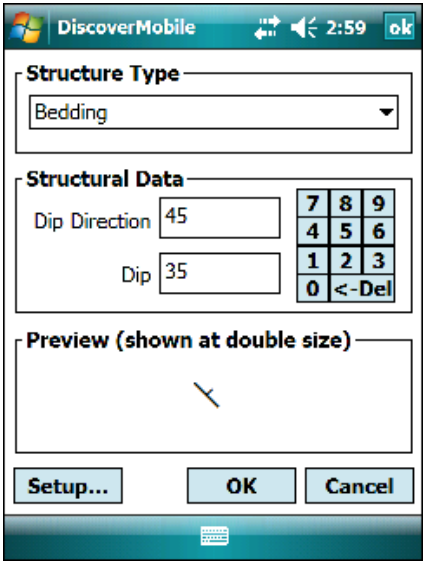
The **Freehand Polygon** tool is used to draw polygons on the screen using freehand drawing. To use, place the stylus on the screen at the start location of the polygon and while holding the stylus on the surface, draw the required shape. To finish, remove the stylus from the surface and the polygon will be automatically created.

## Creating Structure Objects

First ensure that you have created a table containing all the mandatory structure field columns to collect GPS and structural measurement attribute information.

1. Tap **Add Structure Symbol** tool on the Drawing toolbar or choose **GO>Tools>Add Structure Symbol.**

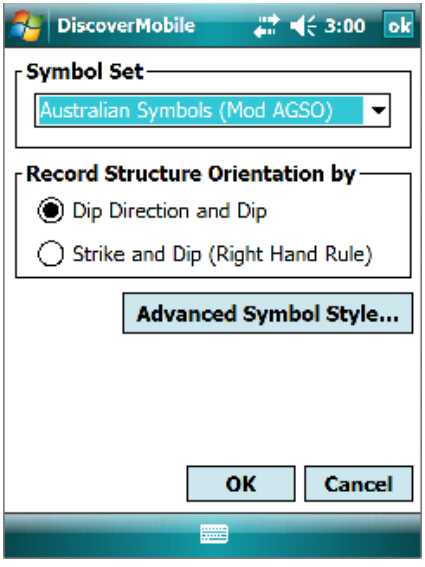
2. Select the appropriate **Structure Type** (e.g. Bedding) from the pull-down list at the top of the dialog.




*Entering structural data*

3. In the **Structural Data** entry boxes, type the **Strike** or **Dip Direction** using the number pad on the right, and also the **Dip** box. Dip values must be between 0 and 90 degrees. If you leave the box empty Discover Mobile will assume no dip is to be recorded and will enter a value of -99 in the table.

4. To change between the **Strike** and **Dip Direction** conventions, tap the **Setup** button to display the configuration dialog. Select the appropriate option to record azimuth using **Dip Direction and Dip** or **Strike and Dip (right-hand rule)**.




*Specifying the Symbol Set and preferred Structure Orientation.*

5. To change the symbol library between the Australian, US or Canadian symbol set, select the required **Symbol Set** from the Structure Symbol Library pull-down list.

6. To change the symbol style and size tap the **Advanced Symbol Style** button to display the Structure Symbol Styles options. Here the structure symbol size, colour and background and effects can be modified. Any changes made to the Font or Symbol text boxes will be overridden by the Structure Type and Structure Symbol Library selected.

To add more structure measurements to the map repeat the above steps.

## Creating GPS-located Objects

Use the GPS toolbar to:

- Record a GPS Point Track Log.
- Record a GPS Line Track Log.
- Capture points. polylines, and polygons via the GPS.

See *Working with the GPS* for information on connecting the GPS. and other GPS-related tasks.

**Note**

The first time you use Discover Mobile you will need to configure the GPS communication settings for your particular receiver. You can do this from *GO>GPS>Setup Connection* or *GO>Preferences* command. It is important that you set the correct port number, communication format and speed for your GPS receiver. If these settings are incorrect Discover Mobile will not be able to communicate with the receiver. Refer to your GPS User Guide for details on the GPS communication settings and *Working with the GPS* in this guide.

The tools available from the GPS toolbar are summarised below and described in more detail in:

- *Capturing Points*
- *Capturing Lines*
- *Capturing Elevation Data*
- *Capturing Structure Objects*

**GPS Point Track Log** button turns on/off the Point Track Log function. Discover Mobile can record a continuous Track Log showing your path as a series of points. The point track log is recorded to a GPS_Point_Log table. The log table can be configured to record some or all of the GPS attribute information available for each point. The points are collected at the same rate as the GPS Connection interval which can be configured under the **GO>Preferences** command. For more information, see *GPS Point Log*.

**GPS Line Track Log** button turns on/off the Line Track Log function. To activate the function tap the button and then setup the GPS attribute fields you wish to log. Discover Mobile will then record a Line Track Log showing your path. The Line Track Log is made up of a series of consecutive line segments rather than one continuous polyline. The reason for this is that GPS Line Track Log function needs to record GPS attribute information for each segment in your travelled path. Therefore, if you wish to examine the GPS attribute information for any segment of your path at a later date, the information is readily available. If you wish to record a single continuous line (e.g. a fault trace or track) then use the **GPS Line Capture** function instead. You can use the Track Log and GPS Polyline capture functions simultaneously. For more information, see *GPS Line Log*.

**GPS Point Capture** button will capture a single point to any chosen layer in the map using the current position coordinates from the GPS receiver. To use this function, first create a layer containing default columns for each GPS attribute field you wish to capture, as well as any additional custom fields you wish to populate. This layer must be created before you capture the point so that the required attribute information can be recorded for the point. Alternatively you can add the GPS point to an existing layer, however only attribute information for the fields in that table will be recorded. When you are ready to capture the point object tap the **GPS Point** button once. A symbol will be placed on the screen at the current GPS location.

To automatically prompt for a named style, or to edit attributes or coordinates, see *Object Creation* on the **Preferences** menu.

**GPS Structure Symbol** button is used to capture structural measurements readings to any chosen layer in the map using the current position coordinates from the GPS receiver. To use this function, first create a table containing default columns for each structure measurement field you wish to collect as well as any GPS attribute data you wish to capture. You can also add any other custom fields you wish to populate. This table must be created before you capture the structure reading so that Discover Mobile can also record the required attribute information for the point.

Alternatively, you can add the structure symbol to an existing layer, however attribute information will only be recorded if the appropriate fields exist in the table. When you are ready to capture a structural object, tap the **GPS Structure Symbol** button once. You will then be presented with the structure symbol dialog enabling you to assign the appropriate symbol type and orientation measurements. When complete, the appropriate symbol will be placed on the map at the current GPS location. The preferred method for recording structural symbols can be modified by tapping on the **Setup** button on the dialog.

For more information, see *Capturing Structure Objects*.

**GPS Insert Node** button is used to add a new node to the current GPS polyline or polygon while the pause button is active. To use, tap the **Insert Node** button when you wish to add a node to your line. You can return to continuous node logging mode at any time by turning off the **Pause** button.

**GPS Polyline Capture** button will capture a continuous polyline to a chosen table using the GPS position coordinates. To use this function, first create a layer containing default columns for all GPS attribute information you which to capture as well as any additional custom fields you wish to populate. Alternatively, you can add the new polyline to an existing layer. When you are ready to capture the polyline tap the **GPS Polyline** button to start the line recording. You will see the line draw on the screen as you map out the polyline path. Tap the button again to stop the polyline capture. You will be prompted for a table in which to save the line.

The node separation is controlled by the *Tolerance Min* and *Tolerance Max* settings on the **Preferences** menu.

To automatically prompt for a named style, or to edit attributes or coordinates, see *Object Creation* on the **Preferences** menu.

**GPS Polygon Capture** button will capture a polygon to a chosen table using GPS position coordinates. To use this function, first create a layer containing columns for all the default GPS attribute fields you wish to record as well as any additional custom fields you wish to populate. Alternatively, you can add the new polygon to an existing layer. Tap the **GPS Polygon** button when you are ready to capture the polygon object. You may need to toggle between the polyline and polygon tools first. A line will then draw on the screen as you map out the polygon boundary. To finish the polygon tap the button again. The polygon will automatically close by joining the last captured node to the first.

The node separation is controlled by the *Tolerance Min* and *Tolerance Max* settings on the **Preferences** menu.

To automatically prompt for a named style, or to edit attributes or coordinates, see *Object Creation* on the **Preferences** menu.

**GPS Polyline/Polygon Pause** button is used to pause the capturing of a polygon or polyline without actually terminating the current line capture. To use this function, either the **GPS polyline** or **Polygon capture** tool must be active. To pause the capture of a polyline or polygon tap the **Pause** button once to activate it (depressed). Discover Mobile will then temporarily stop adding new nodes to the object. With the pause button depressed you can then walk around and examine where the next node should be placed without actually capturing any data. When you are ready to capture the next node tap the pause button again to restart the GPS polyline or polygon capture.

By toggling the pause button on and off after you capture each node you can build up a polyline or polygon one node at a time. When you want to finish capturing a polyline or polygon simply turn the pause button off and then tap the appropriate polyline or polygon capture button to end the line capture and save the object to a table.

You can record point objects (such as structural measurements) while the pause button is active. To do so simply walk to the desired location and tap the button for the appropriate point capture tool. You will then be asked for a table in which to save the new object

You can also add a new node to a polyline or polygon while the pause button is active the **Insert Node** tool on the GPS toolbar.

## Capturing Points

Open the point capture table (see *Opening Tables*) containing fields for recording the GPS point data and custom fields (see *Assigning GPS Capture Layers*). If a GPS capture table has not been assigned, when data is captured, a dialog will appear allowing selection of the capture layer.

To capture a point at the current GPS position, tap the **GPS Point Capture** button on the GPS toolbar, or choose **GO>GPS>Capture Point**.

Depending on the options selected under **GO>Preferences>Object Creation**, a number of dialogs may appear which will allow you to select and enter symbol style, field values, and coordinates. For more information about object creation options, see *Setting Object Creation Preferences* and *Field Data Entry and Editing*.

The GPS settings and the quality of the satellite signal will influence the time taken to capture a point. For accurate point capture, wait until the “Please wait” message disappears before moving to the next point.

## Capturing Lines

Open the line capture table (see *Opening Tables*) containing fields for recording the GPS line data and custom fields (see *Assigning GPS Capture Layers*). If a GPS capture table has not been assigned, when data is captured, a dialog will appear allowing selection of the capture layer.

To capture points along a path, tap the **GPS Polyline Capture** button on the GPS toolbar, or choose **GO>GPS>Capture Polyline**.

Discover Mobile will then commence capturing the polyline node-by-node using the current GPS interval and minimum/maximum tolerance values. An audible beep from the PPC will be heard each time a new node is captured. The beep sound cannot be disabled; however, the sound on the PPC can be turned down.

To control the node separation review the **Tolerance Min** and **Tolerance Max** values under the **GO>Preferences>Point Capture** option:

- The minimum tolerance value should be set to a value that matches the mapping requirements and the accuracy of the GPS receiver. If you are walking out a boundary with a conventional GPS receiver, then a minimum tolerance of 10m should be adequate. If you using DGPS, you can reduce the minimum tolerance to 1m. If mapping out roads or tracks using a vehicle, then setting a minimum tolerance of 20 m to 100 m would be more appropriate.

- When capturing a polyline be careful not to set the maximum tolerance to a small value. Ideal values are 500 m to 1000 m. If the Maximum Tolerance value is set too small (say 100 m) the polyline may terminate between points. If this occurs, tap the GPS Polyline button once to turn it off and then tap it again to commence a new polyline.

The GPS settings and the quality of the satellite signal will influence the time taken to capture a point. For accurate point capture, wait until the “Please wait” message disappears before moving to the next point.

To pause the capture of a polyline, tap the **Pause** button on the GPS toolbar. This allows the user to move around and determine where the feature being mapped extends (e.g. where precisely the fault trend continues). When this has been determined, return to the position where the next node is to be added and then tap the **Pause** button again to continue capture. You can also use the Pause button to capture polylines one node at a time by pausing capture while moving to the new node position.

To complete polyline capture, tap the **GPS Polylines Capture** button again. If the capture layer has not been assigned, you are prompted to select a table. Depending on the options selected under **GO>Preferences>Object Creation**, a number of dialogs may appear which will allow you to select and enter line style and field values. For more information about object creation options, see *Setting Object Creation Preferences* and *Field Data Entry and Editing*.

To add a node to the polyline, tap the **Insert Node** icon once and a new node will be added using the current GPS coordinates.

## Capturing Regions

Open the region capture table (see *Opening Tables*) containing fields for recording the GPS polygon data and custom fields (see *Assigning GPS Capture Layers*). If a GPS capture table has not been assigned, when data is captured, a dialog will appear allowing selection of the capture layer.

To capture points along a closed boundary (regions, outcrops, paddocks, etc.), tap the **GPS Polygon Capture** button on the GPS toolbar, or choose **GO>GPS>Capture Polygon**.

Discover Mobile will then commence capturing the polygon node-by-node using the current GPS interval and minimum/maximum tolerance values. An audible beep from the PPC will be heard each time a new node is captured. The beep sound cannot be disabled; however, the sound on the PPC can be turned down.

To control the node separation review the **Tolerance Min** and **Tolerance Max** values under the **GO>Preferences>Point Capture** option:

- The minimum tolerance value should be set to a value that matches the mapping requirements and the accuracy of the GPS receiver. If you are walking out a boundary with a conventional GPS receiver, then a minimum tolerance of 10m should be adequate. If you using DGPS, you can reduce the minimum tolerance to 1 m. If mapping in a vehicle, then setting a minimum tolerance of 20 m to 100 m would be more appropriate.

- When capturing a polyline be careful not to set the maximum tolerance to a small value. Ideal values are 500 m to 1000 m. If the Maximum Tolerance value is set too small (say 100 m) the polyline may terminate between points. If this occurs, tap the GPS Polygon button once to turn it off and then tap it again to commence a new polygon.

The GPS settings and the quality of the satellite signal will influence the time taken to capture a point. For accurate point capture, wait until the “Please wait” message disappears before moving to the next point.

To pause the capture of a polygon, tap the **Pause** button on the GPS toolbar. This allows the user to move around and determine where the feature being mapped extends (e.g. where precisely the fault trend continues). When this has been determined, return to the position where the next node is to be added and then tap the **Pause** button again to continue capture. You can also use the Pause button to capture polylines one node at a time by pausing capture while moving to the new node position.

To complete polylgon capture, tap the **GPS Polygons Capture** button again. If the capture layer has not been assigned, you are prompted to select a table. Depending on the options selected under **GO>Preferences>Object Creation**, a number of dialogs may appear which will allow you to select and enter line style and field values. For more information about object creation options, see *Setting Object Creation Preferences* and *Field Data Entry and Editing*.

To add a node to the polygon, tap the **Insert Node** icon once and a new node will be added using the current GPS coordinates.

## Capturing Elevation Data

If collecting field data for which elevation information is important (for instance to create a topographic surface or contour file), the data should be captured as points. If data is collected as polylines or regions (for instance a track or fence-line), only a single elevation value is recorded for the object, not for each vertex.

Data collected as points will preserve point elevation data, and can be converted into polylines or polygons in MapInfo Professional, especially if a unique attribute has been specified for each group of points (by using **GO>Edit>Quick Pick Options** and selecting **Set Constant Value** or **Same As Previous**). If the ordering of the points is important to the object creation, automatically increment a second attribute field in Discover Mobile with an integer (**Increment By**). For instance, points representing two lines could be captured as:

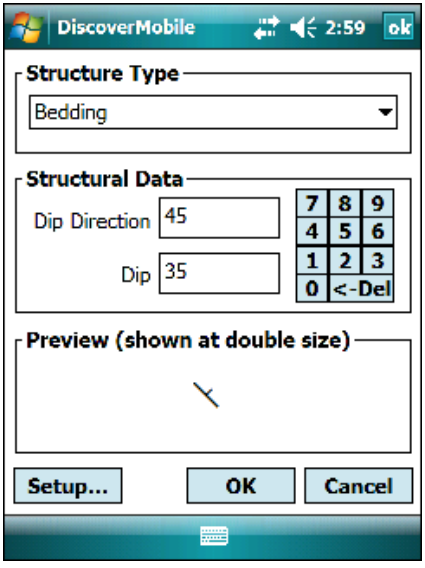
| Point | ObjectID | Order |
|---|---|---|
| 345 | TrackA | 1 |
| 346 | TrackA | 2 |
| 347 | TrackA | 3 |
| 348 | DrainH | 1 |
| 349 | DrainH | 2 |
| 350 | TrackA | 4 |
| 351 | DrainH | 3 |

## Capturing Structure Objects

1. First ensure that you have created a table containing all the mandatory structure field columns to collect GPS and structural measurement attribute information (Struct_Strike and/or Struct_DipDir, Struct_Dip and Struct_Code).

2. To add a structure measurement using coordinates from the GPS position either select the **GO>GPS>Capture Structure Symbol** menu option or tap the pop-up menu arrow next to the GPS Point button on the GPS toolbar and select the **Structure Symbol** option. When the **Structure Symbol** icon appears, tap the button once to add the point to the table.

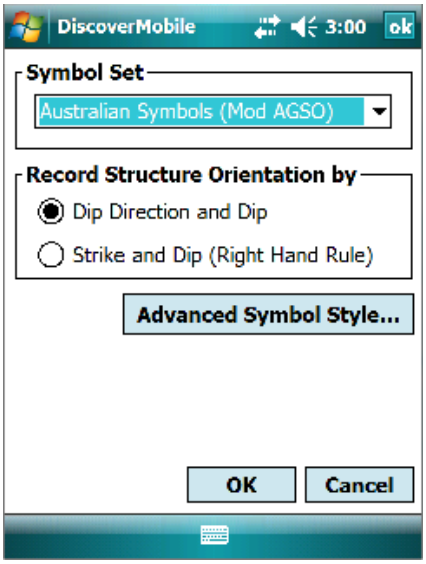
3. Select the appropriate **Structure Type** (e.g. Bedding) from the pull-down list at the top of the dialog.




*Entering structural data*

4. In the **Structural Data** entry boxes, type the **Strike** or **Dip Direction** using the number pad on the right, and also the **Dip** box. Dip values must be between 0 and 90 degrees. If you leave the box empty Discover Mobile will assume no dip is to be recorded and will enter a value of -99 in the table.

5. To change between the **Strike** and **Dip Direction** conventions, tap the **Setup** button to display the configuration dialog. Select the appropriate option to record azimuth using **Dip Direction and Dip** or **Strike and Dip (right-hand rule)**.




*Specifying the Symbol Set and preferred Structure Orientation.*

6. To change the symbol library between the Australian, US or Canadian symbol set, select the required **Symbol Set** from the Structure Symbol Library pull-down list.

7. To change the symbol style and size tap the **Advanced Symbol Style** button to display the Structure Symbol Styles options. Here the structure symbol size, colour and background and effects can be modified. Any changes made to the Font or Symbol text boxes will be overridden by the Structure Type and Structure Symbol Library selected.

To add more structure measurements to the map repeat the above steps.

## Field Data Entry and Editing

Field data captured with the GPS or the Drawing tools generally need text and numeric information recorded during the capture process (sample number, regolith type, date collected, coordinates, weight or size, etc).

The type of information that you can record depends on the structure of the table selected as the insertion layer where objects are stored. For information about defining tables and fields, see the topics in *Working with Tables*.

The simplest way to add attributes to a new object is to display the Edit Attributes browser after object capture by setting the **Edit Attributes** option under *GO>Preferences>Object Creation* to **Ask** or **Always**. You can then manually type values into the relevant attribute fields appropriate for the sample/data type.

However, much of this attribute information is repetitive (incrementing sample or grid peg numbers), constant (sampler, date) or has a discrete number of possible values (eg rock type code). Discover Mobile has a number of tools to simplify object attributing, allowing many fields to be automatically attributed. For more information about automatically populated field values see *Populating Fields*

You can also streamline the capture of object attributes with *Named Styles*.

**Note** Fields cannot be added to existing tables. They must be defined when the table is first created.

## Populating Fields

The data table to be populated must include the required field types (e.g. an integer field for Sample numbers, a string field of 20 characters size for Lithology type, a date field of date capture, etc). For information on creating tables and fields, see *Adding Tables, Maps, and Fields*.

There are five methods of populating fields in Discover Mobile:

### Select Value from Pick List

For instance, a Lithology picklist might include Granite, Basalt, Sandstone and Limestone. Each time a rock-chip is collected, the user populates the Lithology column by selecting a rock type from the picklist. The list can also contain sub-categories, for example a BIF category may contain the sequence numbers for each of the BIF layers.

### Automatically Populate with User-Defined Data

Various automatically populating fields can be set as QuickPick Fields within a picklist: a range of automatic functions can be applied, such as ‘Set as Constant’ (e.g. for populating a sample type, geologist or date column), ‘Increment by’ (e.g. for incrementing sample numbers), ‘Same As Previous’, etc. This functionality can also be used to populate custom fields with GPS specific data (e.g. a custom ‘Easting’ field could be assigned the GPS-specific Map_X output data).

### Automatically Populate with GPS Data

Auto-attribute with GPS-specific information, by assigning the preset GPS fields during the table creation process. These include the Map_X, Map_Y, Pos_Lat, Pos_Long, etc fields.

**Note** If only one default QuickPick GPS auto-field is set in method 2, it is identical to setting the GPS field type in step 3

### Auto-prompt for Structural Data

Auto-prompting for Structural-specific information, using either the GO>GPS>Capture Structure Symbol or GO>Tools>Add Structure Symbol tools. Both of these options require the addition of the preset structure -specific fields during the table creation process: these are Struct_Strike or Struct_DipDir, Struct_Dip, and Struct_Code fields.

### Ad Hoc Values

Custom fields can be attributed manually by the user using the popup keyboard

## Selecting Objects

- *Using the Selection Tools*
- *Viewing Graphical Selections*
- *Selecting Objects Within a Buffer*

### Using the Selection Tools

The **Selection** tools on the Select/View toolbar has four modes for selecting object(s) in the display area. To change mode, tap the arrow next to the currently selected mode button.

**Point** – Select a single object or item. This default mode is used for data entry, object selection and editing. Selection is done by positioning the stylus over the required object and tapping. A selected object is highlighted.

**Radius** – Selects objects within a controllable radius. All selectable objects within the radius are highlighted. The origin of the radius is centred where the stylus was first placed on the screen. Operate by locating the stylus at a point on the screen and then drag it away from the point until the radial search has reached the required diameter.

**Rectangular** - Selects objects within a rectangular area drawn from an initially located point. All selectable objects whose centroid is within the area are highlighted. Operate by locating the stylus at a start point and then drag out a rectangle until the search area reaches the required size.

**Polygonal** - Select objects within a polygonal area. Use the polygon select tool to enclose the required objects by tapping out a series of vertices. All selectable objects within the polygon are highlighted. Operate by tapping the stylus at a start point and then tapping additional vertices to enclose the required objects. Complete the polygonal area by tapping twice on the screen.

## Viewing Graphical Selections

To easily view selected map objects in a Browser Window navigate to the **GO>Query>Browse Selection**. A  Browser Window will be presented only displaying records for map object selected.

## Selecting Objects Within a Buffer

You can create a buffer around a single object, or around a collection of objects. Creating a buffer around an object defines an area of influence around that object to a user-specified distance. A buffer can be used to select objects that fall within a given distance of one or more selected objects.

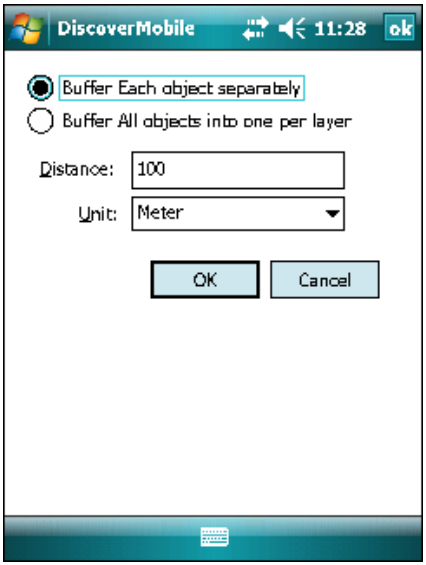
The Buffer option allows you to quickly identify objects of interest within a given distance of other objects. For example, you may wish to identify all mineral occurrences which fall within 2 km of a mapped fault.

**To create a buffer:**

1. Open the table and set as the insertion layer.

2. Select the object or objects you want to create a buffer around.

3. Choose **GO>Edit>Buffer**. The Buffer Objects dialog is displayed:




*Specify a buffer distance around the selected object(s)*

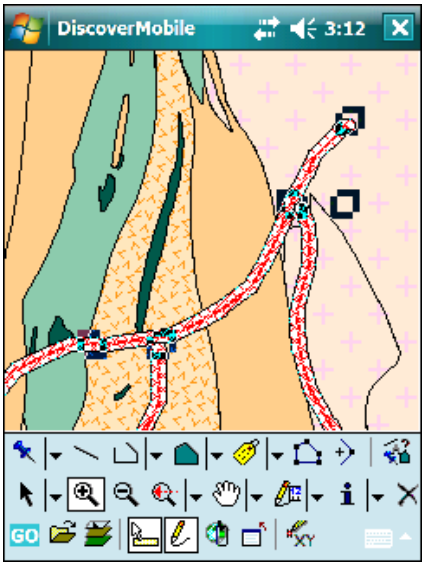
4. Choose to either **Buffer each object separately**, or **Buffer all objects into one per layer**.

5. In the **Distance** box, type the buffer distance.

6. In the **Unit** box, choose the unit of measurement for the buffer distance.

7. Tap **OK**.

The object buffers are created and displayed in the Insertion layer. All objects located within the buffers are selected.




*An example display of a set of faults being buffered using a 500 metre buffer*

## Editing Objects

Discover Mobile allows simultaneous editing of multiple objects in multiple layers. Objects in any selectable and editable layer can be moved, repositioned, resized, formatted, or deleted (see *Managing Layers*). Most editing tools require you to first select the object before choosing the tool (see *Selecting Objects*). If the tool you need is not displayed on the toolbar, tap the arrow button next to the current tool and change the mode.

- *Move an Object*
- *Edit and Delete Nodes*
- *Add Nodes*
- *Edit Attributes*
- *Edit Coordinates*
- *Edit Object Style*
- *Delete Objects*

## Move an Object

Tap the **Point Select** tool on the *Select/View Toolbar*. If the Point tool is not active, tap the arrow button to change the selection mode or choose **GO>Edit>Edit Mode>Feature Edit Mode**. When you select the object, handles appear which you can drag to another location.

## Edit and Delete Nodes

Select the polygon or polyline, and then tap the **Vertex Edit** tool on the *Draw/Edit Toolbar* or choose **GO>Edit>Edit Mode>Node Edit Mode**. The polygon or polyline vertices are then displayed. Move or delete each vertex as required by selecting and dragging or by tapping the delete button.

## Add Nodes

Select the polygon or polyline, and then tap the **Add Vertex** tool on the *Draw/Edit Toolbar* or choose **GO>Edit>Edit Mode>Add Node Mode**. The polygon or polyline vertices are then displayed. Tap the stylus on the polyline or polygon in the position where you want the new node to be added. You can also drag the node to a new position with the stylus as you add it.

## Edit Attributes

Use the **Information** button to display and edit attributes (field values) of an object in the table browser.

1. Tap the **Information** tool.
2. Tap the object you want to edit.

   The table browser is displayed. If the object does not have any associated attribute information, blank data fields will be displayed. If more than one table has an object at the selected point, use the drop-down list to select the table of interest.
3. Edit the field values as required.
4. Close the browser dialog when you have finished.

You can also choose **Go>View>Table Browser,** to browse a selected table row-by-row (i.e. object-by-object).

### Edit Coordinates

Select the object, and then choose **GO>Edit>Selected Point Location** to display the Point XY dialog, where you can edit the coordinates of a selected object.

### Edit Object Style

To change the appearance of an object, first select it using one of the select tools and then tap the **Object Style** button or choose **GO>Edit>Selected Object Style**. The style properties dialog will change depending on the type of object selected.

For more information, see *Formatting Objects*.

### Delete Objects

To delete an object, select the object (or objects) and tap the **Delete** button on the Select/View toolbar. You can also delete selected objects by choosing **GO>Edit>Delete**.

**Warning** Deleted objects cannot be restored.

## Formatting Objects

- *Setting Default Styles for New Drawing Objects*
- *Formatting Drawing Objects*
- *Setting Default Styles for GPS-Located Objects*
- *Applying Named Styles*
- *Applying Range Styles*
- *Applying a Range Style Library During XRF Data Capture*

## Setting Default Styles for New Drawing Objects

Default styles can be applied to symbols, lines and polygons.

**To modify the default style for an object type:**

1. Select a Symbol, Line or Polygon object tool.

2. Choose **GO>Edit>New Object Styles**.

3. Modify the preferred display settings for the object type. See *Formatting Drawing Objects* for details on the various dialog controls.

4. Tap **OK** on the Title bar

**Note** The default object styles are not saved between Discover Mobile sessions.

## Formatting Drawing Objects

Before an object can be formatted, the layer that contains the object must be editable and selectable (see *Managing Layers*).

**To format one or more objects:**

1. Select the object or objects (see *Selecting Objects*).

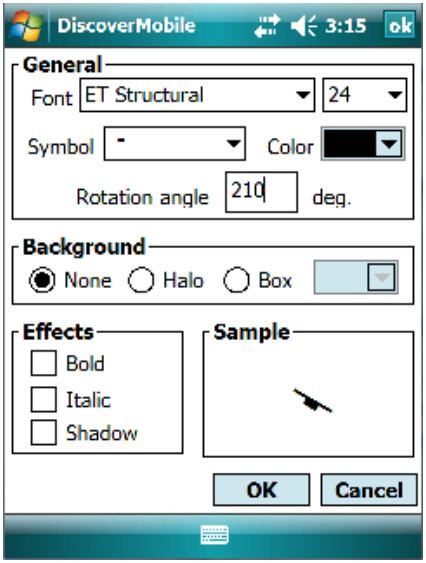
2. Choose **GO>Edit>Selected Object Style**.

A style dialog is displayed. The dialog depends on the type of object selected. If multiple items are selected then the first item in the selection will configure the display property dialog.

- *Symbol Style*
- *Line Style*
- *Fill Style*

## Symbol Style

The Symbol style dialog allows the symbol style, size and colour and symbol rotation properties to be controlled.

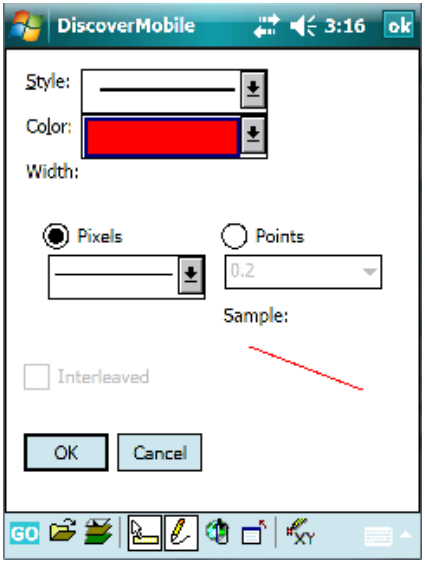



*Style dialog to control displayed symbols*

Character effects such as bolding, halos, drop shadows and italics are also available.

## Line Style

Line style properties can be modified for all line types. When a line is selected the line style dialog appears:

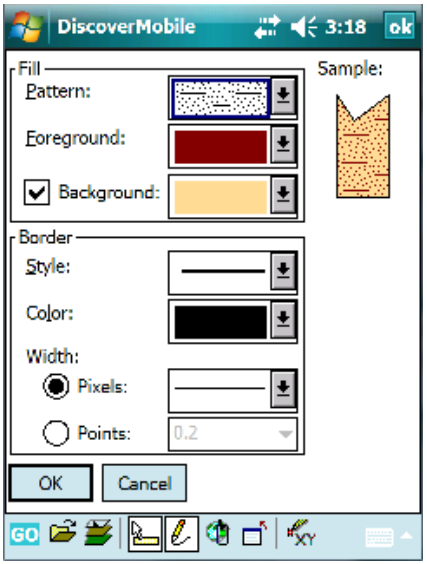



*Line style dialog*

Available controls include line style, line thickness (in either pixels or points (32 points equals 2.54 cm or 1 inch) and colour. A preview sample of the line style is also displayed.

### Fill Style

This style controls fill patterns, colour and outline style of polygon objects.




*Fill style dialog*

All standard MapInfo Professional fill patterns and colours are available. The colour of both the pattern foreground and background can be modified. The line style of the polygon border can also be adjusted using similar controls to the Line Style dialog.

## Setting Default Styles for GPS-Located Objects

Choose **GO>GPS>Default Styles** to define graphical styles of various GPS object types (point, polyline, polygon, track logs, etc).

- **Current Position Style**
  Sets a preferred display style for the Current Position Symbol. The default symbol is a hollow red circle. The symbol style can be adjusted for the Current Position to any symbol style supported by Discover Mobile.

- **Track Log Point Style**
  Sets a preferred display style for the Point Track Log. The default style is a gray circle . The symbol style can be adjusted for the Point Track Log to any symbol style supported by Discover Mobile.

- **Track Log Line Style**
  Sets a preferred display style for the Line Track Log. The default style is a single point black line. The line style can be adjusted for the Line Track Log to any line style supported by Discover Mobile.

- **Capture Point Style**
  Sets a preferred display style for the Capture Point. The default style is a black flag. The symbol style can be adjusted for the Capture Point tool to any symbol style supported by Discover Mobile.

- **Capture Line Style**
  Sets a preferred display style for the Capture Line. The default style is a single point black line. The line style can be adjusted for the Capture Line tool to any line style supported by Discover Mobile.

- **Capture Polygon Style**
  Sets a preferred display style for the Capture Polygon. The default style is a filled white polygon with a single point black outline. The polygon style can be adjusted for the Capture Polygon tool to any line and fill pattern style supported by Discover Mobile.

**Note**

A **Named Style** can also be assigned to any object captured via the GPS. This Named Style will override the default capture point, polyline or polygon style (see *Named Styles*).

- **Way Point Navigation Style**
  Sets a preferred display style for the **Way Point Navigation** - The default style is an orientated red triangle. The symbol style can be adjusted for the Way Point Navigation tool to any symbol style supported by Discover Mobile.

## Applying Named Styles

Named styles can be applied to any type of object, including drawing objects and GPS objects. Before you can apply named styles, you must create a style library. For information on creating and assigning names styles, see *Named Styles*.

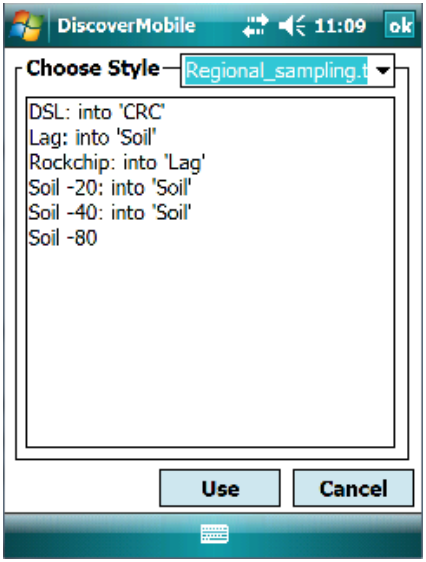
**To apply named styles to new objects:**

1. Set the **GO>Preferences>Object Creation>Named Styles** option to **Always**. The Named Styles dialog is then displayed when a drawing object or GPS object is created.

2. When an object is created, the Named Styles dialog is displayed.

3. In the **Style** drop-down list, choose a Syle Library from the top pull-down list. The available named styles are displayed. Only those styles applicable to the object type are displayed, i.e. if a point object is created, only the point-type named styles will be displayed.

4. Either double-tap a named style, or select the style and tap the **Use** button.




*The Named Styles dialog after capturing a point object: the list has been filtered to display only point-type styles*

The object is then added to the table assigned to the selected named style.

Any preset Quick Pick field values will also be populated in the table, and if the Edit Attributes option is enabled, additional field values may be added (see *Populating Fields*).

**Note** The current insertion layer for drawing objects and data capture table for GPS objects are ignored when using named styles. However, the standard insertion tables are used if a named styles is not selected and the Named Styles dialog is cancelled. If the insertion layer has not been set, you will be prompted to select a table. Selecting None here will terminate the object capture.

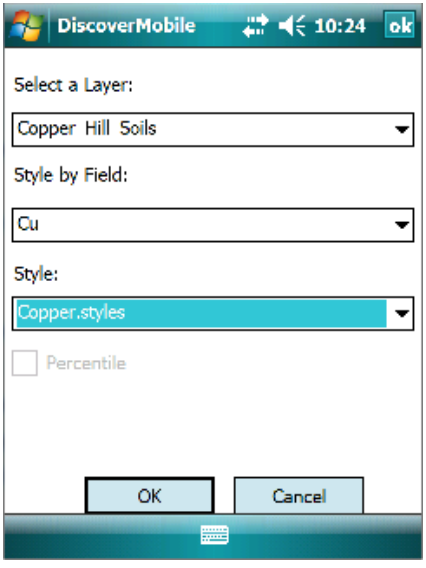
## Applying Range Styles

For information on creating and assigning range styles, see *Range Styles*.

To apply an existing Range Style library to a numeric dataset open in Discover Mobile, select the **Go>Edit>Apply Range Style** menu option.

In the following dialog, from each appropriate pull-down list:

1. Select the target table/layer.
2. Select the numeric field to apply the range style to.
3. Select the Range Style to apply.




4. Tap **OK**.

**Note** This is a one-off application; any new data points added to the target table will not be modified by the Range Style library until this process is repeated.

## Applying a Range Style Library During XRF Data Capture

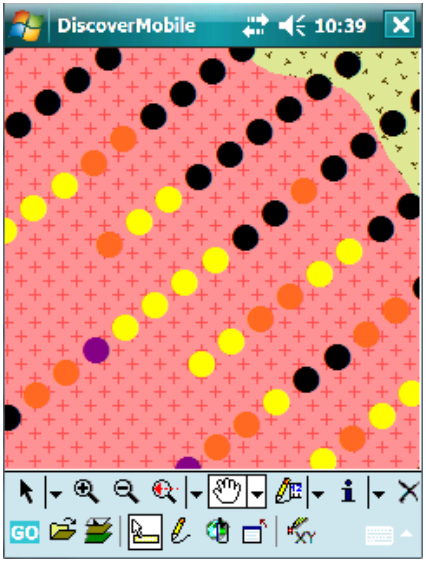
Range Style libraries can be automatically applied to data points as they are captured using Discover Mobiles XRF connection functionality.

1. Connect to the GPS

2. Ensure your XRF connection is Setup (**Go>XRF>Setup**)

3. Connect to the portable XRF (**Go>XRF>Connect**) and after entering a batch number (or selecting an exisitng one), specify the Element, and Range Style library to apply to it (under the XRF Style pull-down). Tap **OK**.

4. Each XRF data point will now be automatically styled as it's captured.




*A Range Style library applied to XRF data automatically as field measurements are carried out.*

For more information, see Appendix C: *Connect to the XRF device*.

## Named Styles

Named styles allows you to create a library of graphical styles, which can then be applied when creating objects. Additionally, Quick Pick options and tables can be assigned to each object style (rather than relying on table-specific Quick Pick options).

For example, four soil mesh sizes are to be collected into a soil_sampling table. Each soil mesh size would be assigned a unique symbol (e.g. different coloured circles), and these would all automatically populate the soil_sampling table, maintaining the same sample number series. However, selecting an -80 mesh size from the Named Style dialog will automatically populate a size field in this table with the '-80' string, rather than requiring the user to select this from a Pick List.

- *Creating a Named Style Library*
- *Creating Named Styles on the Desktop*
- *Sample Named Styles Dataset*
- *File Management with Named Styles*
- *Setting up Named Styles for Multiple Users*

For information on applying named styles, see *Applying Named Styles*.

## Creating a Named Style Library

Prior to assigning a Named Style to an object, a Named Style library needs to be created. Select the **GO>Edit>Named Styles** menu option, and in the following dialog, press the **New File** button to name and create a new library. This will be saved to the Named Styles directory as a text file. The default library is named `NamedStyles.txt`. The named styles directory is set under the **GO>Preferences>Directories>Named Styles** command (it is recommended to set this to a location such a Storage Card rather than the default `\My Documents` location).

In the Named Styles dialog, press the **Add** button to add a new style. For each Named Style, the following can be defined:

- **Name**: the style name e.g. '-80 mesh'. This name is used solely for user reference/convenience, and is not used as an attribute.
- **Object Type**: point, polyline or polygon e.g. point.
- **Object Style**: for the specified object Type, the adjacent browse button allows the appropriate graphical style to be set (e.g. blue triangles for rock-chips, red cross-hatched region for granite outcrop).
- **Capture Table** (optional): specify the open table into which this named style will be captured e.g. 'soil_sampling'.
- **Quick Pick options** (optional): for the specified capture table, define Quick Pick options relevant for this data type. For example, a size field in the table may assigned as 'Set Constant Value' of '-80'.

To remove a Named Style,select the style and tap the **Delete** button. Multiple Named Style Libraries can be created and edited using the pull-down list at the top of the dialog.

If the **Capture Table** option is not set, the styles are not table specific and the new object will be stored in the current insertion table, regardless of the object type.

If the **Quick Pick** option is not set, the only Quick Pick options that will be applied are those that have been set in the table with **GO>Edit>Quick Pick Options**.

## Creating Named Styles on the Desktop

For non-table specific named styles, the structure of the Named Styles file used by Discover Mobile is identical to a ColourMap table used in Discover. You can use the ColourMap function in Discover to create a Named Style file for Discover Mobile. The procedure for creating a Named Style file from Discover is a follows:

1. Start the ColourMap function in Discover using the **Discover>ColourMap** menu.

2. Select **Setup** from the ColourMap menu and choose the **Select Colour Table** option from **Colour Table Options** on the left of the dialog. Select the colour table you wish to use from the selection list on the right of the dialog and assign the column you wish to use as the unique code and click OK.

3. Select **Export to Discover Mobile** from the **ColourMap** menu and assign an appropriate file name for the Named Style file and click **OK**.

4. Copy the newly created .TXT file to the Named Style directory on your mobile device.

## Sample Named Styles Dataset

The Discover Mobile desktop installation includes a sample dataset. This data is installed to an ‘Example Data’ directory under the Discover Mobile folder (default location `C:\Program Files\Encom\Discover Mobile\Example Data`).

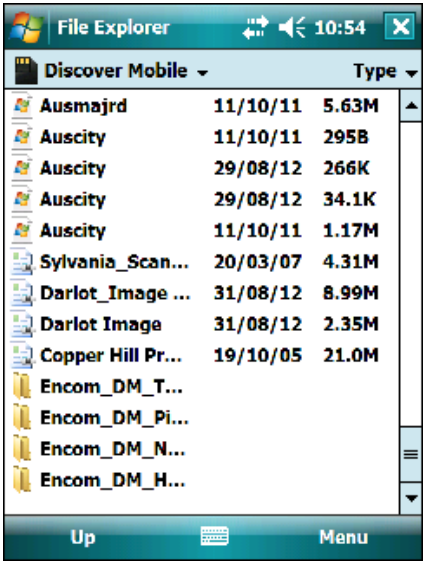
This example dataset contains the tables (and associated Geoset Field_Data) used in the previous screenshots. It also contains the Named Styles example (Regional_Sampling.txt) and associated Pick Lists in the relevant subdirectories.

**To setup the sample on the mobile device:**

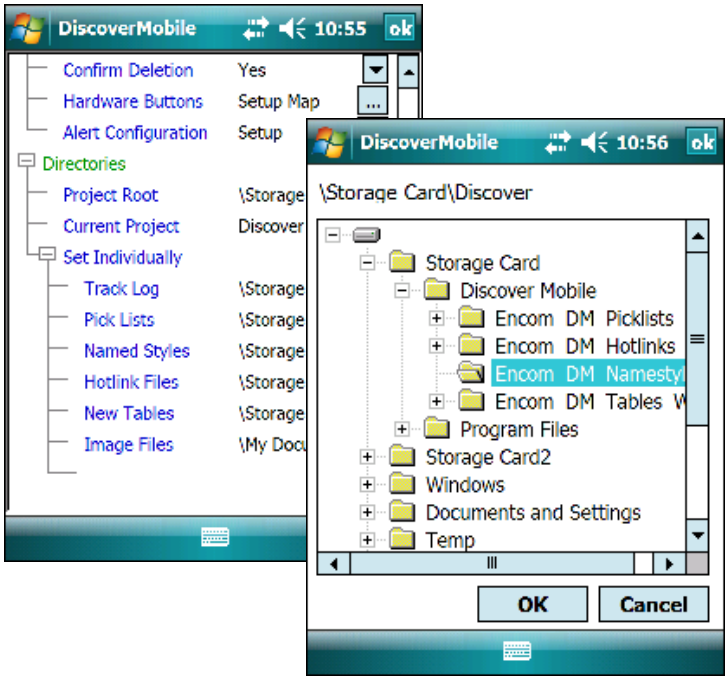
1. Ensure that Discover Mobile is not running on the mobile device.

2. Copy the various data tables (soils, lag, rockchip, etc) and the `Field_Data.gst` geoset file into a PPC data directory.

3. Then copy the contents of the `Example Data\NamedStyles` and `Example Data\PickLists` subdirectories into the appropriate directories on the PPC as defined under **GO>Preferences>Directories**. Alternatively, copy these subdirectories in their entirety to the root level of the PPC storage card, and then point the Directories settings to these new directories.

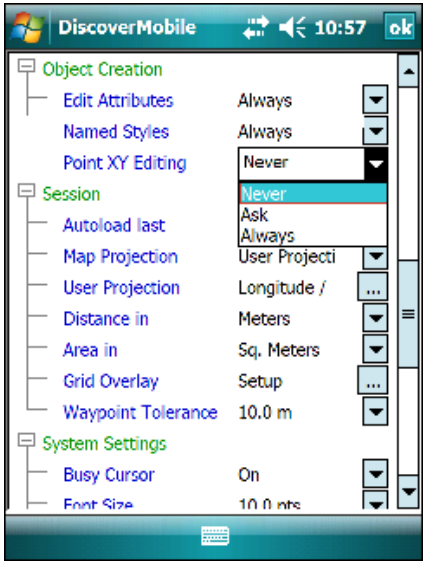



*Example data and the named Styles and PickLists subdirectories placed onto the Storage Card*

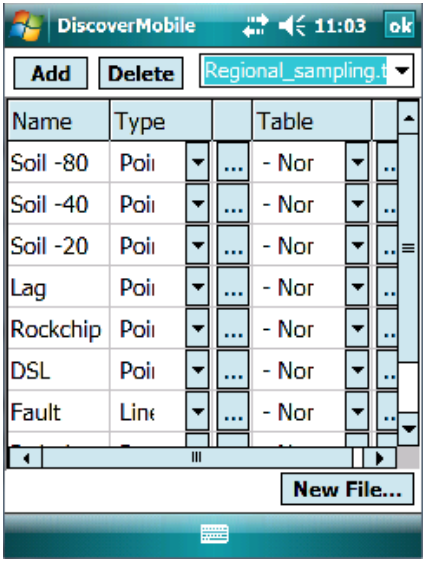



*Configuring the Named Styles and Pick Lists directories within Discover Mobile to the Storage Card locations*

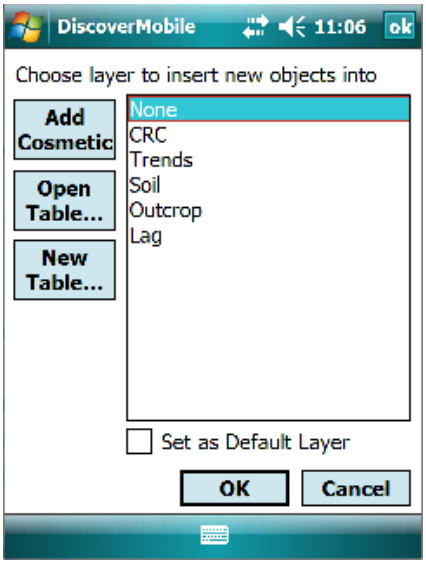
4. Under **GO>Preferences>Object Creation**, set both the **Named Styles** and **Edit Attributes** dialogs to **Always** appear during data capture, and the **Point XY Editing** dialog to **Never** appear.



5. To examine the Regional_Sampling Named Style library and its related Quick Pick options, select the **GO>Edit>Named Styles** menu option, and select this library from the pull down list. At this point do not modify any settings.




6. Finally, choose **GO>Map>Set>Insertion Layer** and set to **None**. Named Styles will ignore any insertion layer set; however, if the user cancels out of the Named Styles dialog, Discover Mobile will utilise any Insertion Layer set to capture the object. Switching between Drawing object types (e.g. from point to region) during the object capture process will still result in the Insertion Layer prompt being displayed.




**Note**

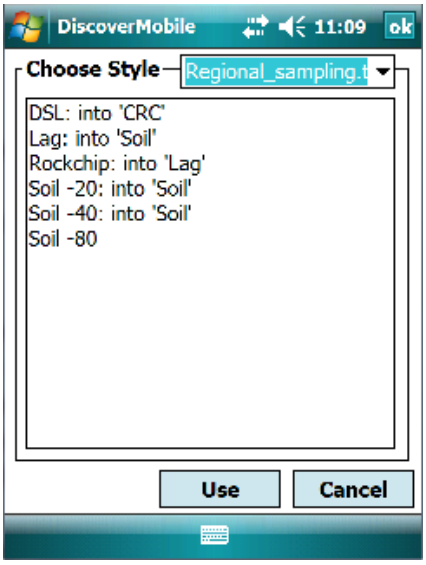
When using the various GPS Capture options with Named Styles, ensure to first set the **GO>GPS>Setup Data Capture Tables** for each of the object types (points, polylines and polygons). For instance, create a 'General' table with suitable generic fields (particularly a large 'Comments' field), and set this as the default for all three object types. Then if the Named Styles dialog is cancelled by the user during the GPS capture process for any object type (i.e. no style is appropriate for the captured object), the object will be nevertheless captured into this general table; e.g. for unanticipated data types such as waterholes, historic workings, meteorite impact craters, sites of cultural significance, etc.

### Using the example named styles dataset:

1. To capture a soil sample location in the map window, display the Drawing toolbar, and tap the **Capture Point** button. Tap on any location in the map window (records where this soil sample was collected).

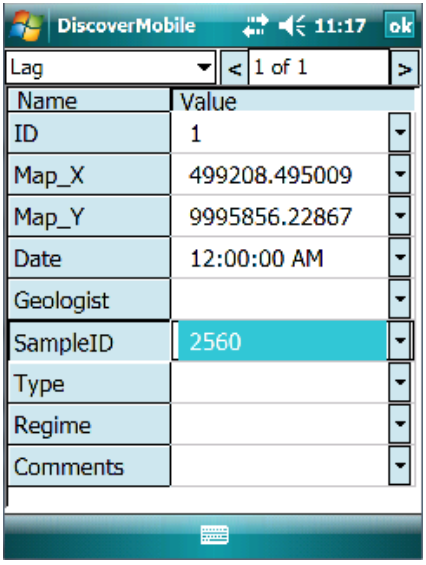
   In the field, the user would have a GPS receiver configured and connected to Discover Mobile, and would use the **Capture GPS Point** button to capture their current location as the soil sample location. However, unless you are in the Mt Isa region of Australia, a GPS location will not place the user within the example dataset.

2. The Named Styles dialog will appear, automatically filtered to only display the object type selected, in this case points.



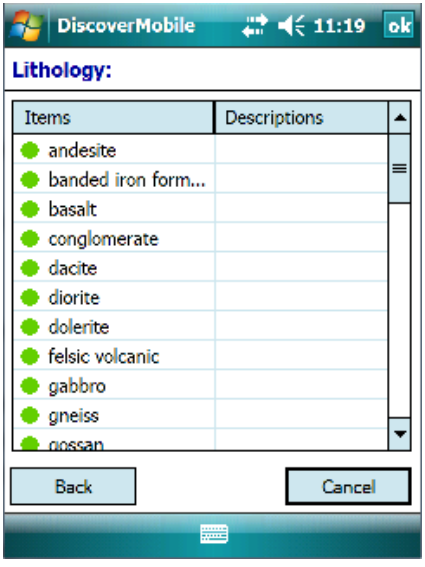

3. Our soil sample has been sampled to the -20 mesh fraction, so choose the ‘Soil -20’ option, and press OK (or double tap on the style).

4. The Edit Attributes browser will open for the Soil table, with all the Quick pick attributes auto-filled (including the current date). Note that an initial SampleID needs to be entered, otherwise the “Increment by 1’ option set for this filed will begin at 0. To continue an existing number series type 2560. Also, the Comments field is a free text field for any additional comments the sampler may wish to make.



5. Press OK when finished. A yellow circle representing the soil sample will have been placed at the position tapped. Try capturing a few more soil samples of different mesh sizes) and note that they share the same sample number series, but that the Mesh attribute changes depending on the initial style selected.

6. Now record a rock-chip sample; the Edit Attributes dialog will now open the CRC browser. Note that in addition to the various Quick Pick options assigned (and again needing an initial SampleID), the Lithology field has an associated Pick List: tap on the pull-down arrow to the far right of this field to select from a list of available rock types.




7. Experiment with the other object styles: Fault (polyline) and Granite and Basalt (Region). Note that the Outcrop table (regions) has both Lithology and Occurrence pick lists.

## File Management with Named Styles

Intelligent table naming and handling will allow a Named Styles library to be preserved without file name changes over multiple days/months of use. Additionally it can allow the library to be utilised on multiple mobile devices (i.e. multiple field workers).

1. Create the source tables as templates, from which field tables are cloned. For example, have a Soil_template and Lag_template stored under a separate ‘templates’ directory on the storage card. In this way the source table structures are preserved; the user never captures data into these template tables.

2. At the start of the field collection campaign, each user clones the necessary data tables from the templates using the **Clone From** table option under the **GO>File>New Table** menu option. These could be saved into for example a ‘Field Data’ directory on the storage card. Thus a Lag table would be created from the Lag_template, and a Soil table form the Soil_template.

3. As illustrated previously, the Named Styles library will have been configured to capture data into these standard names Lag and Soil. If say date specific names were used, then the Named Styles library would have to be reconfigured regularly to point to date specific table names, which would be painful.

4. If multiple mobile devices are in use, ensure that any quick pick options involving user name attributes has been edited to reflect the user’s name. For instance in the example dataset, most of the tables have a ‘Geologist’ field with a ‘Set Constant Value’ of “MJ”. This would need to be altered on Andrew Smith’s device to “AS”.

5. Ensure the first sample number for each data type is set correctly on each device, particularly when multiple field workers (and therefore devices) are involved. For example, sampler A may have an initial rock-chip sample bag series starting at 38900, whilst sampler B may start their rock-chip bag series at 39500.

6. Capture field data using the relevant style types in the named style library.

7. At regular time periods (e.g. daily or weekly), make backups of the various field data files with date and user name suffixes into say a ‘Backups’ folder on the storage card.

For example, Mike Jones backs up his data files on 22/01/07. He uses the **GO>File>Save Table Copy As** option, and saves the Lag and Soil tables as Lag_MJ220107 and Soil_MJ220107. The user's initials are important if multiple samplers are working with multiple devices, otherwise the database administrator may receive three Lag_22/01/07 tables from three different users. If or when possible, download them to a PC or email them to the data administrator.

8. At the end of a field campaign, the main field data tables (e.g. Lag and Soil) can be saved as say Soil_MJ15/02/02_final, and sent to the office. These tables will contain all the data for the period of the field campaign.

9. To start a new field campaign, delete the existing field data tables (e.g. Lag and Soil), then clone new ones from the templates.

10. Alternatively, to utilise a new (empty) data table each day, save the previous days field tables off with a date and sampler suffix (**GO>File>Save Table Copy As**), close the field tables then clone new tables from the templates. This will result in a series of date stamped tables with data just for the date indicated. This is a little more complex to get right (particularly with continuation of sample number series), and is not generally recommended to save user confusion. Nevertheless it is another way of handling field data.

Neither method requires any user modification of the Named Styles library nor its Quick options, except for the user name and sample number setups discussed in steps 4 and 5.

## Setting up Named Styles for Multiple Users

As demonstrated in the sample Named Styles dataset section previously, migrating Named Styles libraries and related Quick Pick options between mobile devices is straight-forward process. Additionally field data templates and the necessary data and backup directories can also be replicated onto multiple devices, using the procedure outlined below:

1. On one device, create the following directories on the storage card:

    - **Field Templates** – stores templates for each field data table (e.g. Soil_template). These are not to be altered by the field user

    - **Field Data** – contains the working data files, cloned from the templates (e.g. Soil, Lag, etc)

- **Backups** – daily or weekly backups of the working data files are saved here using **GO>File>Save Table Copy As**, e.g. Soil_AZ23/01/07

- **Config** – all named style libraries and associated quick pick files are stored here. Alternatively separate PickList and NamedStyles directories could be created (as with the example data).

2. Either on the desktop, or on Discover Mobile, create the various templates. It is generally easiest to create the most complex one first, then clone the other templates from this first table, altering each as necessary. Save or transfer these templates into the 'Field Templates' directory on the mobile device.

3. Clone these templates and create the appropriate field data files (soil, lag, etc). Save these into the 'Field Data' directory.

4. Open these field tables into either a MapInfo Professional or Discover Mobile window, and create a Geoset session file. On the desktop, use the **Tools>Tool Manager>MapX Geoset Utility**; in Discover Mobile, use the **GO>File>Save Geoset** function. Place this Geoset in the 'Field Data' directory.

5. In Discover Mobile, set the **GO>Preferences>Directories>Named Styles** options for Named Styles and Pick Lists to point to the 'Config' directory (or whatever directories will be used for these files).

6. Create any required Pick Lists and name them after their destination fields in the existing tables. Place them in the Pick List directory (e.g. 'Config')

7. Create a Named Style library, and set the required Quick Pick options for each style type.

8. Setup is now complete. Close Discover Mobile, and copy the four directories created in step 1 to a directory on the desktop PC ('Field Setup').

9. Disconnect the mobile device from the PC, and connect the next PPC to the PC. Ensure that Discover Mobile is not running on the PPC, and then copy the four directories from the PC to the mobile device.

10. On the mobile device, set the **GO>Preferences>Directories>Named Styles** options for Named Styles and Pick Lists to point to the new 'Config' directory.

11. Ensure that any user specific Quick Pick options (i.e. sampler name or initials) are configured via **GO>Edit>Named Styles**), as well as initial sample numbers for each data type.

## Range Styles

The symbol style of numeric point data can be permanently altered with a Range Style library. This functionality is similar to the Point Classification tool in the Discover Geochem module.

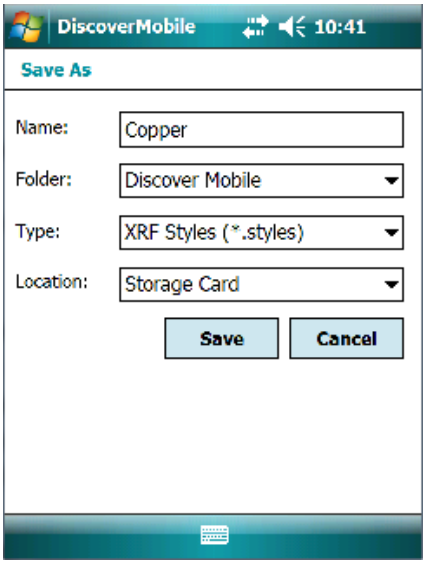
A Range Style library consists of a series of user-defined numeric ranges, each with an assigned symbol style.

- *Creating a Range Style Library*
- *Editing a Range Style Library*
- *Creating a Range Style Library on the Desktop*

For information on applying range styles, see*Applying Range Styles* and *Applying a Range Style Library During XRF Data Capture*.

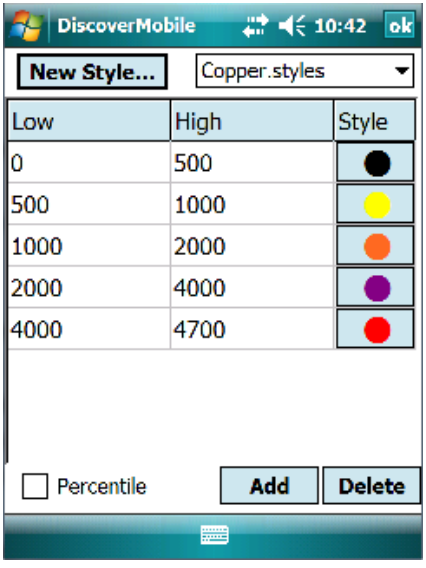
### Creating a Range Style Library

1. To create a Range Style library within Discover Mobile, select the **Go>Edit>Range Styles** menu option.
2. Select the **New Style** button (top left)
3. Enter a name for the library; it will be saved into the Current Project directory (as set under **Preferences>Directories**)




4. Press the **Add** button (bottom right); a new range will be added to the library. Enter the desired lower (>=) and upper/high (<) values. Also set an appropriate symbol style by pressing the adjacent symbol button.

5. Repeat step 4 for each additional required range:




6. Range values can treated as percentiles by enabling the **Percentile** option at the bottom of the dialog.

**Note** Ranged Styles created as Percentile ranges cannot be auto-applied to XRF data. Percentile-based ranged styles will not be displayed in the list of available styles displayed in *GO>XRF>Connect*

7. Tap **OK** to finish creating the library.

### Editing a Range Style Library

1. Select the **Go>Edit>Range Styles** menu option.
2. From the pull-down list at the top right, select the library to edit.
3. **Add** or **Delete** ranges as necessary, or edit existing range values and styles.
4. Press **OK** to finish editing the library.

### Creating a Range Style Library on the Desktop

The Range Style Editor installed with Discover Mobile's desktop tools is an easier way of creating Range Style libraries. See the *Range Style Editor* for more information.

## Labels and Annotation

- *Adding Labels and Annotation*
- *Removing Labels and Annotations*

### Adding Labels and Annotation

The **Add Label** button places automatic labels (from a selected column in the browser) for selected objects. The labels are placed in a special layer called the Annotation Layer. The source of the labels and their display properties can be modified using the Layer Control dialog. The labels are placed in the Annotation Layer and cannot be permanently saved. To remove annotations/labels from the map use the **Clear Custom Labels** popup menu on the **Add Label** button.

The **Add Annotation** button allows additional text to be placed in the **Annotation Layer** at a set location on a map. This text is placed in the Annotation layer and cannot be transferred or saved to a specified layer. Ensure the pop-up keyboard is open before selecting this tool.

### Removing Labels and Annotations

To remove all labels from the annotation layer, choose **GO>Edit>Clear Custom Labels**.

To remove all annotations from the annotation layer, choose **GO>Edit>Clear Annotations**.

Individual labels and annotations cannot be removed.

## Hotlinking Files to Map Objects

Information located in external files can be linked as attributes to map objects in Discover Mobile using the table Hotlink function. For example, if you wish to record a detailed description of a sample site, you can record this information using Pocket Word and then store the file path and file name as an attribute in the browser for the sample. Similarly, Pocket Excel spreadsheets, Audio files or image files can also be hotlinked.

- *Adding Hotlink Field to Table*
- *Creating a Hotlink*
- *Editing a Hotlink File*
- *Using the Hotlink Files in MapInfo*
- *Hotlink Images from the PPC Camera*

### Adding Hotlink Field to Table

To attach a hotlink file to a map object you must first add an attribute field to your table to store the pathway for the hotlink object. This can either be done on your desktop computer in MapInfo Professional and copied to Discover Mobile or you can create a new table in Discover Mobile using the **GO>File>New Table** menu to create a new table.

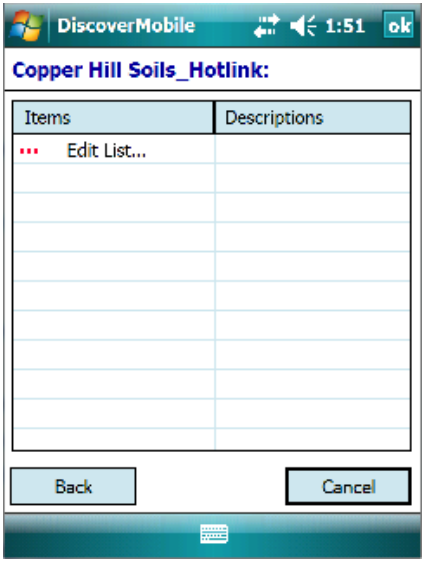
## Creating a Hotlink

### To create hotlink attribute:

1. Add a map object to your table.

2. Tap on the map object with the **Information** Tool to display the current objects attributes.

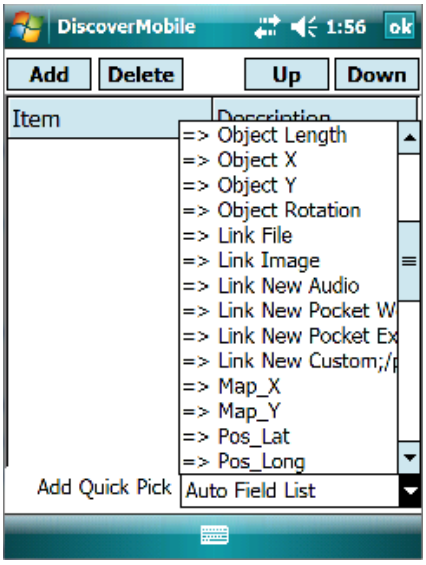
3. Click the dropdown button located next to the hotlink field. You will be presented with an Edit List. Click the **Edit List** option.




*Hotlinking a field*

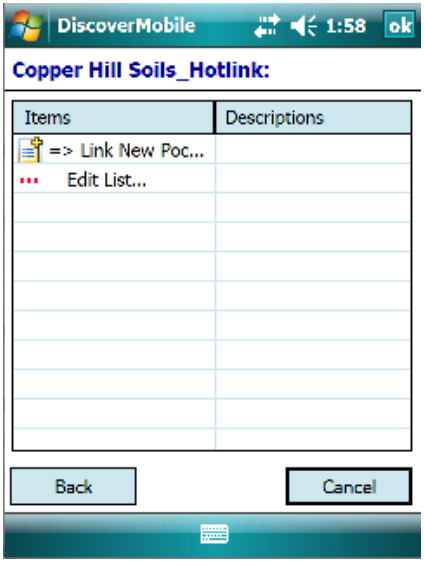
4. Tap on the Auto Field list at the bottom of the screen. Use the scroll bar to display the available hotlink options:

   - Link File
   - Link Image
   - Link New Audio
   - Link New Pocket Word
   - Link New Pocket Excel
   - Link New Custom




*Selecting the Hotlink type*

5. Select the appropriate hotlink file type and tap **OK** to return to the attribute list. In the pull-down list next to the column designated to store the hotlink path, select the link new file entry (e.g. Link New Pocket Excel document is displayed if the Link New Pocket Excel Auto Field was selected).

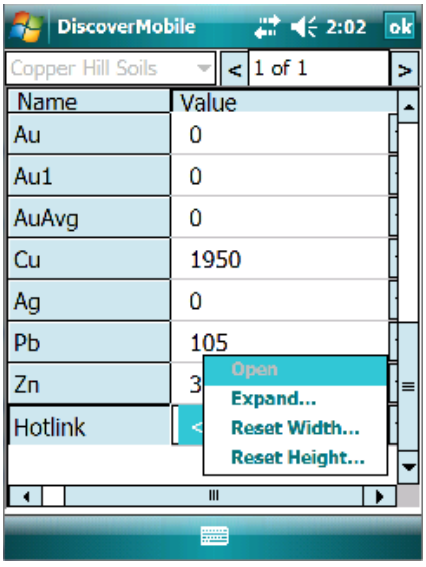



6. Pocket Excel will then load and ask you for a file name or new file. To create a new file tap the **New** button and enter the desired information into Pocket Excel.

7. When data entry is complete, save the file in the Discover Mobile Hotlink directory (set under **GO>Preferences** menu) with a preferred name and then click **OK**. A dialog with the new Discover Mobile link filename and pathway will be displayed. Tap **OK** to exit this dialog and check that the new file name and path are stored in the hotlink column.

## Editing a Hotlink File

To return to a hotlink file for editing bring up the browser window and tap on the hotlink field. A menu will appear with an Open and Expand entry. Select the Open menu to open the file.




## Using the Hotlink Files in MapInfo

In order to use the hotlink files created in Discover Mobile back in MapInfo Professional on the desktop, you need to copy both the .TAB file and the hotlink files to the desktop computer. If you store all your hotlink files in the Discover mobile hotlinks directory (configured under the **GO>Preferences** menu) then you can simply copy the entire contents of this directory back to your desktop computer.

To make this process as simple as possible, it is recommended that you store the .TAB file containing the hotlink attribute and the linked files in the same directory. Once the files are copied back to your desktop computer you can use the **DiscoverMobile>Convert Hotlinks** tool to remap the file paths and extensions so they will work on the desktop computer.

## Hotlink Images from the PPC Camera

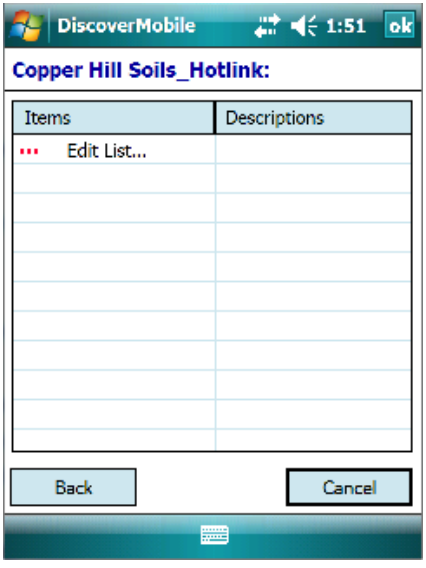
### To create image hotlink from camera:

1. Navigate to **GO>Preferences>Directories>Image Files** ensure that the path for the Images files is set to the path where images created from the PPC camera are stored.

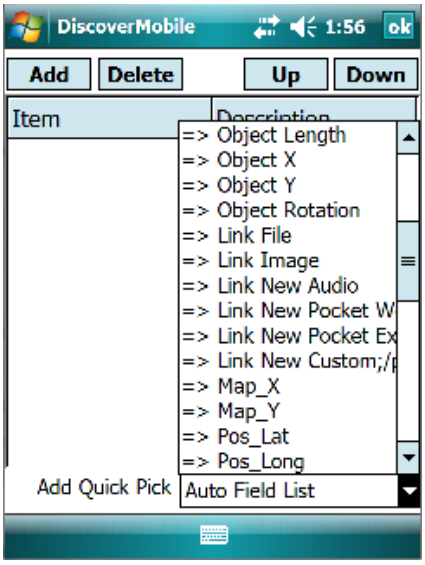
2. Using the PPC camera take a photo.

3. Create a new map object within a specified layer. The object can be a point, line or polygon. After the graphical object has been created the table browser record is presented. Alternatively, an existing map object can be used and selected.

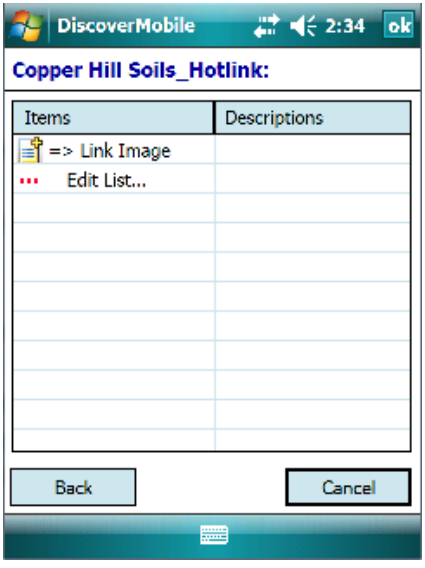
4. Ensuring a Hotlink field is present in the layer (preferably string field 254 width). Click the dropdown button located next to the hotlink field. You will be presented with an Edit List. Click the **Edit List** option.




5. Tap on the **Auto Field** list at the bottom of the screen. Use the scroll bar to display the Link Image option and select. Click **OK** to have this as a Quick Pick option.




6. Click on the **=> Link Image** option. This will open a directory where the camera images were saved. Select the relevant image. Click **OK** within the Browser Window to commit the image linking.



7. To simply view the hotlink camera image navigate to the Select Toolbar Info icon and select Image. This tool can be used to display the linked image by clicking on the object with the linked image. If an object to select with no image link the following message is displayed "No image to display".

8. To inherit the image links when transferring the PPC data to the desktop/ laptop use the **DiscoverMobile>Convert Hotlinks** tool.

# 11 Working with the GPS

Discover Mobile has been designed to connect to a wide selection of GPS receivers, including handheld devices from Garmin, Magellan and Trimble. Receiver types include Compact Flash (CF) card GPS units, Bluetooth units and backpack differential DGPS receivers.

Discover Mobile supports the industry standard NMEA (National Marine Electronics Association) 0183 version 2 protocol, so any GPS receiver which outputs data using this protocol should work efficiently with Discover Mobile.

It also supports Trimble's proprietary TSIP protocol, allowing the collection of high precision and differential GPS data (both real-time and post-processed) with the appropriate receivers.

- *Connecting to the GPS*
- *Displaying the Current Position*
- *Monitoring Satellite Status*
- *Navigating to a Known Point*
- *Tracking Your Path*

For information on setting up a DGPS connection and how to correct DGPS data, see *Working with Differential GPS (DGPS)*.

For information on controlling the view with the GPS, see *Auto-Rotate and Auto-Centre*.

For information on capturing GPS-located objects, see *Creating GPS-located Objects*.

## Connecting to the GPS

- *Connecting to an NMEA GPS Receiver*
- *Troubleshooting an NMEA GPS Connection*
- *Connecting to a Trimble Receiver*
- *Connection Hardware*

## Connecting to an NMEA GPS Receiver

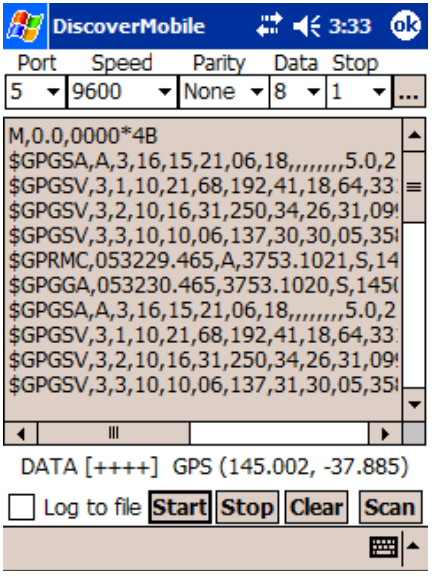
The basic process to connect Discover Mobile to a GPS for the first time is as follows:

1. Under the **GO>Preferences** menu option, ensure that the GPS Protocol is set to NMEA.

2. If necessary, turn on the GPS, and check that it is connected correctly to the PPC device (via the appropriate cables or connections, e.g. a Bluetooth or serial port connection). See *Connection Hardware* for further information.

3. Ensure that no other third party GPS software is running on the PPC; most PPC devices will only allow one software application to access the GPS communication port at a time.

4. From **GO>Preferences>Connection>Setup** or **GO>GPS>Setup Connection**, open the GPS setup screen. The connection port for the GPS receiver needs to be set manually, as do the port settings Speed, Parity, Data and Stop. The settings are typically provided by the manufacturer of the GPS receiver in the accompanying documentation. Once these settings are set, press Start to test the connection. After a short period of time (up to about 30 seconds), a continuous NMEA data stream should be displayed—each line starts with '$GP….', which indicates a successful connection with the receiver.




*Example of Setup Connection dialog with a valid GPS connection*

5. If uncertain about the receiver settings, or the data stream fails to appear, or a message ‘Bad Data’ is displayed, the settings are incorrect. Try pressing the Scan button at the bottom of the dialog; Discover Mobile will run through every permutation of settings attempting to establish a connection to your GPS receiver. See *Troubleshooting an NMEA GPS Connection* for further information.

6. Once a valid data stream from the GPS is displayed, press the Stop button. Make a note of the various settings for future reference, and close the dialog. These settings will be automatically retained unless Discover Mobile is reinstalled or the settings are changed (for instance if a different GPS receiver is used).

7. Select the **GO>GPS>Connect** menu option to connect to the GPS receiver. Once the receiver has found sufficient valid satellites (use **GO>GPS>Monitor Satellite Status** to observe the current visible satellites), a current position fix will be displayed. A ‘GPS – Fix 2D’ or ‘GPS – Fix 3D’ message will be displayed at the top of the map window.

Discover Mobile is now ready for data capture.

**Note** After this initial GPS connection setup, the user only has to enable the **GO>GPS>Connect** option to reconnect to the same GPS receiver (assuming that the connection settings discussed in step 3 have not been altered).

## Troubleshooting an NMEA GPS Connection

The Setup Connection dialog is used to help configure and debug a NMEA GPS connection. To display the setup dialog, choose **GO>GPS>Setup Connection** or tap **Setup** from the Connection dialog. The Setup Connection dialog displays raw data as it is received from the GPS receiver (and gives an estimate of the signal quality if satellites are in view). Discover Mobile will only be able to read and display the GPS data in the output window if the serial port communication settings are set correctly.

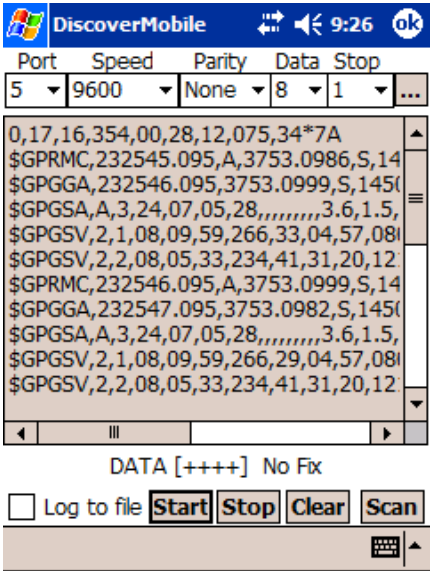
There are several controls available on this dialog:

- **Start** – opens the GPS port using the settings selected at the top of the dialog. If the port is successfully opened and valid data is found it will be displayed in the output window.

- **Stop** – closes the GPS port.

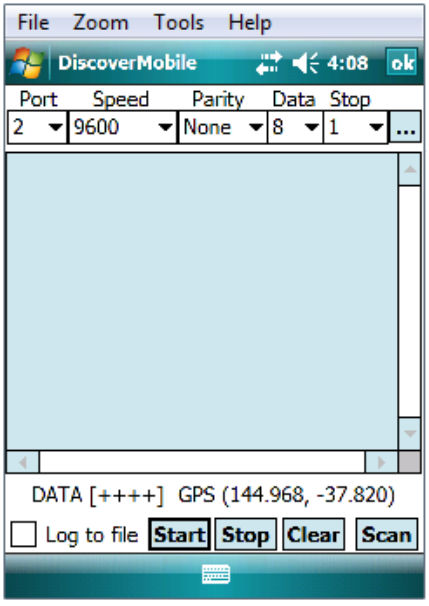
- **Clear** – clears the data stream from the display window.

Once the connection Port for the GPS receiver and the appropriate settings (Speed, Parity, Data and Stop) have been specified, press the Start button. If Discover Mobile detects NMEA format data on the selected COM port, it will display the raw sentence information in the window (see below).




*Example of Setup Connection dialog with a valid GPS connection*

If there is no NMEA data available on the selected COM port, the display window will remain blank except for a message “Output will be displayed here” (see figure below) or an error “Bad Data”.

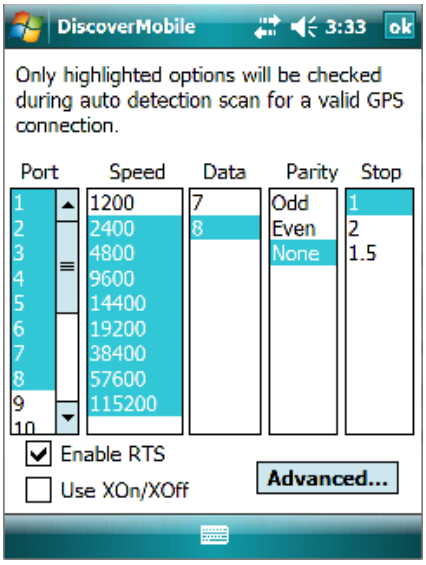



*Setup Connection dialog indicating that no NMEA data is available on the specified communication port and settings*

If the communication parameters are unknown, or no NMEA data is found with the specified setting, use the Scan button:

- Scan - can be used when first attempting to connect a GPS receiver to Discover Mobile. Discover Mobile will scan all selected COM ports and communication settings on the PPC looking for a valid NMEA GPS signal. If a valid connection port and signal is found, the scan will stop and the raw GPS data will be output to the display window. The communication settings will then be saved to the Connection preferences when the dialog is exited.

- Before commencing a scan, the list of COM ports, Speed, Data, Parity and Stop bit combinations checked by Discover Mobile may need to be modified. This can be done by tapping on the **Browse** button in the top right of the **Setup Connection** dialog. All settings that are highlighted in the configuration dialog will be scanned by Discover Mobile. If it is known that the particular GPS does not communicate at speeds less than 4800 baud or greater than 19200 baud, then remove (deselect) those speed settings from the list. Discover Mobile will skip those options during the scan. Certain COM ports can also be deselected to prevent Discover Mobile from scanning these. This can be particularly useful if the GPS is connected via a Serial Cable and the Bluetooth Port (generally COM port 8) is to be bypassed during the scan.




*Example of the Scan configuration dialog showing a subset of the available options selected for scanning by Discover Mobile*

**Note**

The **Scan** function in Discover Mobile should be capable of detecting which COM port the GPS receiver is attached to. However if the correct settings are already known for the GPS unit (.e.g. from GPS user manual), it is recommended that the Speed, Parity, Data and Stop Bits parameters are manually set.

If raw GPS information is displayed in the output screen, some extra status information will also appear along the bottom of the screen between the output display window and the buttons. This information describes the status of the GPS connection. The DATA [++ - -] indicator on the right indicates the quality of the data stream. The quality is measured as the number of GPS sentences Discover Mobile can process without error. Possible values are:

Data [- - - -] = no valid data

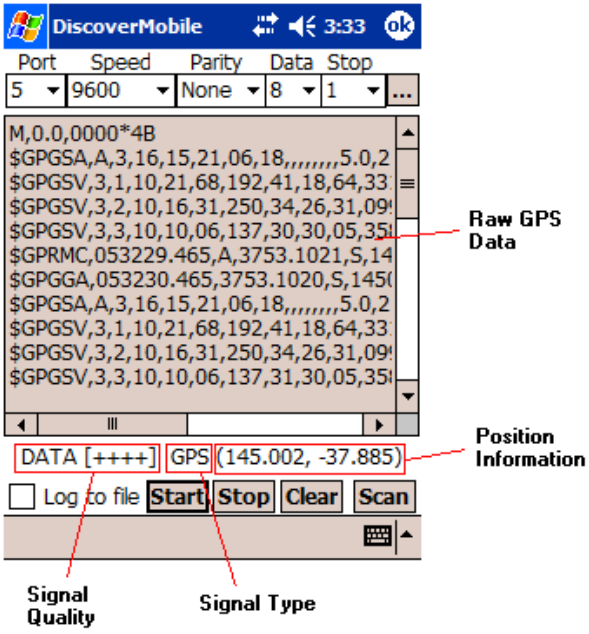
Data [+ - - -] = many errors, very poor data

Data [++ - -] = some errors, data connection OK

Data [+++ -] = occasional error, data good

Data [++++] = No errors, data excellent

Most GPS units will output valid NMEA data regardless of whether they have a current position fix or not. If the connected GPS has obtained a position fix, the third status indicator will show the raw GPS Latitude and Longitude position.




**Note**

When using Discover Mobile with a GPS is very important that you do not have any third party GPS software running. This includes any software (other than the necessary drivers) that came with the GPS receiver. Most PPC devices will only allow one software application to access the serial port at a time. Therefore, if you have two pieces of software trying to read data from the GPS port at the same time, they will generally cause the connection to fail.

- **Enable RTS** – this tick box can be used to enable the Request to Send option. When enabled the mobile device will send a signal to the GPS to instruct it to start transmitting. This option should be enabled when working with GPS receivers connected via a serial device such as DGPS units.

- **Log to file** - tick box can be used to save a log of the raw GPS data to a text file. The text file is saved to the \MY DOCUMENTS folder on the PPC and is called GPSLog.txt.

**Note** Only use the log to file option to assist with debugging a GPS connection. If difficulties are experienced maintaining a GPS connection or errors are encountered using the GPS encounter, record a 1 minute log file under normal operation. Email this text file as an attachment to *pbbi.support@pb.com* along with a description of the problem so Piney Bowes Business Insight can assist in resolving the issue.

## Connecting to a Trimble Receiver

Trimble's high precision receivers (e.g. the GeoExplorer series of integrated mobile device and receivers) and DGPS receivers (e.g. the ProXT) utilize Trimble's proprietary TSIP protocol. To setup a connection with a receiver using this protocol:

1. Under the **GO>Preferences** menu option, ensure that the **GPS Protocol** is set to **Trimble**.

2. If necessary, turn on the GPS, and check that it is connected correctly to the PPC device (via the appropriate cables or connections, e.g. a Bluetooth or serial port connection). See *Connection Hardware* for further information.

3. Ensure that no other third party GPS software is running on the PPC; most PPC devices will only allow one software application to access the GPS communication port at a time.

4. Either via **GO>Preferences>Connection>Setup**, or via **GO>GPS>Setup Connection**, open the GPS setup screen.

5. Set the required communication **Port** that the receiver is connected to (e.g. Bluetooth or serial port). Certain devices (such as Trimble GeoExplorer units running Windows Mobile 5) have a GPS Connector (or similar) application (under **Start>Settings>Connections**) which clearly identify the COM ports for the GPS receiver (and the various protocols).

6. The various **Masks** available in this dialog allow poor satellite data to be filtered out (e.g. satellites low on the horizon, or those resulting in a high signal-to-noise ratio), improving the precision on the position fix. These are discussed fully under the **Trimble Protocol** section of the **Preferences** menu.

7. These settings will be automatically retained unless Discover Mobile is reinstalled or the settings are changed (for instance if a different GPS receiver is used).

8. Select the **GO>GPS>Connect** menu option to connect to the GPS receiver. Once the receiver has found sufficient valid satellites (use **GO>GPS>Monitor Satellite Status** to observe the current visible satellites), a current position fix will be displayed. A 'GPS – Fix 2D' or 'GPS – Fix 3D' message will be displayed at the top of the map window.

Discover Mobile is now ready for data capture.

**Note** After this initial GPS connection setup, the user only has to enable the **GO>GPS>Connect** option to reconnect to the same GPS receiver (assuming that the connection settings discussed in step 3 have not been altered).

## Connection Hardware

If you have a Compact Flash card (CF) GPS, Navman sleeve GPS or a Bluetooth GPS you do not require any cables to connect the GPS receiver to the PPC device. These GPS units are designed to attach and communicate directly with the PPC using a standard expansion slot or communication protocol. If you intend to use a Bluetooth GPS receiver you will also need a Bluetooth-equipped PPC device or you will need to purchase a separate Bluetooth expansion card.

Conventional hand held GPS units such as those from Garmin or Magellan will also require an accessory cable to connect the GPS receiver to the PPC device. Many GPS and mobile devices have unique fittings so you may have to shop around to find the appropriate serial cable and adapter to connect the two units.

Most serial cables which connect a GPS to a desktop PC are designed to connect directly to the serial port using a standard 9 pin (DB9) serial connector. Most PPC devices have proprietary data connections so a special serial cable is generally required to connect a GPS to these devices. Most GPS serial cables and proprietary PPC serial cables have 9-pin DB9 female connectors on their ends. Therefore, to connect these two female cables together, you may need a 9-pin male to male gender changer. These can be purchased from most electronics stores.

In some cases a null modem adapter may also be needed to connect the GPS receiver to the sync cable on the PPC device. The reason for this is that both mobile PPC devices and PC computers use pin 2 on their serial ports to receive data and pin 3 to transmit data. Therefore a PPC could not communicate with a desktop PC using a standard serial cable because both devices would be trying to send and receive data on the same pins. To overcome this problem most PPC devices use special sync serial cables. These cables differ from standard serial cables in that pins 2 and 3 have been swapped on the end which connects to the PC computer. This enables the PC and PPC to communicate because data is now being sent and received between the two machines on the correct pins.

Because most GPS serial cables are designed to connect directly to the serial port on a PC computer, they too have pins 2 and 3 swapped on the end which connects to the PC. This enables the GPS to communicate with the computer in exactly the same way a PPC would do using a sync cable. However this poses a problem again when the GPS cable is connected to the sync cable on the PPC. In this case both the GPS and the PPC serial cables have pins 2 and 3 swapped and therefore send and receive data on the same pins again. To overcome this problem a null modem adapter is available.

The purpose of a null modem adapter is to cancel the reversal of pins 2 and 3 on the sync cable so that both devices can communicate again. There is no easy way of telling if a PPC serial cable is a sync cable, however, in general, if the PPC serial cable has a 9-pin (DB9) female connector on one end it is probably a sync cable and will therefore require a null modem adapter to communicate with a GPS serial cable. Null modem adapters can be purchased from most electronics stores.

## Displaying the Current Position

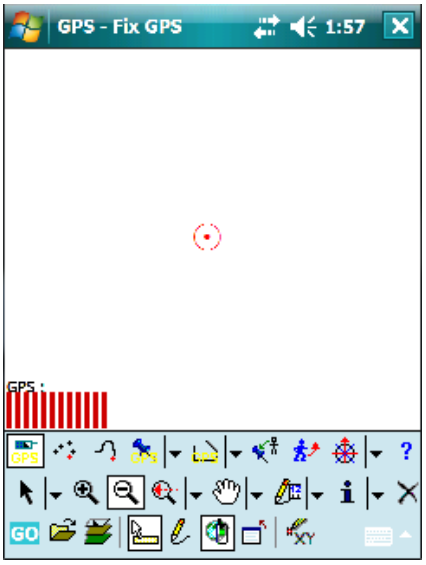
**To display the current position on a map:**

1. Make sure the GPS receiver is turned on and that it has been configured to connect to Discover Mobile (see the sections above for establishing a connection to either a NMEA or Trimble receiver).

2. Activate the GPS toolbar by tapping the **GPS** icon on the main toolbar. You should then see the GPS toolbar appear. All buttons on the GPS toolbar should be inactive (grey) except for the Connect button, the Rotate North and Setup buttons.

3. Connect to the GPS by tapping the **Connect** button on the far left of the GPS tool bar. Alternatively, use the **GO>GPS>Connect** menu item.

4. Discover Mobile will attempt to open the appropriate COM port (using the previously configured settings) and establish a connection with the GPS. If this step is successful all the buttons on the GPS toolbar will become active and you will see a red hollow circle appear in the centre of the map display.




*A successful GPS connection, indicated by a red circle in the centre of the map display and all buttons on the GPS button bar are active.*

To view your current position coordinates and determine the zoom scale of your map display, tap the **Status window** button, which is located next to the GPS button on the main toolbar. The floating **Status window** will appear on the map displaying the current position fix and other information from the GPS. It will also indicate the current zoom level of the map window.

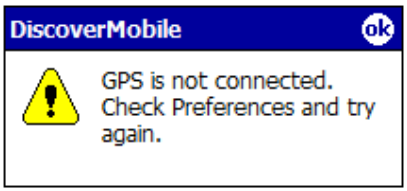
To change the zoom level of the map window tap the small arrow next to the multi zoom button on the Select toolbar and choose the zoom scale menu. Adjust the zoom scale to an appropriate level (e.g. width 1000m).

If Discover Mobile cannot establish a valid connection to the GPS receiver, or if it detects a large number of errors in the incoming data stream, an error message will appear. If this occurs, check the following and try again:

- The GPS is turned on.
- If the receiver is a Trimble unit, ensure that is outputting the desired protocol (NMEA or Trimble: see the receivers documentation and configuration software such as GPS Controller).
- The receiver is connected to the mobile device (cables are correctly connected or Bluetooth connection established).
- The appropriate protocol and communication settings have been set in Discover Mobile to match the GPS unit.

- No other applications on the PPC are sourcing the GPS data.
- If using NMEA protocol, the raw GPS data is visible in the Setup Connection dialog after pressing the Start button.

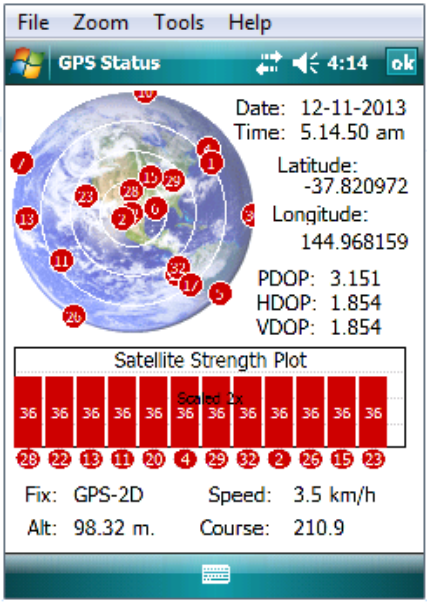
If the above settings appear correct and you still have difficulties connecting to the GPS receiver, perform a soft reset of the PPC device and try again.




*Error message indicating that communication cannot be established between Discover Mobile and the GPS receiver*

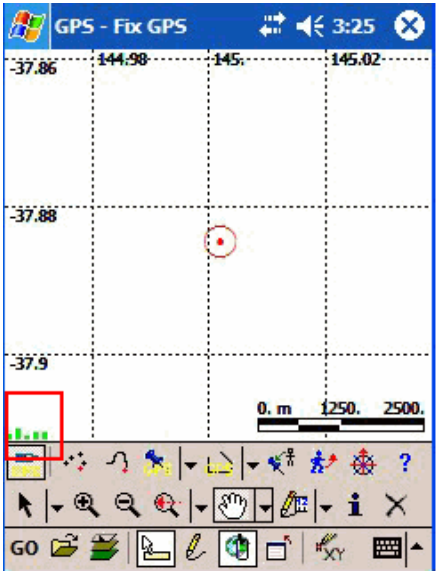
## Monitoring Satellite Status

Choose **GO>GPS>Monitor Satellite Status** to display the Monitor Satellite Status dialog, which shows the number and position of satellites currently in view. If a satellite is red it is not used in the GPS fix. Each available satellite is numbered and the corresponding signal strength is displayed as a bar in the Satellite Strength Plot.




*Example of the available satellites and their signal strength*

A mini-version of this bar graph can be displayed at the bottom left of the map window using the **GO>View>GPS Overlay** menu option.




*Map window with GPS Overlay (mini-Satellite Status) displayed (highlighted in red).*

## Navigating to a Known Point

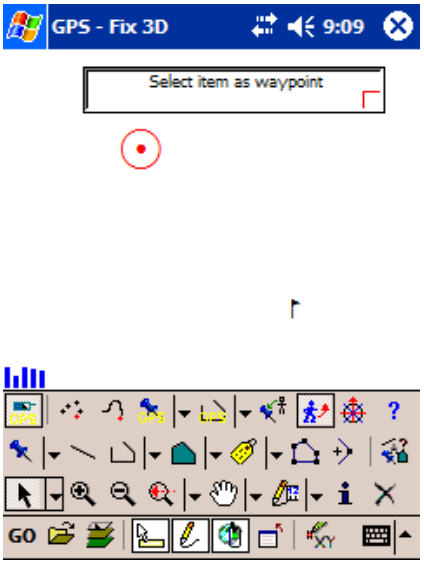
Discover Mobile provides a Waypoint Navigation tool for use with a GPS receiver. The waypoint navigation tool allows the selection of an existing map object (eg point, polygon) as a destination waypoint; it will then report the distance and bearing between the current GPS location and the selected waypoint feature in a waypoint message window.

The waypoint navigation tool is accessed from the **Waypoint Navigation** button on the GPS button bar (or choose **GO>GPS>Waypoint Navigation**). To use the waypoint navigation tool:

1. Open an existing layer that already contains the destination point or add a Cosmetic Layer to the map window and then add a point to the cosmetic layer which represents the destination location.

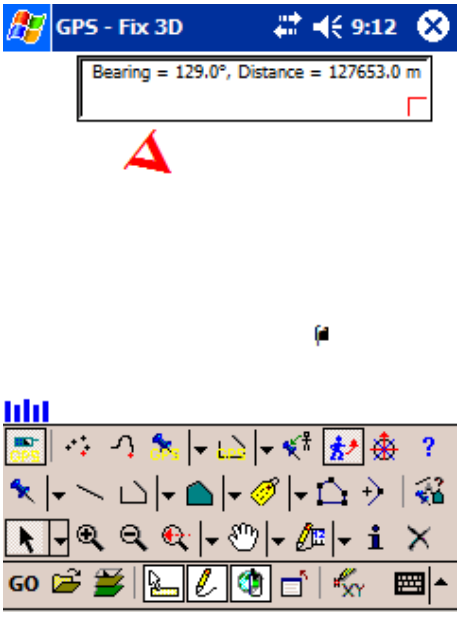
2. Connect and start the GPS.

3. Tap the **Waypoint Navigation** button on the GPS button bar. A status window should appear prompting the selection of the destination waypoint.




4. Select the destination point (the black flag in the above screenshot) to select it. The waypoint status window will change to show the distance and bearing from the current position to the waypoint.

5. The current position symbol will also change from the default symbol to an orientated red triangle. This will point in the direction of the waypoint as long as the waypoint navigation function is active. The default waypoint symbol can be changed under the **GO>GPS>Default Styles>Way Point Navigation Style** menu option. By default Discover Mobile reports the waypoint bearing as an angular value clockwise from North. The distance value will be reported in the distance units specified under the **Preferences** menu.




When the user arrives within the tolerance distance of the selected waypoint, Discover Mobile will display a message indicating arrival at the destination and will automatically turn off the waypoint navigation tool. The default waypoint tolerance value is 10m; this can be modified in the **GO>Preferences>Waypoint Tolerance** value option.

To navigate to a different waypoint, turn the waypoint navigation tool off and then on again by tapping the Waypoint Navigation button. Select the new destination point and Discover Mobile will re-compute the distance and bearing from the current location to the new waypoint.

# Tracking Your Path

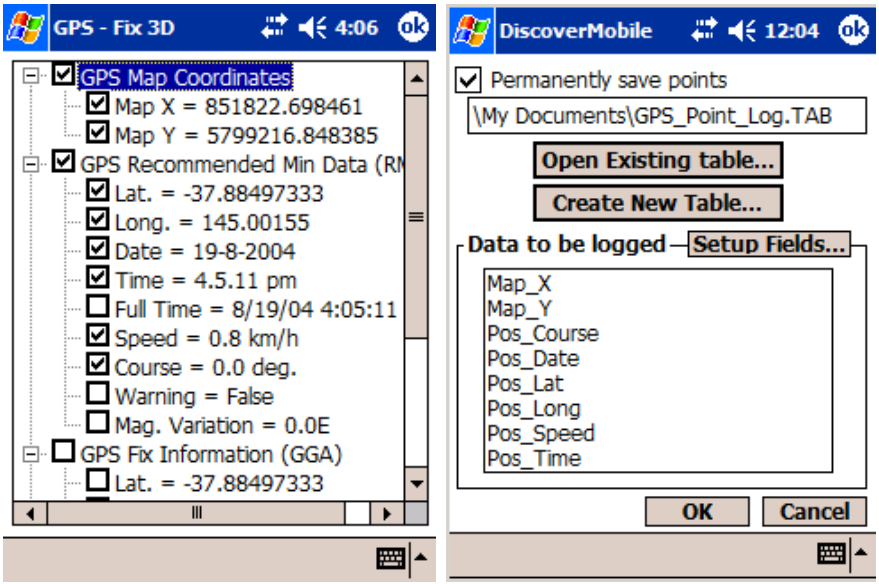

- *GPS Point Log*
- *GPS Line Log*


## GPS Point Log

Choose **GO>GPS>Point Log** to record a log of the travelled path as a series of points. The frequency at which the points will be collected is determined by the **GPS Connection Interval** and the **GPS Point Capture Tolerance Min** values (under the **GO>Preferences>GPS** menu). If a minimum tolerance value of 20m is set then the Point Track Log will only be updated with a new point when the distance between the last point and the new point exceeds the 20m minimum. This enables the user to remain stationary and take notes or enter data while the Track Log function is still running and not have a series of unnecessary points added to the log file.

Starting the GPS Point Track Log function for the first time in a Discover Mobile session, will prompt for a table name and location in which to save the data. Either a new table can be created, or a previously created Track Log table may be selected. By default the Point Track Log is saved to a `GPS_Point_Log.TAB` file in the `\My Documents` folder in main memory. This default can be accepted or a new name and file location can be specified.

The Point Track Log can also save any information available from the GPS receiver as attributes for each point in the log. The attribute data is automatically added to the appropriate column (or field) in the point track log table. A default set of common fields is automatically added when a new Point Track Log table is created. To change the fields or to add additional fields tap the Setup button.




*The Setup dialogs for the Point Track Log function. Any attribute fields listed in the Data to be logged list will be added to the Point Track Log table and will be automatically populated with data from the GPS. Use the Setup… button to change the list of fields to be logged.*

Within this dialog, the list of output fields can be customised. When finished, tap OK to create the table and start the Point Track Log function.

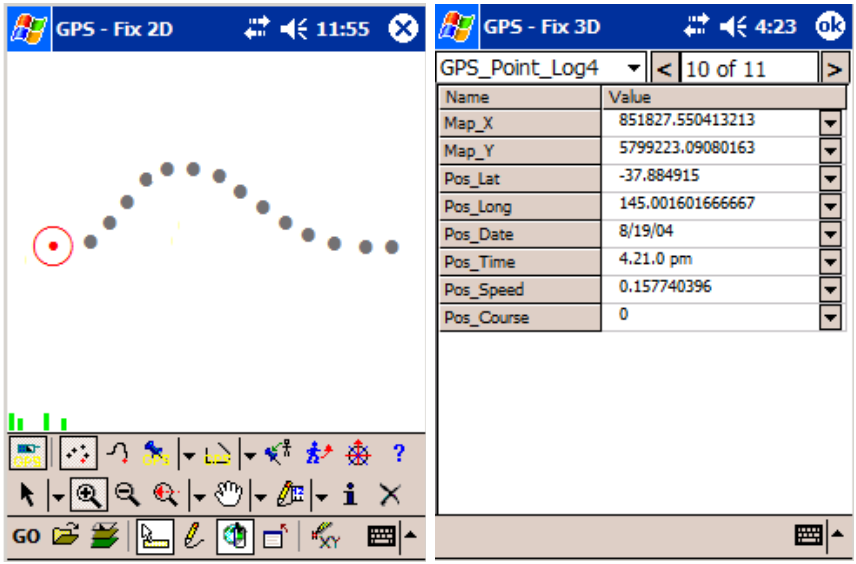
---

**Note**

Once a Point Track Log table is created, additional fields cannot be added to the table in Discover Mobile. Either add these fields on a PC using MapInfo Professional or to save a copy of the Point Track Log table and add the extra fields to the copied table.

---

To stop the Point Track Log tap the **Point Track Log** button on the toolbar to toggle it off. Turn it on again at any time by tapping the same button again. If an existing Point Track Log table is already open, a prompt will be displayed to either continue appending to the existing table or to create a new table.



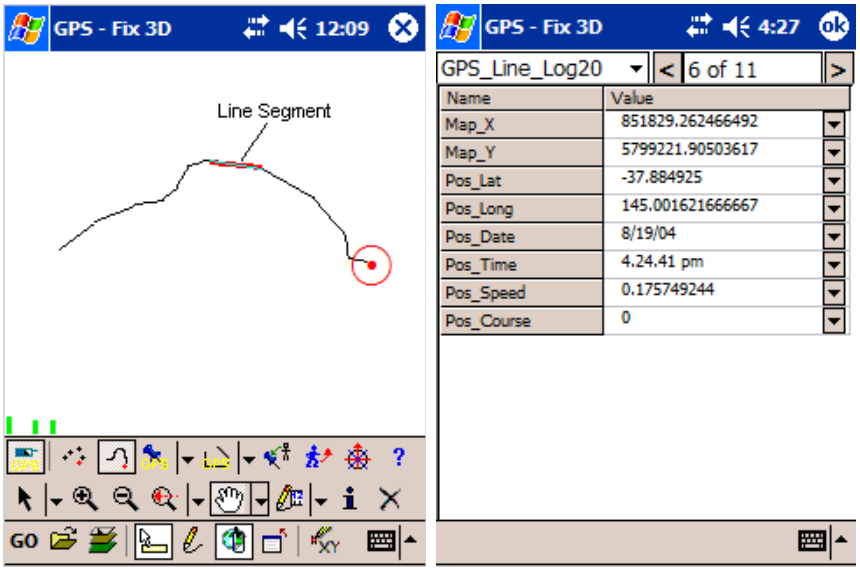

*Left image shows a Point Track Log with Current position (Red Circle) and a point log (grey circles) of path travelled. Right image shows the GPS attributes associated with one of the points*

## GPS Line Log

### GO>GPS>Line Log

Choose **GO>GPS>Line Log** to record a log of the travelled path as a series of line segments. The Line Track Log will look like a continuous line on the screen, however, it is actually made up of a series of line segments rather than one continuous line. This way, the GPS attribute information can be stored for each segment of the Line Track Log; any segment of the Line Log can therefore be queried to determine the GPS coordinates, time, date, speed etc of that segment.

See the GPS Point Track Log section above for setup and use of the GPS Line Track log.




*Left image shows a Line Track Log (black line) of path the travelled with Current position (Red circle) and a line segment selected point. Right image shows the GPS attributes associated with the selected line segment.*

## Working with Differential GPS (DGPS)

Differential GPS allows very accurate (sub-meter) positioning by calculating the current GPS error at a base station, and then applying this as a correction to the field data. Differential GPS therefore requires two receivers to operate simultaneously; field data is collected with a rover unit, whilst the other receiver is placed at a base station for which the position is accurately known.

The base station GPS position data is compared to it's known (surveyed) position, and a position error is calculated. Using this known error, a correction can then be applied to the field unit data to provide a more accurate field position. This correction can be applied either in real time (Real-time DGPS/RTK) via radio signal or after field work/data collection has been completed (Post-processed DGPS).

Post-processed DPGS only requires the user to have direct access to one receiver (the field/rover unit eg a Trimble Pro XRS or XT). The base station data is generally provided via a continuously-operating commercial reference station. This data is normally accessed via the internet based on the timeframe and location of the field data collection. Discover Mobile supports Postprocess DGPS work using the Trimble Protocol.

**Note** Desktop post-processing of field data requires installation of Discover 10.1 or later, as well as Trimble GPS Pathfinder Office 4.00 or later.

There are three distinct phases to DGPS usage:

1. *Configuring Discover Mobile for DGPS Work*.

2. *Field Data Collection* - The field rover DGPS unit generates a Trimble Rover SSF file, which is captured by Discover Mobile along with the MapInfo Professional TAB files containing the field data (geochemical samples, structural and geological mapping, etc).

3. *Post-processing*

    - **Rover SSF File Correction**: At the conclusion of data collection, the relevant (closest) reference base station is accessed via internet (or the data is accessed electronically), and the appropriate Trimble Base Station SSF file is acquired (with reference to the field data time stamp). The Base Station SSF file (which incorporates the base station's known position coordinates) is used to calculate a GPS-error correction. This correction is then applied to the Rover SSF file.

    - **Rover File Export**: the corrected SSF file is exported as a MapInfo Professional MIF file to allow field data correction

    - **Field data correction**: the field data TAB files are corrected using the corrected Rover SSF file (now a MIF file).

**Note** This section only details Discover Mobile setup/configuration and data correction for Post Processing DGPS with a Trimble DGPS unit; it does not cover setup/configuration for Real Time (RTK) DGPS.

## Configuring Discover Mobile for DGPS Work

The Discover Mobile Preferences screen (**GO>Preferences**) contains a number of options under the **GO>GPS>Connection** section integral to DGPS configuration and Rover file generation.

### GPS Protocol

Ensure that this option is set to **Trimble**.

### Setup

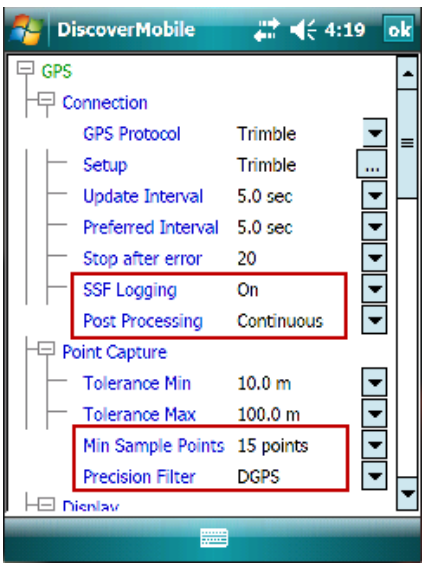
After assigning the GPS Protocol as Trimble, the Setup option should now indicate Trimble. Select the '…' button adjacent to this option to open the **General** tab of the **Trimble DGPS Configuration** dialog:

This screen allows the control of various parameters which affect the efficiency and precision of the DGPS position. These parameters are fully detailed in *Trimble Protocol*. When these parameters have been set, press OK to return to the main Preferences screen.

### SSF Logging

Set this option to **On** to create a Trimble SSF format Rover file with the same name as the file into which data is being captured.

This rover file is required to allow postprocessing differential correction to be carried out on captured data, but needs to be populated with one of the following options.




*Recommended settings for post-processed DGPS use (with carrier phase logging enabled)*

### Post Processing

This enables the enable the Carrier phase signal of the Trimble output to be logged. Utilizing this signal (in tandem with the default Code phase signal) will increase the accuracy of the post-processing correction; however it requires the user to be within 50 kilometres of the base station, and to maintain continuous Carrier phase lock for 10 minutes.

Three logging modes are available:

- **None**: no carrier phase data is logged. The data set will not be able to be post-processed.
- **Continuous**: carrier phase data is logged at 1 second intervals
- **Classic**: carrier phase data is logged at heat beat rate when not capturing an object location, and at the object logging rate when logging an object.

See *Carrier Phase Logging* for further information.

### Min Sample Points

This setting defines the number of point calculations required before a position is established. A position is calculated by averaging the specified number of point calculations; thus the higher this parameter is set, the longer it will take to generate a position, but the more precise the position will be. It is recommended to use a setting of 15 points.

### Precision Filter

Various quality levels of position fix can be output by DGPS receivers, depending on factors such as the number of satellites, the quality of the satellite signal (influenced by the amount of satellite coverage and overhead cover), the quality of radio reception (for Real-Time DGPS) and the parameters assigned in the Setup dialog. The quality of the current position fix is indicated at the bottom left of the map screen.

Discover Mobile allows a Precision Filter to be selected, which will display a warning when data capture is attempted with a fix quality lower than the set Precision Filter. These Filter levels are detailed below; select the DGPS filter for post-processed DGPS work.

- GPS - Any current position fix (GPS or DGPS) will be accepted
- DGPS - Requires a Differential GPS fix (Real-time or Post-processed)
- RTK LOW - Requires a low-quality Real-time Differential solution

- RTK HIGH - Requires a high-quality Real-time Differential solution

## Field Data Collection

- *Data Storage*
- *GPS Connection*
- *Carrier Phase Logging*

For information on capturing objects, see *Creating GPS-located Objects*.

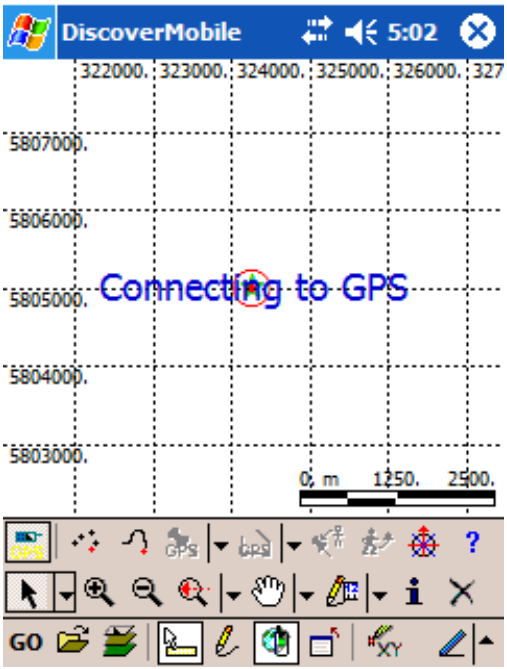
### Data Storage

It is strongly recommended that all field data (capture) tables are created and saved onto the memory card rather than main memory. This ensures that in the event of a flat battery or system crash, the collected data is not lost. A high speed memory card is recommended; low speed memory cards can significantly impact data handling and processing efficiency.

The Trimble SSF format Rover file created when the SSF Logging option is set to On (in Preferences) will also be saved to the same location as its parent file, with the same file name and a .SSF suffix.

### GPS Connection

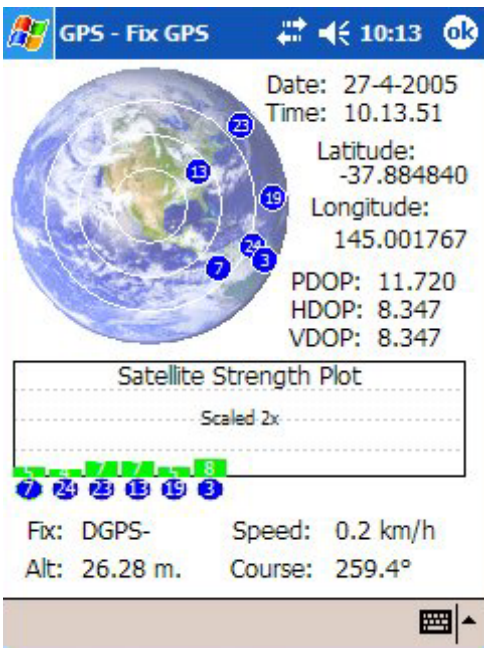
To connect to the DGPS, either select **GO>GPS>Connect**, or open the **GPS** toolbar by selecting the **GPS** button and then select the **Connect** button.




*The initial GPS connection screen; tap the screen once to refresh the display*

This will display a “Connecting to GPS” message; tap the screen once to refresh. Once connected a GPS Overlay (red target) will be placed on the screen with a “Waiting for GPS Time” message whist a position fix is acquired. This may take some time depending on the GPS preferences set, number of satellites available, amount of overhead cover (eg foliage) and the amount of sky visible (due to cliffs, buildings, etc). To monitor the current number of acquired satellites and their strength, select **GO>GPS>Monitor Satellite Status**.

*Initial display while DGPS unit acquires satellite feed*

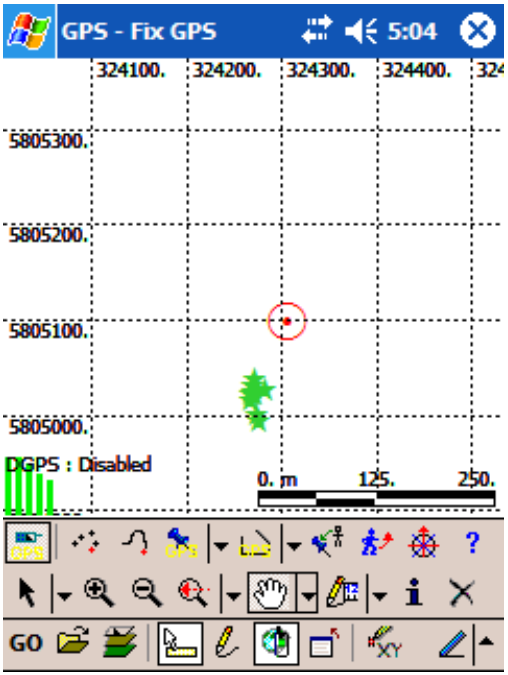



*Monitor Satellite Status screen*

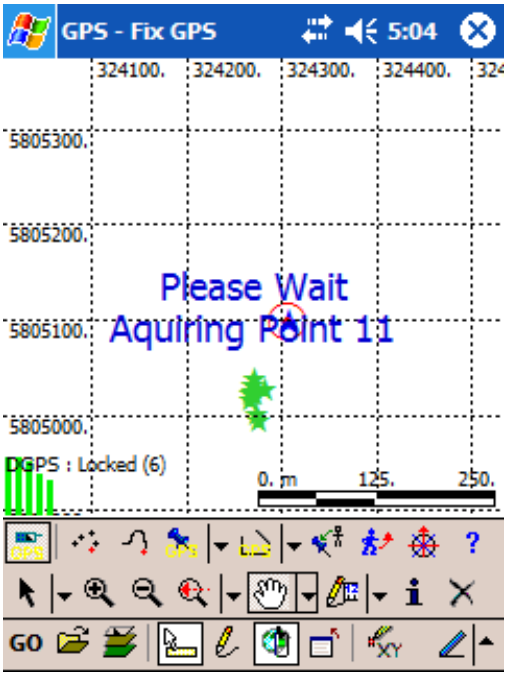
Once a position fix is calculated, the “Waiting for GPS Time” message will disappear, and the GPS Overlay will be positioned accordingly.

## Carrier Phase Logging

Once a position fix is calculated, the position quality status indicator (bottom left of the map screen) will be followed by a “Disabled” message if Carrier phase data logging is enabled (see the **GPS>Connection>Log Carrier** option under Trimble DGPS Configuration). This indicates that Carrier phase logging is yet to be initialized. Capturing a point (see below, Point Capture) will initialize Carrier phase logging, changing this status message to “Locked”, followed by the time in seconds (bracketed) since this locked status was acquired.

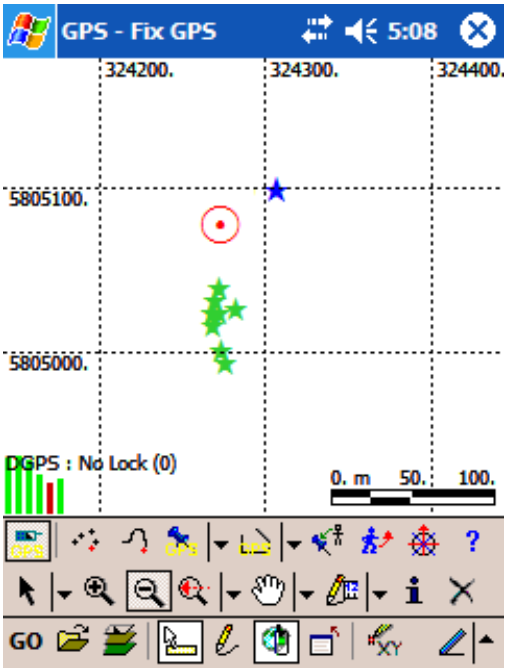



*Status message at the bottom left of screen indicates Carrier Lock is Disabled, awaiting initialization by point capture*




*Carrier Lock Initialization by point capture; the status message now displays “Locked” followed by the time in seconds since lock acquisition*

Use of the Carrier phase signal for post-processing requires the base station and rover unit to be within 50 kilometres of each other. Carrier wave data must also be continuously logged for a minimum of 10 minutes (600 seconds) for sufficient data to be acquired to allow high precision post-processing. During this time, data must be logged from the minimum number of satellites set in the Min Satellites option of the Setup dialog (4 or 5). If the number of satellites falls below this parameter, the “Carrier Lock” is broken; the “Locked” message will change to “No Lock”, with the timer reset to 0 seconds. Once the minimum time (10 minutes) has elapsed, all data captured within this period of Carrier Lock can be more precisely post-processed. If Carrier Lock is broken and the timer reset within 10 minutes of initialization, the carrier phase data captured may not be sufficient to ensure high precision post-processing for this block of data.

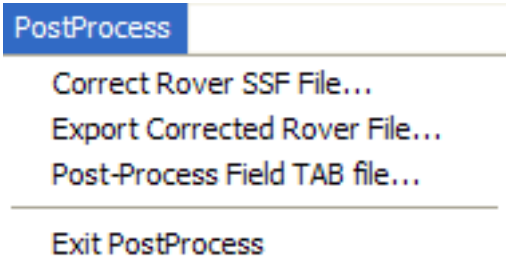



*"No Lock" Carrier status message indicates Carrier Lock has been lost; timer has been reset to 0*

Efficient logging of Carrier phase data therefore requires an uninterrupted view of the sky (no buildings or overhead cover) to ensure that Carrier Lock is maintained. It is recommended to not move to the next data capture location before the minimum time (10 minutes) unless the user is certain Carrier Lock will not be lost. Lowering some of the Setup parameters (eg Min SNR, Min Satellites, Max HDOP and PDOP and Min Elevation) will allow better maintenance/continuity of Carrier Lock, but with a loss of precision.

## Post-processing

Transfer the relevant field data files and their associated Rover SSF files from the PPC/PDA to the desktop. Run MapInfo Professional, and run the PostProcess.MBX (**Tools>Run MapBasic Program**, browse to the `C:\Program Files\Encom\Discover Mobile` folder [default location] and select this MBX). This will open the PostProcess menu (below).

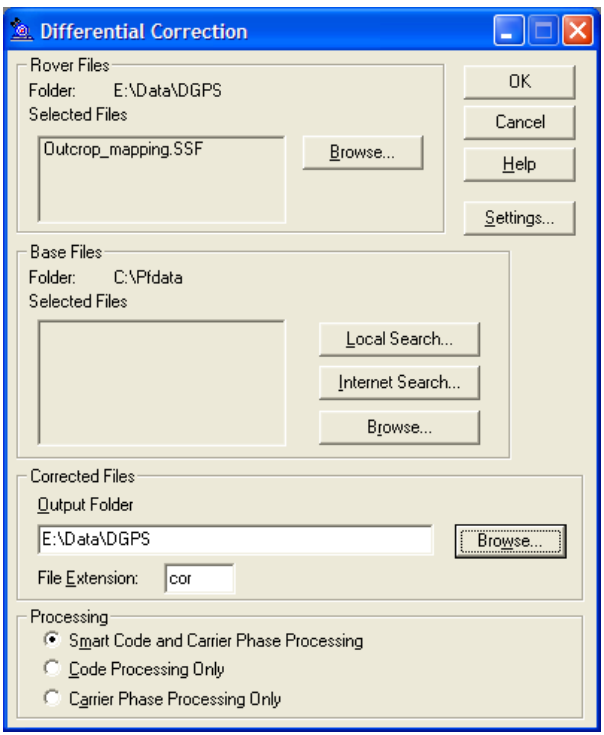



There are 3 steps involved in post-processed differential correction:

1. *Correct Rover SSF File*
2. *Export Corrected Rover file*
3. *Post-process Field Data File*

## Correct Rover SSF File

Select the **Correct Rover SSF File** option form the **PostProcess** menu. This will open the Differential Correction dialog:



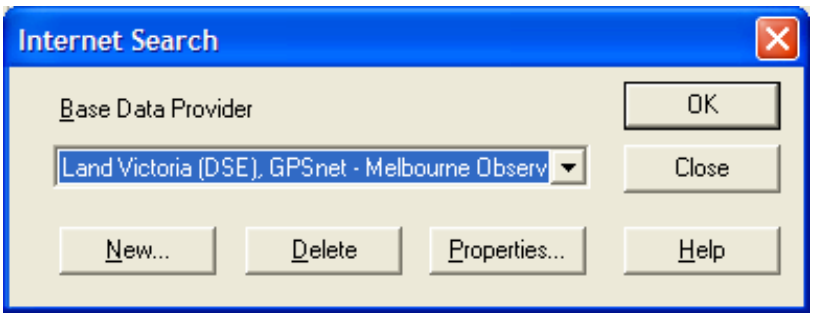

*Differential Correction dialog*

In the Rover Files section browse for the Rover SSF files that have been transferred from the PPC. Then select the relevant Base files via the Internet Search button.

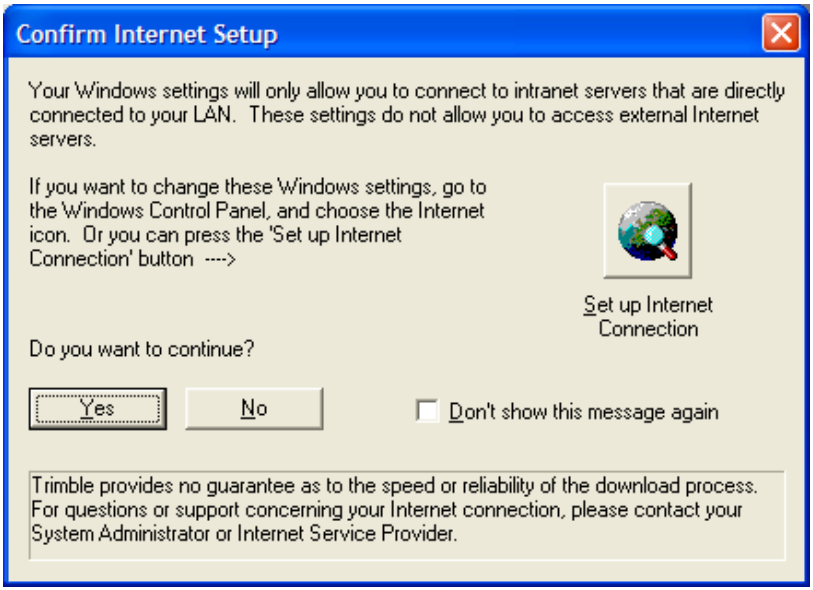
If this is the first time the Internet Search has been accessed, you will need to update the list of Internet base data providers. After this is complete, select the appropriate Base Data Provider from the drop down list.

A Confirm Internet Setup dialog will appear; press Yes to continue. In the following Select a Base Provider dialog, select the appropriate provider from the list. This will open the Provider Properties dialog: press OK to accept these settings.

The Internet Search dialog will appear; from now on this will dialog will appear directly after the Internet Search button has been pressed, as this utility has now been configured. Press OK to begin the search with the current settings.

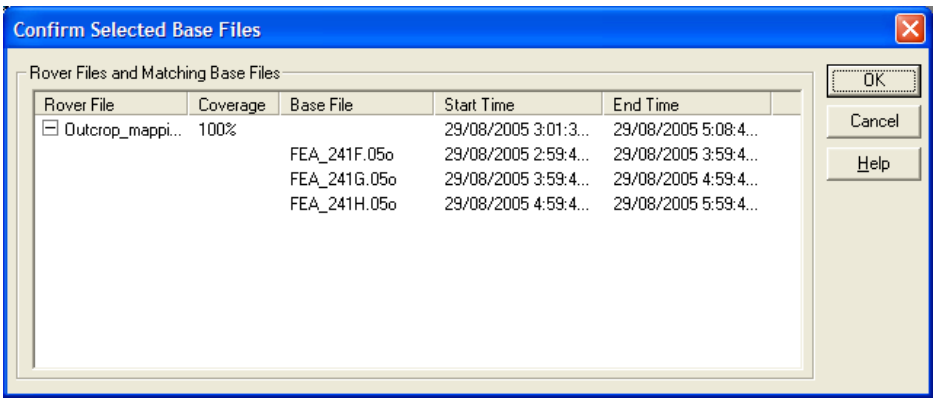



The Confirm Internet Setup dialog will again appear; press Yes to continue. The Copying files from Internet dialog will appear:




*Confirm Internet Setup dialog*

Followed by the Confirm Selected Base Files dialog:

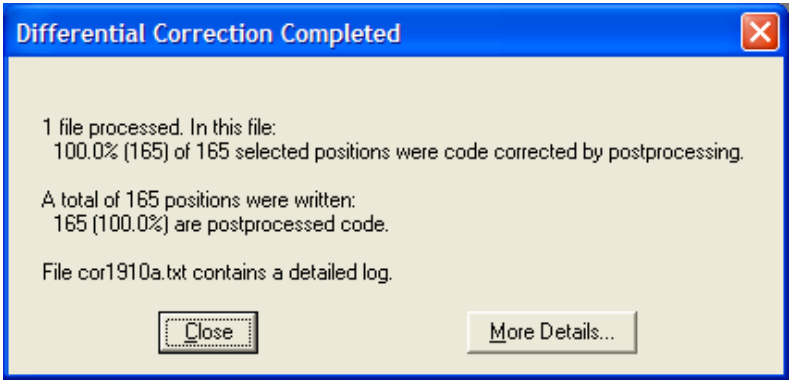



*Confirm Base files dialog*

This dialog details the temporal extents of the rover and matching downloaded base files. If a rover file is not fully covered by the base file(s), positions outside of the coverage will not be differentially corrected. Select OK to continue, or Cancel to back and reselect the base files.

Press OK to close the following Reference Position dialog (base files sourced from a public data source such as a Trimble Reference Station (TRS) or Community Base Station (CBS) will likely have an accurate reference position).

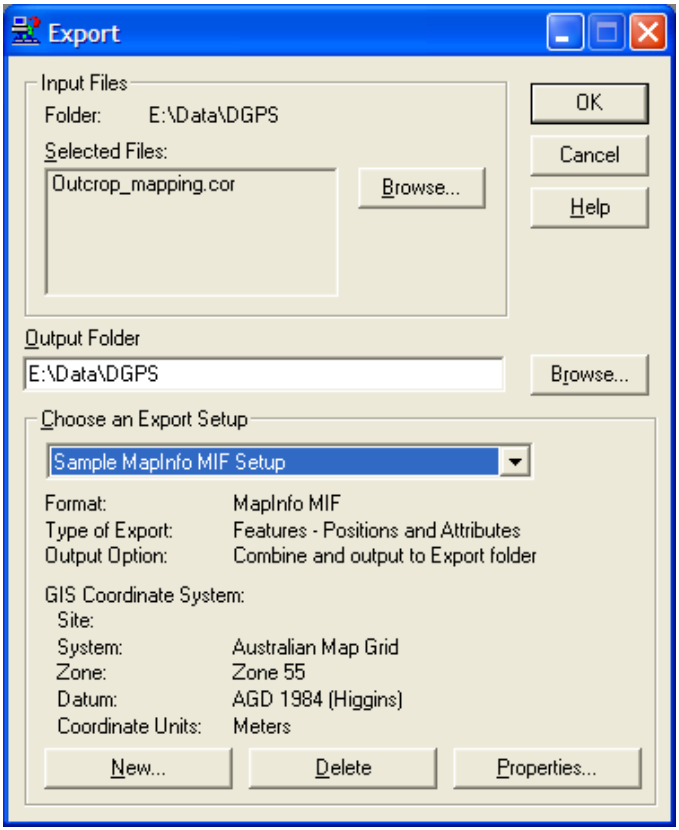
The Corrected Files group lets you specify the path and folder that the output files will be written to. The current path and folder is displayed beside the Output Folder button. Press OK to run the differential correction; once completed, a message similar to the following will appear.




*Differential Correction Completed dialog*

## Export Corrected Rover file

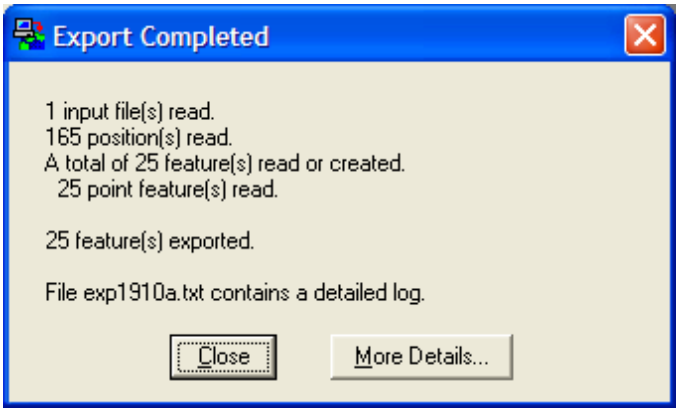
The corrected Rover SSF file requires export as a MapInfo Professional MIF file to be usable by MapInfo Professional. Run the Export utility by selecting the **PostProcess>Export Corrected Rover File**. By default the most recently used data files are selected as input files.




*Export Rover file dialog*

If necessary, Browse for the appropriate corrected Rover files, and specify the Output folder. Select the “Sample MapInfo Professional MIF Setup” option from the **Choose an Export Setup** pull-down list and press OK.

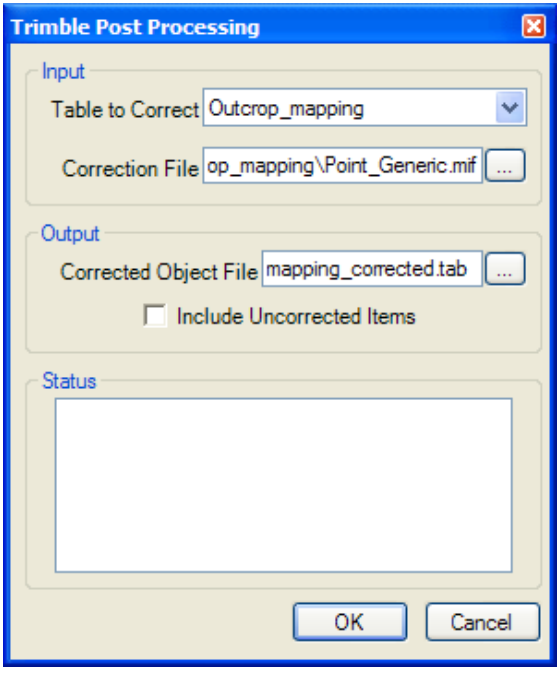
An Export progress dialog will appear, followed by an Export Completed dialog.




*Export Completed dialog*

## Post-process Field Data File

Open the field data TAB file in MapInfo Professional. Select the **PostProcess>Post-Process Field TAB file** menu option.




Select the field data TAB file in the **Table to Correct** pull-down list. Press the **Browse** button adjacent to the **Correction File** option to browse for the appropriate corrected Rover MIF file (as previously exported).

By default the corrected object file (post processed field data file) will be suffixed "_corrected" and created in the same directory as the field data. Use the '…' adjacent to the Corrected Object File option to change this if desired. Press OK to run the Post Processing utility.

Upon completion, the Status window will update with relevant information. If successful, the postprocessed field data file will be opened in a new map window.

**Note** For further information on any of these topics, please consult the detailed Trimble Help files built into the relevant utility. This guide draws extensively on these Help files.

# Appendices

Appendix A: *Discover Mobile Quick Reference Guide*

Appendix B: *Structural Symbols*

Appendix C: *Working with Portable XRF Devices*

Appendix D: *Digitizing and Data Entry in Discover*

# A Discover Mobile Quick Reference Guide

## Toolbars


- *Main Toolbar*
- *Select/View Toolbar*
- *Draw/Edit Toolbar*
- *GPS Toolbar*


### Main Toolbar

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | GO Button | Accesses menu system |
| | Open | Open .TAB or .GST or .TIF files |
| | Layer Control | Control display and properties of objects in map view |
| | Select/View | Shows/Hides Select/View toolbar |
| | Draw/Edit | Shows/Hides Draw/Edit toolbar |
| | GPS | Shows/Hides GPS toolbar |
| | Status Window | Shows/Hides Status Window |
| | XY | Shows map coordinates at location of stylus tap |
|  | Keyboard | Selects input method for alphanumeric data entry |

## Select/View Toolbar

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Point Selection | Select a single object or item. |
| | Radius selection | Selects objects within a controllable radius |
| | Rectangular selection | Selects objects within a rectangular area |
| | Polygonal selection | Select objects within an polygonal area. |
| | Zoom-In | Zooms in on current view by a factor of 2x |
| | Zoom-Out | Zooms out on current view by a factor of 1/2x |
| | Previous Zoom | Restores previous view history |
| | Other functions available via the Previous Zoom tool: | |
| | Save View | Saves the current view properties |
| | Delete | Deletes a saved view from the display list. |
| | View Zoom Level | Adjust map zoom level by Screen Width or Map Scale |
| | View Entire Layer | Redraws the map to show full extents for a layer |
| | Pan | Move the view around the map display area |
| | Center | Centers the view where the stylus is tapped |
| | Distance Measurement | Measures the distance along a freehand polyline |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Polyline Measurement | Measures the straight-line distance between points in a polyline |
| | Information | Displays attribute information for an object |
| | Hotlink | Open hotlinked image from target map object |
| | Delete | Deletes all selected objects |

## Draw/Edit Toolbar

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Symbol | Used to place symbols in the insertion layer |
| | Structure Symbol | Used to place structure symbols in the insertion layer |
| | Line | Used to draw straight lines in the insertion layer |
| | Polyline | Used to draw polylines in the insertion layer |
| | Freehand Polyline | Used to draw freehand polylines in the insertion layer |
| | Polygon | Used to draw polygons in the insertion layer |
| | Freehand Polygon | Used to draw freehand polygons in the insertion layer |
| | Add Label | Labels selected objects in the annotation layer |
| | Add Annotation | Used to place additional text in the annotation layer |
| | Vertex Edit | Select and control vertices of polylines and polygons |
| | Add Vertex | Used to add additional vertices to polylines and polygons |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| | Object Style | Modify display properties of selected objects |

## GPS Toolbar

| | | |
|---|---|---|
|  | GPS Connect | Connect/Disconnect the GPS port |
| | Point Track Log | Turn point log tracking on/off |
| | Line Track Log | Turns line log tracking on/off |
| | Point Capture | Captures a single point from GPS to selected map layer |
| | Structure Symbol | Captures a structural measurement from GPS to selected map layer |
| | Insert Node | Used to add nodes to GPS polygons and lines while in pause mode |
| | GPS Polyline Capture | Create polylines from GPS coordinates |
| | GPS Polygon Capture | Create polygons from GPS coordinates |
| | GPS Pause | Pause polyline or polygon capture without terminating object |
| | Waypoint Navigation | Reports distance and bearing to a selected point from current position |
| | Auto Rotate Map | Rotates the map so that the top of screen is the direction of travel |
| | GPS Display Settings | Configures GPS display options for floating Status Window |

# Preference Settings

| Preference | Option | Description |
|---|---|---|
| **Connection** | **GPS Protocol** | Sets the GPS Protocol as either NMEA or Trimble |
| | **Setup** | GPS configuration/connection options dependent on assigned protocol |
| | **Update Interval** | Minimum communication speed with GPS |
| | **Preferred Interval** | Sets preferred communication speed with GPS - may vary depending on Map redraw speed |
| | **Stop after error** | Number of consecutive bad data readings before GPS connection is disconnected |
| | **SSF Logging** | Enables recording of an Trimble SSF rover file for DGPS post-processing |
| | **Post Processing** | Enables the capture of Carrier phase data for high-precision DGPS, either in Continuous or Classic modes. |
| **Point Capture** | **Tolerance Min** | Sets the minimum distance between GPS data points |
| | **Tolerance Max** | Sets the maximum distance between GPS data points |
| | **Min Sample points** | Specifies the minimum number of sample points to be used to calculate the DGPS position |
| | **Precision Filter** | Assign a precision filter, displaying a warning if an object is captured using a low-quality fix |
| **Display** | **Re-Center GPS** | Configures options for re-centering the map when using GPS |
| | **Altitude in** | Sets units of measure for GPS altitude |
| | **Speed in** | Sets units of measure for GPS Speed |
| | **Default Scale 1:** | Sets the default map window scale |
| | **GPS Position Style** | Sets default GPS position symbol |
| **Map Rotation** | **Deg. Tolerance** | Sets minimum angular deviation in course required to cause the map to rotate |

| Preference | Option | Description (Continued) |
|---|---|---|
| | **Speed Tolerance** | Sets minimum speed below which the Auto Rotate function will be suspended |
| | **When Off** | Sets behaviour for map window when Auto Rotate function is deactivated |
| **Object Creation** | **Edit Attributes** | Specify data entry options when attributing new objects |
| | **Named Styles** | Specify object style options when creating new object |
| | **Point XY Editing** | Specify coordinate/position options when capturing new objects |
| **Session** | **Autoload last** | Sets quick-start workspace settings |
| | **Map Projection** | Configures map projection settings (GPS capture projection, map grid) |
| | **User Projection** | Selects a preferred map projection to be used if User Projection is selected above |
| | **Distance in** | Sets preferred units for distance measurements (eg scalebar) |
| | **Area in** | Sets preferred units for area measurements |
| | **Grid Overlay** | Configures map grid overlay |
| | **Waypoint Tolerance** | Defines minimum distance for waypoint navigation |
| **System Settings** | **Busy Cursor** | Turns On/Off the system busy cursor |
| | **Font Size** | Sets the default fonts size for the Status window |
| | **Confirm Deletion** | Controls confirmation options when deleting objects |
| | **Hardware Buttons** | Setup options for PPC device hardware buttons |
| | **Alert Configuration** | Setup alert sounds or warning messages |
| **Directories** | **Project Root** | Select directory to save all Discover Mobile data |
| | **Current Project** | Select folder in Project Root to save all Discover Mobile data |
| | **Set Individually** | If required default Project Root and Current project Folders can be overwritten |

| Preference | Option | Description (Continued) |
|---|---|---|
| | **Track Log** | Select directory to save Track Log files |
| | **Pick Lists** | Select directory to save Pick List files |
| | **Named Styles** | Select directory to save Named Style files |
| | **Hotlink Files** | Select directory to save Hotlink files |
| | **New Tables** | Select directory to save New Table files |
| | **Image Files** | Select directory where in-built PPC camera stores image files |

# B Structural Symbols

The Structural True Type symbol fonts should be installed onto your system via the **Fonts** folder in **Control Panel**. They are then available for use with any software that uses True Type fonts, including MapInfo, Corel Draw and MS Word.


- *Structural Symbols Ordered by Discover Code*
- *Structure Symbols Ordered by Name*


The symbols may be referred to in one of a number of ways:

- **Name** - Used with the Discover Structure Symbols>Create Structure Symbols menu option when placing individual structural symbols. There are three separate structural symbol fonts that are available.
  - **Australian** – ET Structural Australia
  - **Canadian** – ET Structural Canada
  - **USA** – ET Structural USA
- **ASCII** - The ASCII character code.
- **Discover Code** - Used when entering data into a spreadsheet for display with the Discover Structural Data Map Window.

## Structural Symbols Ordered by Discover Code

| Name | Discover Code | ASCII Code | Australia | Canada | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bedding | 1 | 33 |  |  |  |
| Bedding Horizontal | 1 | 34 | | | |
| Bedding Vertical | 1 | 35 | | | |
| Bedding Overturned | 2 | 36 | | | |
| Bedding Overturned Horizontal | 2 | 37 | | | |
| Bedding Facing | 3 | 38 |  |  |  |

| Name | Discover Code | ASCII Code | Australia | Canada | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Bedding Facing Vertical | 3 | 39 | | | |
| Cleavage (S1) | 4 | 41 |  |  |  |
| Cleavage (S1) Vertical | 4 | 42 | |  | |
| Cleavage (S1) Horizontal | 4 | 43 | | | |
| Cleavage (S2) | 5 | 44 |  |  |  |
| Cleavage (S2) Vertical | 5 | 45 | | | |
| Cleavage (S2) Horizontal | 5 | 46 | | | |
| Cleavage (S3) | 6 | 47 |  |  |  |
| Cleavage (S3) Vertical | 6 | 48 | | | |
| Cleavage (S3) Horizontal | 6 | 49 | | | |
| Younging | 7 | 132 | | | |
| Lineation | 8 | 50 |  |  |  |
| Lineation Vertical | 8 | 51 | |  | |
| Lineation Horizontal | 8 | 52 |  |  |  |
| Lineation (L1) | 9 | 53 | |  | |
| Lineation (L2) | 10 | 54 | |  | |
| Lineation (L3) | 11 | 55 |  |  | |
| Bedding-Cleavage | 12 | 56 | | | |
| Bedding-Cleavage Horizontal | 12 | 57 |  |  |  |
| Crenulation | 13 | 58 | |  | |

| Name | Discover Code | ASCII Code | Australia | Canada | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Crenulation Horizontal | 13 | 59 |  |  |  |
| Mineral Alignment | 14 | 60 | |  | |
| Mineral Alignment Horizontal | 14 | 61 |  |  |  |
| Banding/Platy Alignment | 15 | 62 |  |  |  |
| Banding/Platy Alignment Vertical | 15 | 63 | | | |
| Banding/Platy Alignment Horizontal | 15 | 64 | | | |
| Joint | 16 | 65 |  |  |  |
| Joint Vertical | 16 | 66 | |  | |
| Joint Horizontal | 16 | 67 | | | |
| Foliation | 17 | 68 |  |  |  |
| Foliation Vertical | 17 | 69 | | | |
| Foliation Horizontal | 17 | 70 | | | |
| Anticline (F1) | 18 | 80 | | | |
| Anticline (F1) Horizontal | 18 | 81 | | | |
| Anticline (F2) | 19 | 82 | | | |
| Anticline (F2) Horizontal | 19 | 83 | | | |
| Anticline (F3) | 20 | 84 |  |  |  |
| Anticline (F3) Horizontal | 20 | 85 |  |  |  |
| Anticline Overturned | 21 | 86 |  |  |  |
| Anticline Recumbent | 22 | 87 |  |  |  |

| Name | Discover Code | ASCII Code | Australia | Canada | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Syncline (F1) | 23 | 90 | | | |
| Syncline (F1) Horizontal | 23 | 91 | | | |
| Syncline (F2) | 24 | 92 | | | |
| Syncline (F2) Horizontal | 24 | 93 | | | |
| Syncline (F3) | 25 | 94 | | | |
| Syncline (F3) Horizontal | 25 | 95 | | | |
| Syncline Overturned | 26 | 96 | | | |
| Syncline Recumbent | 27 | 97 | | | |
| Normal Fault | 28 | 101 |  |  |  |
| Normal Fault-Low Angle | 29 | 102 |  |  |  |
| Normal Fault-High Angle | 30 | 103 |  | |  |
| Thrust Fault | 31 | 104 |  |  |  |
| Shear Zone | 32 | 105 | | | |
| Shear Zone-Wide | 33 | 106 | | | |
| Fault Zone Breccia | 34 | 107 | | | |
| Trend Line | 35 | 108 |  |  |  |
| Parallel Lines | 36 | 109 |  |  |  |
| Vein/Dyke No Dip | 37 | 110 |  |  |  |
| Vein/Sill No Dip | 38 | 111 |  |  |  |
| Vein/Dyke With Dip | 37 | 112 |  |  |  |

| Name | Discover Code | ASCII Code | Australia | Canada | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Vein/Sill With Dip | 38 | 113 |  |  |  |
| Oriented Drill Collar 1 | 39 | 121 |  | |  |
| Oriented Drill Collar 2 | 40 | 122 | | | |
| Oriented Drill Collar 3 | 41 | 123 | | | |
| Dipping Fault Gouge | 42 | 115 | | | |
| Sinistral Fault Wrench | 43 | 99 | | | |
| Dextral Fault Wrench | 44 | 100 | | | |
| Columnar Joint | 45 | 71 | | | |
| Bedding Facing Unknown | 46 | 130 |  |  |  |
| Bedding Facing Unknown Vertical | 46 | 131 | | | |
| Undulating Bedding Dip | 47 | 133 |  |  |  |
| Deformed Bedding Dip | 48 | 134 |  |  |  |
| Foliation D1 | 49 | 163 | | | |
| Foliation D2 | 50 | 164 | | | |
| Foliation D3 | 51 | 165 | | | |
| Bedding/Cleavage (S1) Parallel | 52 | 72 |  |  |  |
| Bedding/Cleavage (S2) Parallel | 53 | 73 |  |  |  |
| Bedding/Cleavage (S3) Parallel | 54 | 74 |  |  |  |
| Plunge Bedding/Cleavage (S2) Intersection | 55 | 75 |  |  |  |

| Name | Discover Code | ASCII Code | Australia | Canada | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Plunge Bedding/Cleavage (S3) Intersection | 56 | 76 |  |  |  |
| Plunge Bedding/Vein Intersection | 57 | 77 |  |  |  |
| Monocline | 58 | 79 | | | |
| Minor Anticline | 59 | 140 | | | |
| Minor Anticline And Plunge | 60 | 141 | | | |
| Minor Syncline | 61 | 142 | | | |
| Minor Syncline And Plunge | 62 | 143 | | | |
| Minor Fold With Dip | 63 | 144 | | | |
| Minor Fold With Plunge | 64 | 145 | | | |
| Kink Fold With Plunge | 65 | 146 | | | |
| Asymmetric Fold Verge Left | 66 | 147 | | | |
| Asymmetric Fold Verge Right | 67 | 148 | | | |
| Fold Verge Left | 68 | 149 | | | |
| Fold Verge Right | 69 | 150 | | | |
| Recumbent Fold Verge Left | 70 | 151 | | | |
| Recumbent Fold Verge Right | 71 | 152 | | | |
| Minor Fold S Vergence | 72 | 153 |  |  |  |
| Minor Fold Z Vergence | 73 | 154 |  |  |  |
| Minor Fold M Vergence | 74 | 155 |  |  |  |
| Boudin Plunge | 75 | 156 |  |  |  |

| Name | Discover Code | ASCII Code | Australia | Canada | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Chert Contortion Plunge | 76 | 157 |  |  |  |
| Mylonitic Foliation | 77 | 158 | | | |
| Mylonitic Foliation Vertical | 77 | 159 | | | |
| Eutaxitic Foliation | 78 | 161 | | | |
| Eutaxitic Foliation Vertical | 78 | 162 | | | |
| Glacial Striae-Sense Known | 79 | 116 | | | |
| Glacial Striae-Sense Unknown | 80 | 117 | | | |
| Dipping Shear Zone | 81 | 114 | | | |
| Bedding Facing Overturned | 82 | 40 | | | |

## Structure Symbols Ordered by Name

| Name | Discover Code | ASCII Code | Australia | Canada | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Anticline (F1) | 18 | 80 | | | |
| Anticline (F1) Horizontal | 18 | 81 | | | |
| Anticline (F2) | 19 | 82 | | | |
| Anticline (F2) Horizontal | 19 | 83 | | | |
| Anticline (F3) | 20 | 84 | | | |
| Anticline (F3) Horizontal | 20 | 85 | | | |
| Anticline Overturned | 21 | 86 | | | |
| Anticline Recumbent | 22 | 87 | | | |

| Name | Discover Code | ASCII Code | Australia | Canada | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Asymmetric Fold Verge Left | 66 | 147 | | | |
| Asymmetric Fold Verge Right | 67 | 148 | | | |
| Banding/Platy Alignment | 15 | 62 |  |  |  |
| Banding/Platy Alignment Horizontal | 15 | 64 | | | |
| Banding/Platy Alignment Vertical | 15 | 63 |  |  |  |
| Bedding | 1 | 33 |  |  |  |
| Bedding Facing | 3 | 38 |  |  |  |
| Bedding Facing  Overturned | 82 | 40 | | | |
| Bedding Facing Unknown | 46 | 130 |  |  |  |
| Bedding Facing Unknown Vertical | 46 | 131 |  |  |  |
| Bedding Facing Vertical | 3 | 39 |  |  |  |
| Bedding Horizontal | 1 | 34 | | | |
| Bedding Overturned | 2 | 36 | | | |
| Bedding Overturned Horizontal | 2 | 37 | | | |
| Bedding Vertical | 1 | 35 |  |  |  |
| Bedding-Cleavage | 12 | 56 | | | |
| Bedding-Cleavage Horizontal | 12 | 57 |  |  |  |
| Bedding/Cleavage (S1) Parallel | 52 | 72 |  |  |  |
| Bedding/Cleavage (S2) Parallel | 53 | 73 |  |  |  |
| Bedding/Cleavage (S3) Parallel | 54 | 74 |  |  |  |

| Name | Discover Code | ASCII Code | Australia | Canada | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Boudin Plunge | 75 | 156 |  |  |  |
| Chert Contortion Plunge | 76 | 157 |  |  |  |
| Cleavage (S1) | 4 | 41 |  |  |  |
| Cleavage (S1) Horizontal | 4 | 43 | | | |
| Cleavage (S1) Vertical | 4 | 42 | | | |
| Cleavage (S2) | 5 | 44 |  |  |  |
| Cleavage (S2) Horizontal | 5 | 46 | | | |
| Cleavage (S2) Vertical | 5 | 45 | | | |
| Cleavage (S3) | 6 | 47 |  |  |  |
| Cleavage (S3) Horizontal | 6 | 49 | | | |
| Cleavage (S3) Vertical | 6 | 48 | | | |
| Columnar Joint | 45 | 71 | | | |
| Crenulation | 13 | 58 | | |  |
| Crenulation Horizontal | 13 | 59 |  |  |  |
| Deformed Bedding Dip | 48 | 134 |  |  |  |
| Dextral Fault Wrench | 44 | 100 | | | |
| Dipping Fault Gouge | 42 | 115 | | | |
| Dipping Shear Zone | 81 | 114 | | | |
| Eutaxitic Foliation | 78 | 161 | | | |
| Eutaxitic Foliation Vertical | 78 | 162 | | | |

| Name | Discover Code | ASCII Code | Australia | Canada | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Fault Zone Breccia | 34 | 107 | | | |
| Fold Verge Left | 68 | 149 | | | |
| Fold Verge Right | 69 | 150 | | | |
| Foliation | 17 | 68 |  |  |  |
| Foliation D1 | 49 | 163 |  |  |  |
| Foliation D2 | 50 | 164 |  |  |  |
| Foliation D3 | 51 | 165 |  |  |  |
| Foliation Horizontal | 17 | 70 | | | |
| Foliation Vertical | 17 | 69 | |  | |
| Glacial Striae-Sense Known | 79 | 116 | | | |
| Glacial Striae-Sense Unknown | 80 | 117 | | | |
| Joint | 16 | 65 |  |  |  |
| Joint Horizontal | 16 | 67 | | | |
| Joint Vertical | 16 | 66 |  |  |  |
| Kink Fold With Plunge | 65 | 146 | | | |
| Lineation | 8 | 50 |  |  |  |
| Lineation (L1) | 9 | 53 | |  | |
| Lineation (L2) | 10 | 54 | |  | |
| Lineation (L3) | 11 | 55 |  |  | |
| Lineation Horizontal | 8 | 52 |  |  |  |

| Name | Discover Code | ASCII Code | Australia | Canada | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Lineation Vertical | 8 | 51 | | | |
| Mineral Alignment | 14 | 60 | |  | |
| Mineral Alignment Horizontal | 14 | 61 |  |  |  |
| Minor Anticline | 59 | 140 | | | |
| Minor Anticline And Plunge | 60 | 141 | | | |
| Minor Fold M Vergence | 74 | 155 |  |  |  |
| Minor Fold S Vergence | 72 | 153 |  |  |  |
| Minor Fold With Dip | 63 | 144 | | | |
| Minor Fold With Plunge | 64 | 145 | | | |
| Minor Fold Z Vergence | 73 | 154 |  |  |  |
| Minor Syncline | 61 | 142 | | | |
| Minor Syncline And Plunge | 62 | 143 | | | |
| Monocline | 58 | 79 | | | |
| Mylonitic Foliation | 77 | 158 | | | |
| Mylonitic Foliation Vertical | 77 | 159 | | | |
| Normal Fault | 28 | 101 |  |  |  |
| Normal Fault-High Angle | 30 | 103 |  | |  |
| Normal Fault-Low Angle | 29 | 102 |  | |  |
| Oriented Drill Collar 1 | 39 | 121 |  | |  |
| Oriented Drill Collar 2 | 40 | 122 | | | |

| Name | Discover Code | ASCII Code | Australia | Canada | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Oriented Drill Collar 3 | 41 | 123 | | | |
| Parallel Lines | 36 | 109 |  |  |  |
| Plunge Bedding/Cleavage (S2) Intersection | 55 | 75 |  |  |  |
| Plunge Bedding/Cleavage (S3) Intersection | 56 | 76 |  |  |  |
| Plunge Bedding/Vein Intersection | 57 | 77 |  |  |  |
| Recumbent Fold Verge Left | 70 | 151 | | | |
| Recumbent Fold Verge Right | 71 | 152 | | | |
| Shear Zone | 32 | 105 | | | |
| Shear Zone-Wide | 33 | 106 | | | |
| Sinistral Fault Wrench | 43 | 99 | | | |
| Syncline (F1) | 23 | 90 | | | |
| Syncline (F1) Horizontal | 23 | 91 | | | |
| Syncline (F2) | 24 | 92 | | | |
| Syncline (F2) Horizontal | 24 | 93 | | | |
| Syncline (F3) | 25 | 94 | | | |
| Syncline (F3) Horizontal | 25 | 95 | | | |
| Syncline Overturned | 26 | 96 | | | |
| Syncline Recumbent | 27 | 97 | | | |
| Thrust Fault | 31 | 104 |  |  |  |

| Name | Discover Code | ASCII Code | Australia | Canada | USA |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Trend Line | 35 | 108 |  |  |  |
| Undulating Bedding Dip | 47 | 133 |  |  |  |
| Vein/Dyke No Dip | 37 | 110 |  |  |  |
| Vein/Dyke With Dip | 37 | 112 |  |  |  |
| Vein/Sill No Dip | 38 | 111 |  |  |  |
| Vein/Sill With Dip | 38 | 113 |  |  |  |
| Younging | 7 | 132 |  |  |  |

# C Working with Portable XRF Devices

Discover Mobile provides the ability to link directly to both Olympus Innov-X and Niton field-portable XRF (X-Ray Fluorescence) devices, allowing real-time field geochemical analysis to be captured, displayed and analyzed directly in your mobile GIS environment.

This section details the steps required to enable Discover Mobile to connect to and capture portable XRF data:

- *Setting Up the Bluetooth Connection to an XRF Device*
- *Connecting to the GPS Receiver*
- *Connecting and Configuring Discover Mobile and the XRF device*
- *Capturing XRF Data*

*Photo courtesy of Olympus Innov-X*

# Setting Up the Bluetooth Connection to an XRF Device


- *Connecting a Niton XRF device with the PPC on Windows Mobile 5 or 6*
- *Connecting an Olympus Innov-X XRF device with the PPC on Windows Mobile 2003*


## Connecting a Niton XRF device with the PPC on Windows Mobile 5 or 6

1. On the PPC, select the **Menu>Bluetooth Settings** option, and then enable the **Turn on Bluetooth** and **Make this device visible to other devices** options.

2. Start the Niton XRF device and log in.

3. On the PPC, select the **Menu>Bluetooth Settings** option again.

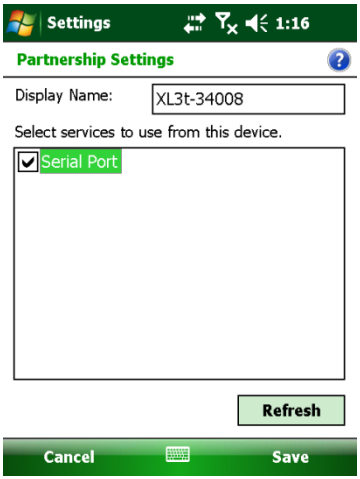
4. If the Niton device is not visible in the **Device** tab, select the **Add New Device** option, and select the Niton device once the device list is populated. Press **Next**.

5. Leave the **Passcode** empty and press **Next**.

6. The Niton device will now request connection with the PPC. Press **Yes**, enter the Niton Passcode “0000”, and then press **Done**.

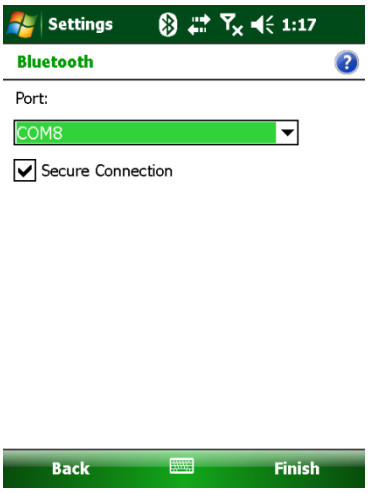
*Entering the XRF password to open the Bluetooth connection*

7. Back in the **Device** tab, select the Niton device and in the **Partnership Settings** dialog, enable the **Serial Port** option and press **Save**. If the **Serial Port** option is not displayed in the **Services** list, press **Refresh**.



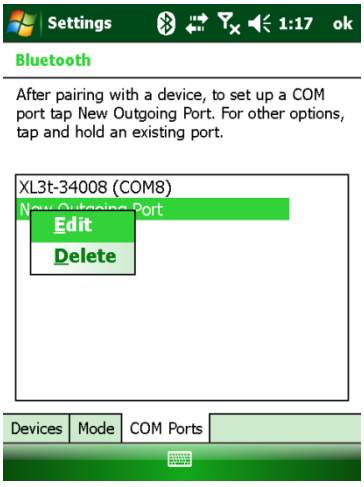

*Enabling the Serial Port service*

8. In the **COM Ports** tab, select **New Outgoing Port**, then select the Niton Device and press **Next**. Set the Port to “COM8” and press **Finish**.

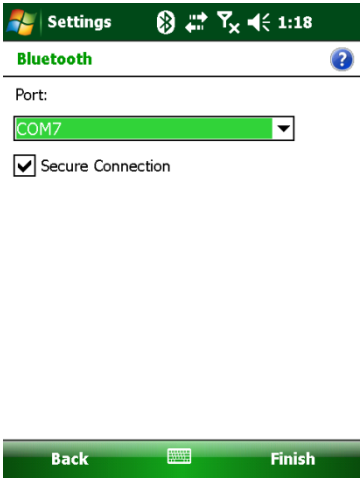



*Configuring the Outgoing Port*

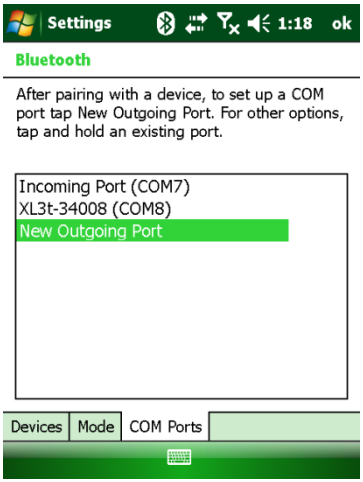
9. Gently select the Niton entry (but don’t proceed to the next dialog). Then select and hold down on the **New Outgoing Port** option, and choose **Edit**. Set “Port 7” and press **Finish**. A new Incoming Port (COM 7) will be created. Press **OK**.




*Creating and configuring a New Incoming Port 1) Hold down and press on the New Outgoing Port option, and select the Edit option from the pop-up menu.*




*Creating and configuring a New Incoming Port 2) Set COM port 7.*




*Creating and configuring a New Incoming Port 3) The final port configuration.*

10. On the Niton device, go to **System>Bluetooth** and press the **Search** option.

11. Highlight the PPC device name from the list, press the **Config** button, and set the **Type** to “GIS”. Press **Save**.

12. Select the PPC device name from the list, and press **Connect**.

13. On the PPC, enter the Niton Passcode “0000” when prompted, and press **Done**.

## Connecting an Olympus Innov-X XRF device with the PPC on Windows Mobile 2003

Follow these steps to set up the Bluetooth connection between the PPC and an Olympus Innov-X XRF device:

1. Switch on the XRF device and ensure that the Bluetooth Wireless Radio is switched on.

2. Switch on the PPC and ensure that the PPC Bluetooth Wireless Radio is switched on.

3. Pair the Olympus Innov-X XRF with the PPC (see *Pairing an Olympus Innov-X XRF device with the PPC*).

4. Check the serial port settings on the PPC (see *Configuring the Serial Port on the PPC*).

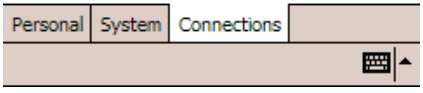
5. Pair the PPC with the Olympus Innov-X XRF (see *Pairing the PPC with the Olympus Innov-X XRF*)

### Pairing an Olympus Innov-X XRF device with the PPC

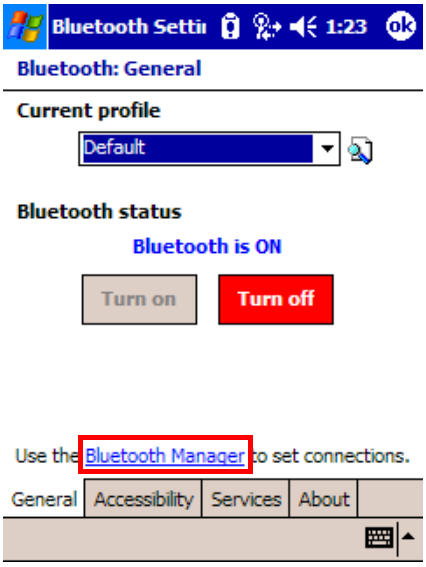
Start the PPC. The Windows Mobile Today Screen is displayed.

1. Tap the **Start** button and select **Settings**.

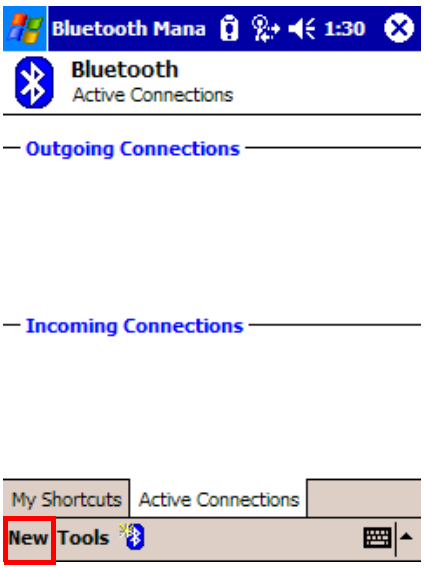
2. Tap the **Connections** tab and select the **Bluetooth** icon.



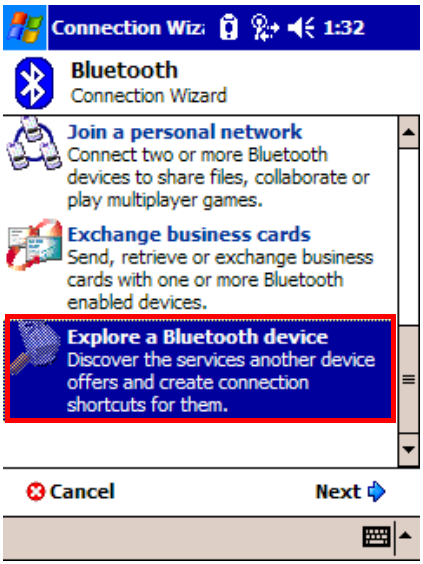
3. On the **General** tab, tap the **Bluetooth Manager** option.



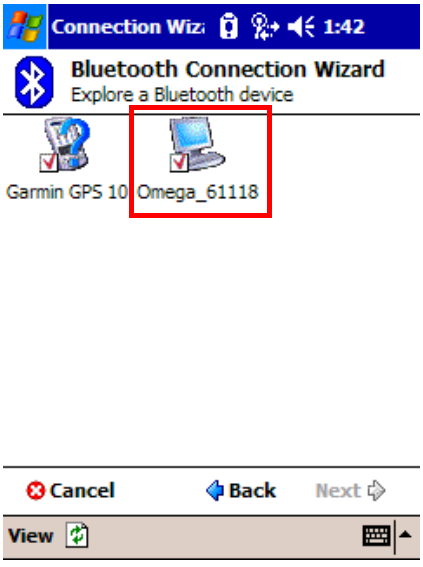

4. Tap **New** to open the Connection Wizard



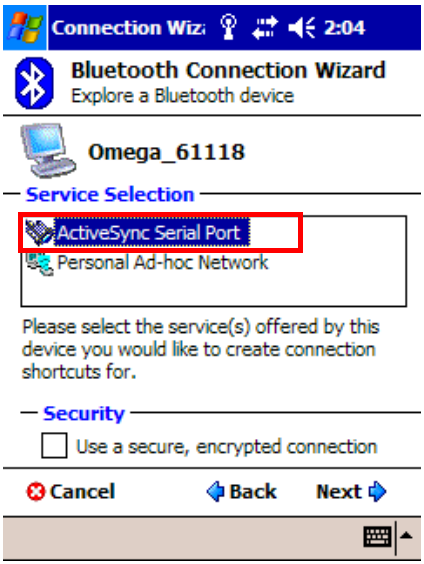
5. From the **Connection Wizard**, select **Explore a Bluetooth device** and tap **Next** to proceed.



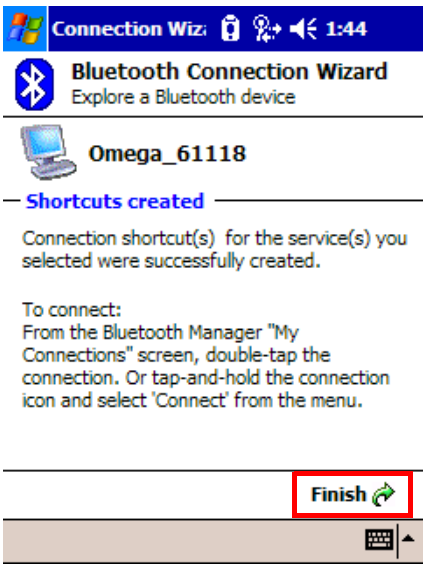

6. Wait for the list of detected Bluetooth devices to display, and then select the Olympus Innov-X and then tap **Next** to proceed.



7. Under **Service Selection**, select **ActiveSync Serial Port** and then click **Next** to proceed.



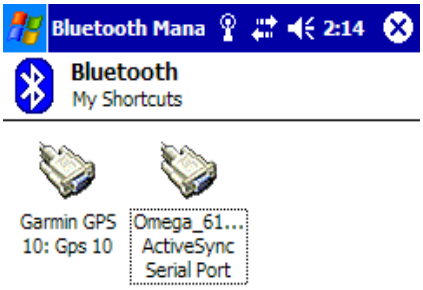

8. Tap **Finish** to complete.

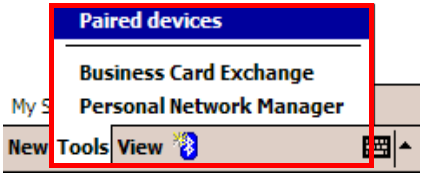



The Olympus Innov-X is now a registered Bluetooth device on the PPC.

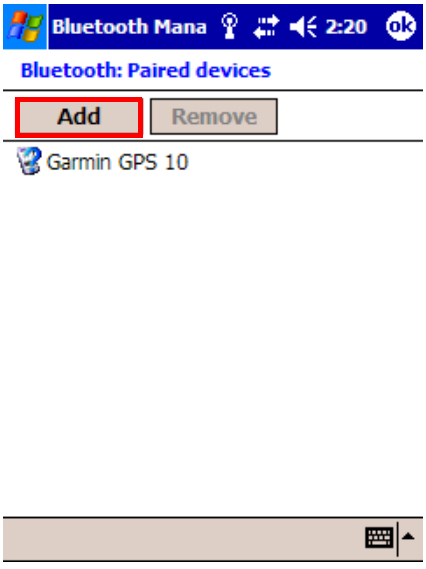
**Note** If you have not previously given your Olympus Innov-X a device ID name, it will appear as a factory setting name, usually appearing as “Windows CE”. This can be changed within the Windows CE settings on the Olympus Innov-X.

9. Open the Bluetooth Manager again (repeat steps 1 through 3), tap the **Tools** menu, and select **Paired Devices**.

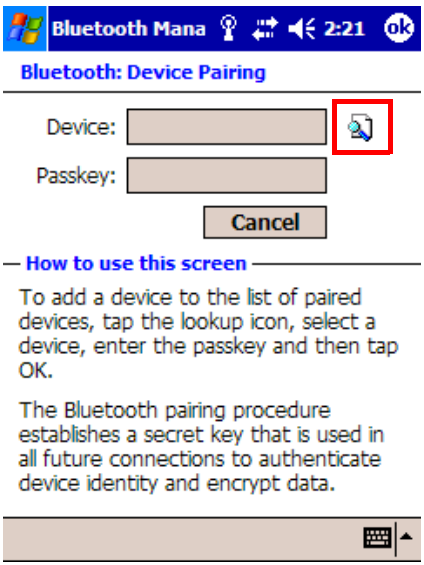


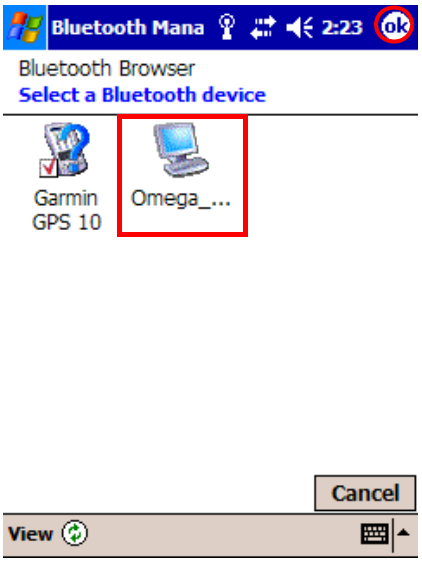
10. From the **Bluetooth: Paired devices** screen, tap the **Add** button.



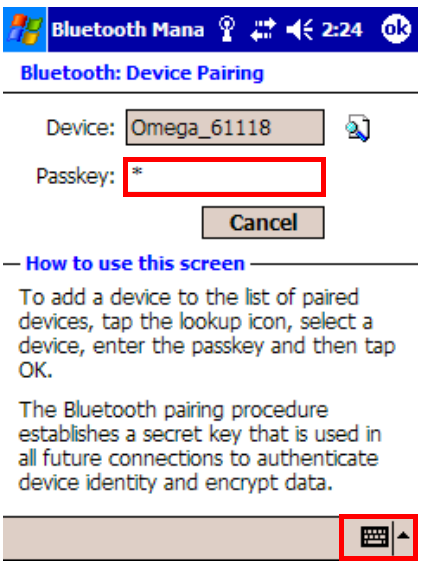

11. Tap the browse button to display registered Bluetooth devices.



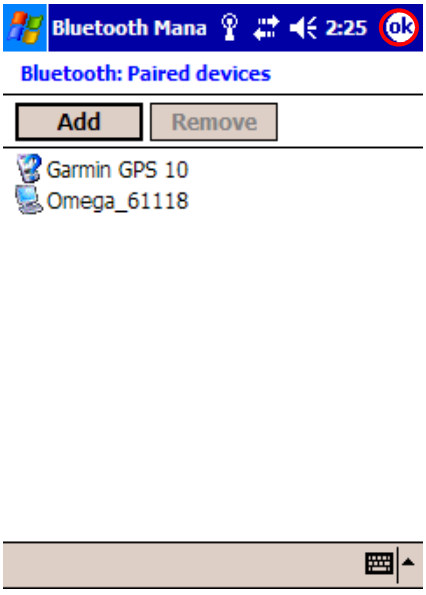
12. Select the Olympus Innov-X Bluetooth device and then tap **OK** to proceed.




13. Using the PPC keyboard, type the Olympus Innov-X password in the **Passkey** box. The factory default password is “1”.




14. Click **OK** to complete the pairing.

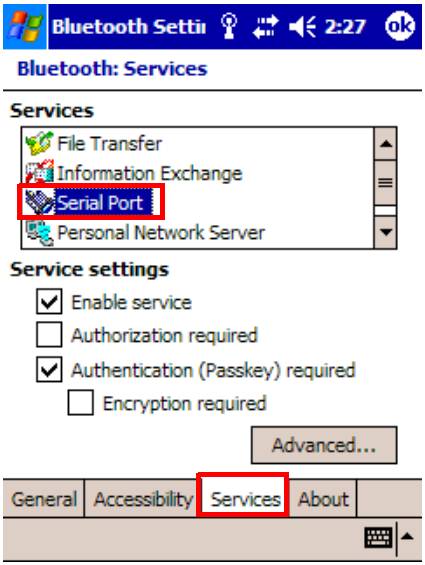



The Olympus Innov-X is now a paired Bluetooth device.

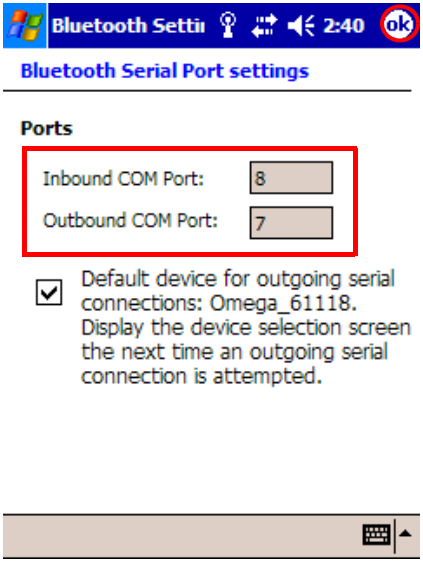
### Configuring the Serial Port on the PPC

1. Open the Bluetooth Manager (see steps 1 through 3 in *Pairing an Olympus Innov-X XRF device with the PPC*) and select the **Services** tab.

2. Under **Services**, select **Serial Port**, and then tap the **Advanced** button to configure the COM Port settings.




3. Check that the **Inbound COM Port** setting is the default value of 8, and the **Outbound COM Port** setting is 7.

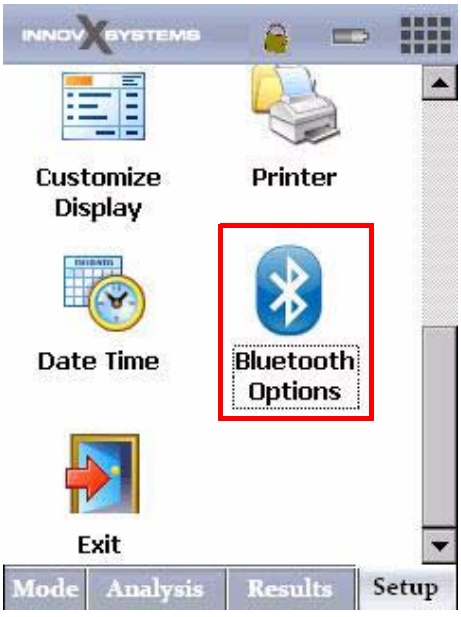



4. Click **OK** to finish.

### Pairing the PPC with the Olympus Innov-X XRF

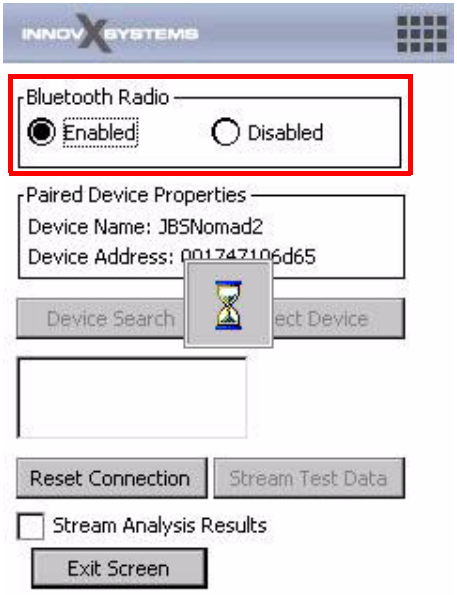
1. On the Olympus Innov-X device, select the **Setup** tab on the control screen.

2. Scroll to the bottom of the Setup screen and select the **Bluetooth Options** icon.




**Note** If the Bluetooth icon is not available, select **Factory Settings** and **Enable Bluetooth Streaming**. Refer to the *Olympus Innov-X XRF Manual* for more details on this feature.

3. Under **Bluetooth Radio**, select **Enabled**. An hourglass is displayed while the Olympus Innov-X searches for available Bluetooth devices.




4. Select the PPC from the list and ensure that the **Stream Analysis Results** check box is selected.

5. Tap the **Select Device** button.

**Note** If you have not previously given your PPC a device ID name, it will appear as a factory setting name, usually appearing as “PPC” or a Bluetooth address. This can be changed within the Windows Mobile settings on the PPC.

## Connecting to the GPS Receiver

If you have previously made a successful connection to the GPS receiver in Discover Mobile, you do not need to setup the connection again. Choose the **GO>GPS>Connect** menu option to reconnect to the GPS receiver, and proceed to the next section *Connecting and Configuring Discover Mobile and the XRF device*.

Otherwise, you will need to setup the connection to an internal or external GPS receiver and select the appropriate GPS Protocol:

- *Connecting to an NMEA GPS receiver*
- *Connecting to a Trimble GPS receiver*

## Connecting to an NMEA GPS receiver

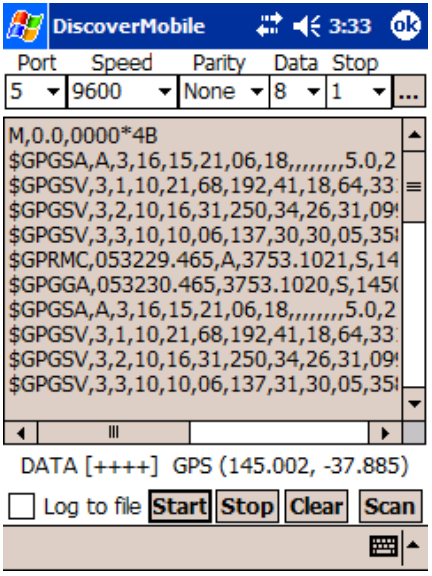
To connect Discover Mobile to an NMEA GPS receiver:

1. Choose the **GO>Preferences** menu option and ensure that the **GPS Protocol** is set to NMEA.

2. Turn on the GPS, and check that it is connected correctly to the PPC device e.g. a Bluetooth connection or serial cable.

3. Ensure that no other third party GPS software is running on the PPC. Most PPC devices will only allow one software application to access the GPS communication port at a time.

4. Choose **GO>Preferences>Connection>Setup** or **GO>GPS>Setup Connection** to open the GPS setup screen. The connection Port for the GPS receiver needs to be set manually, as do its various settings (Speed, Parity, Data and Stop). The settings are typically provided by the GPS receiver manufacturer in its accompanying documentation. Once these settings are set, press **Start** to test the connection. After a short period of time (up to about 30 seconds), a continuous NMEA data stream should be displayed (each line will start with '$GP….' indicating a successful connection with the receiver.



If uncertain about the receiver's settings, or the data stream fails to appear, or a message 'Bad Data' is displayed, the settings are incorrect. Try pressing the **Scan** button at the bottom of the dialog; Discover Mobile will run through every permutation of settings attempting to establish a connection to your GPS receiver. Once a valid data stream from the GPS is displayed, press the **Stop** button. Make a note of the settings for future reference, and close the dialog. These settings will be automatically retained unless Discover Mobile is reinstalled or the settings are changed (for instance, if a different GPS receiver is used).

Refer to *Connecting to the GPS Receiver* for more information and how to troubleshoot the GPS connection.

5. Select the **GO>GPS>Connect** menu option to connect to the GPS receiver. Once the receiver has found sufficient valid satellites (see *View Satellite Positions and Status*), a current position fix will be displayed. A "GPS – Fix 2D" or "GPS – Fix 3D" message will be displayed at the top of the map window. Discover Mobile is now ready for GPS data capture.

## Connecting to a Trimble GPS receiver

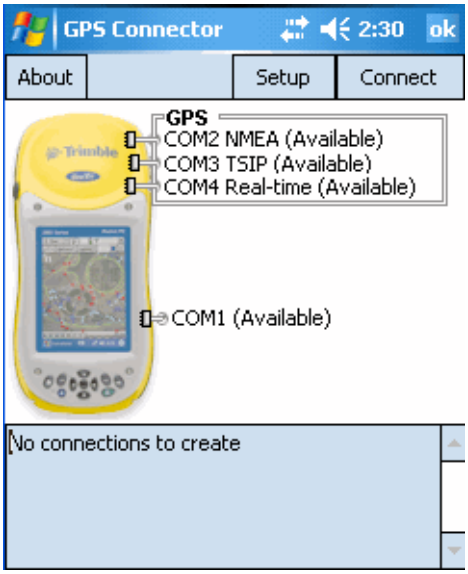
Trimble's high precision receivers (e.g. the GeoExplorer series of integrated mobile device and receiver's) and DGPS receivers (e.g. the ProXT) utilize Trimble's proprietary TSIP protocol. To connect Discover Mobile to Trimble receiver:

1. Choose **GO>Preferences** menu option and ensure that the **GPS Protocol** is set to Trimble.

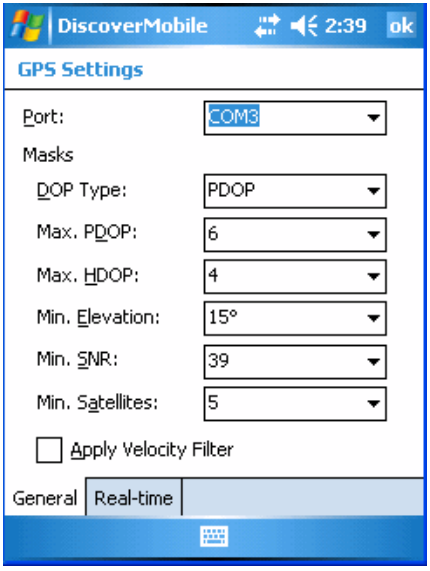
2. Turn on the GPS, and check that it is connected correctly to the PPC device e.g. a Bluetooth connection or serial cable.

3. Ensure that no other third party GPS software is running on the PPC. Most PPC devices will only allow one software application to access the GPS communication port at a time.

4. Choose **GO>Preferences>Connection>Setup** or **GO>GPS>Setup Connection** to open the GPS setup screen. Set the required communication port that the receiver is connected to (e.g. Bluetooth or serial port). Certain devices (such as Trimble GeoExplorer units running Windows Mobile 5) have a GPS Connector (or similar) application (under **Start>Settings>Connections**) which clearly identify the COM ports for the GPS receiver (and the various protocols).




The various Masks available in this dialog allow poor satellite data to be filtered out (e.g. satellites low on the horizon, or those resulting in a high signal-to-noise ratio), improving the precision on the position fix.

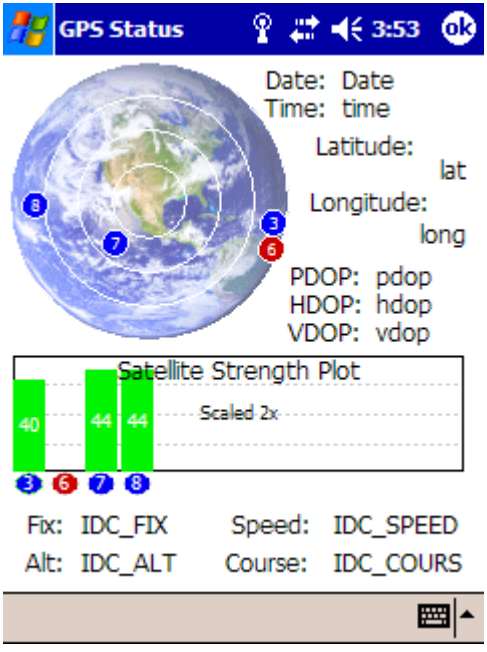



These settings will be automatically retained unless Discover Mobile is reinstalled or the settings are changed (for instance if a different GPS receiver is used).

5. Select the **GO>GPS>Connect** menu option to connect to the GPS receiver. Once the receiver has found sufficient valid satellites (see *View Satellite Positions and Status*), a current position fix will be displayed. A “GPS – Fix 2D” or “GPS – Fix 3D” message will be displayed at the top of the map window. Discover Mobile is now ready for GPS data capture.

## View Satellite Positions and Status

The GPS will commence acquiring of satellites and downloading of the almanac. This can sometimes take up to several minutes depending on atmospheric conditions. Once the GPS starts to acquire satellites, choose **GO>GPS>Monitor Satellite Status** to view the position and status.




- The message **Fix None**, displayed at the top of the Discover Mobile Screen, indicates that there are insufficient satellites to triangulate a position.
- When the GPS has obtained enough satellites to triangulate a position, the message changes to **Fix 3D**.
- If not enough satellite have been located for an accurate fix, the message **Fix 2D** is displayed.

A 3D fix is required for accurate positioning.

# Connecting and Configuring Discover Mobile and the XRF device

Once a Bluetooth connection to the XRF device is established, the following items need to be set to allow Discover Mobile to interact with the portable XRF device, prior to data capture:

- *Specify the XRF Project Path*
- *Configure the XRF Connection*
- *Connect to the XRF device*
- *Enhance the Map Window Display*

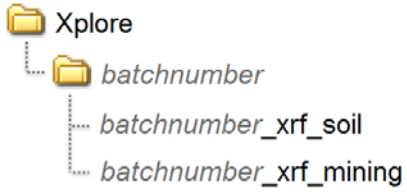
## Specify the XRF Project Path

The Project Path controls the location of the output XRF data files. To configure:

1. Select the **GO>Preferences>Directories** option.
2. Under the **Project Root** option select a root directory.
3. Under the next **Current Project** option select a folder to store the data tables and Sample Batch folders.

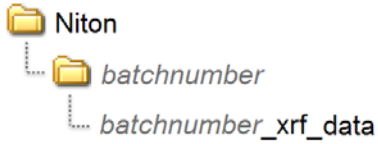
The structure under the Current Project folder will be:

**Olympus Innov-X XRF devices**




These correspond to the two different modes the Olympus Innov-X XRF runs in. **Soil Mode** is used for concentrations of up to 2-3%, and as **Mining Mode** is for concentrations above 2-3%. For soil geochemistry surveys, Soil Mode is usual.

### Niton XRF devices




## Configure the XRF Connection

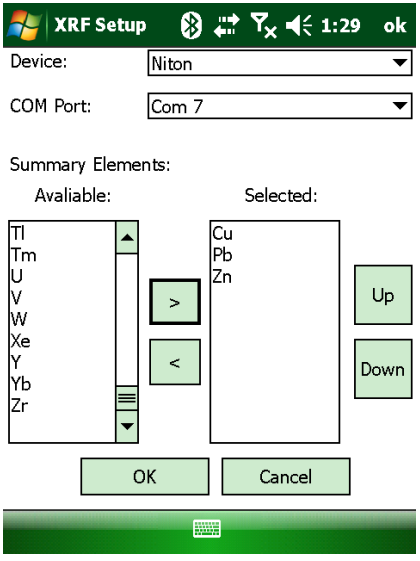
1. Select the **Go>XRF>Setup** menu option.

2. In the following dialog, set the appropriate **Device** (Niton or Olympus Innov-X)

3. Select the Incoming COM Port (e.g. COM 7 for the Niton Bluetooth connection detailed above)

4. Move your desired **Summary Elements** to the Selected list. These elements will be displayed in the initial Summary page when an XRF measurement is completed: all other elements will be displayed in the following Data pages. Press **OK**.

Once setup, these configuration options are remembered between XRF device connections (see *Connect to the XRF device*) and do not need to be reconfigured for each connection.



## Connect to the XRF device

Once the XRF connection has been setup (see *Configure the XRF Connection*) in Discover Mobile, you can connect to the XRF device.

1. Select the **GO>XRF>Connect** menu option

### Batch Files

2. In the **Select a Layer** section, enter a Batch Name, or select an existing Batch Name in the pull-down list if you wish to append to an existing data file. Existing batch files do not need to be open in Discover Mobile; this will list any XRF datafiles on your PPC.

   XRF data is stored into data files and directories named by **Sample Batch**; this allows data to be separated/stored by date/location/etc. See *Specify the XRF Project Path* for more information on batch file naming and storage locations. This function is extremely useful for jobs that span multiple field sessions (ie. before and after lunch) or days, working on the same project. It also enables recommencement at any time in case of an unscheduled break or technical difficulties.

   Olympus Innov-X XRF devices create two data files per batch, for Soil and Mining modes. **Soil Mode** is used for concentrations of up to 2–3%, and as **Mining Mode** is for concentrations above 2–3%. For soil geochemistry surveys, Soil Mode is usual. Niton XRF devices generate only one datafile per batch.

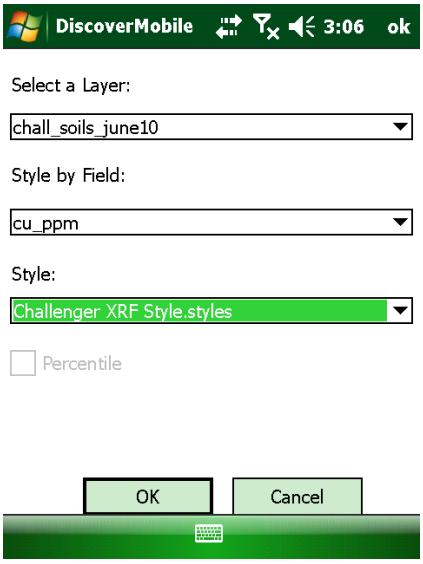
### Applying Range Styles

   XRF point data can be coloured/styled automatically as the data is captured using a Range Style library (see *Range Styles*). This allows geochemical trends to be instantly visualized in the field, for example enabling the user to conduct real-time infill or verification sampling in response to anomalous results or trends.

3. To apply a range style, first select the target numeric XRF element field in the **Style by Field** drop-down list.

4. Then select the desired Range Style library from the **Style** drop-down list and press OK

**Note** Range Styles created as Percentile ranges cannot be auto-applied to XRF data. Percentile-based range styles will not be displayed in the list.

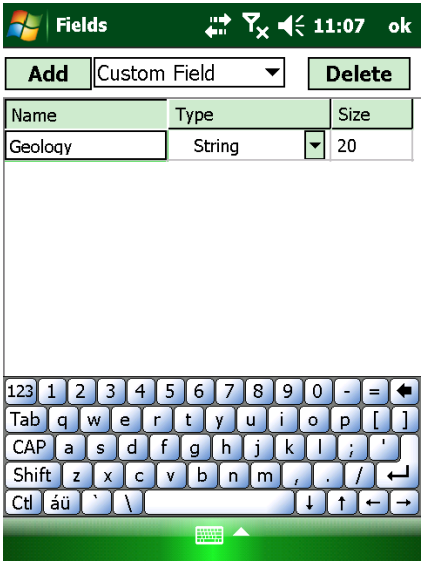



## Custom Fields

XRF batch files contain an extensive range of preset XRF element and error fields, as well as various ancillary fields, all of which are auto-populated by the XRF data stream when a measurement is taken. The user can additionally add **Custom** Fields to these batch tables, for attribution with information like geology, regolith, soil type, colour, etc.

5. Select **Yes** in the next dialog to add **Custom fields** (selecting **No** will complete the batch file creation).

6. Use the **Add** button to add a custom field. See *Defining Field Properties* for information on the various field types. See *Working with Tables* for more information about working with tables.




7. Press **OK** to complete the XRF connection.

### Enhance the Map Window Display

When the Sample Batch has been created, Discover Mobile displays a point object at the centre of the map window, this is your current GPS location. A wide variety of grids, aerial photos, geological maps or any thematic, layered data can be added to the map window to help you during the sampling program. For information on how to display other map data and control the map window, refer to the relevant sections in the Discover Mobile User Guide.

## Capturing XRF Data

*Photo courtesy of Thermo Fisher Scientific*

You are now ready to begin streaming analysis from the XRF device to the PPC:

- *Run an Analysis on the XRF device*
- *Record the GPS Location*
- *Review XRF Data and Record Comments and Observations*
- *Save Reading in Discover Mobile*

## Run an Analysis on the XRF device

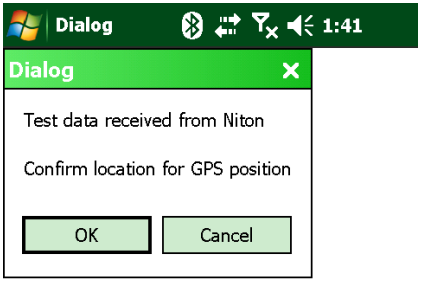
1. Ensure that the XRF instrument is correctly configured to suit the sample program. Items such as mode, test timings and sample information may need to be entered (depending on the device) prior to running the instrument. Refer to the XRF device User Guide for more information.

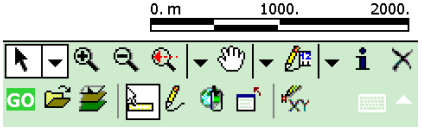
2. Perform an XRF analysis. Refer to the XRF device User Guide for detailed information, including safety aspects.

3. When the XRF has finished running the analysis, the final result will be displayed on the XRF device screen, and a Bluetooth Stream will be sent to Discover Mobile a few seconds later.

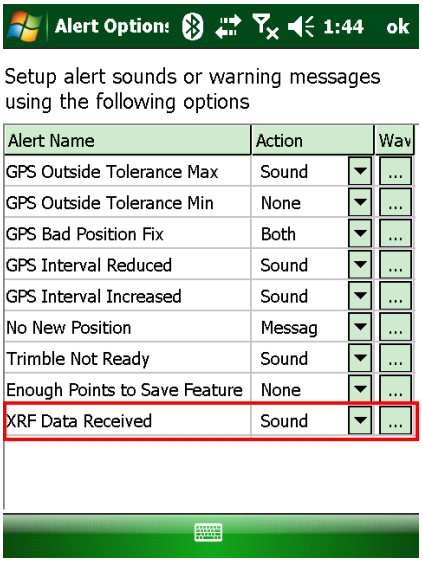
## Record the GPS Location

A message is displayed by Discover Mobile when the Bluetooth streamed result is received from the XRF device. Hold the PPC or DGPS antenna over the sample location to accurately record the location of the sample and then tap OK.




**Note** An alert sound can be enabled to indicate when the XRF Data is Received, under **Go>Preferences>System Settings>Alert Configurations**.

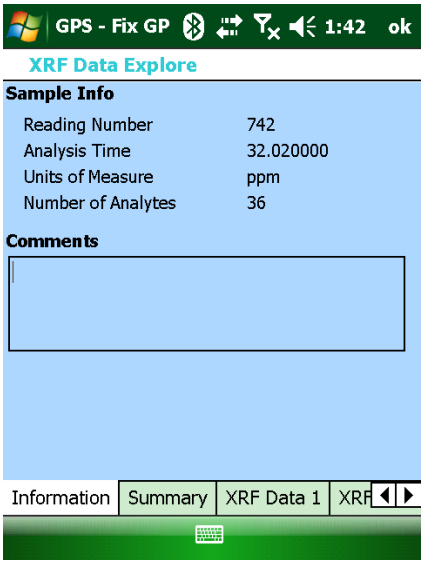



## Review XRF Data and Record Comments and Observations

The streamed XRF data populates fields into the XRF Data Forms on the PPC. All of the elemental data, including the associated errors are recorded into the active table, together with derived GPS coordinates. Due to the large amount of data received, the data is separated into several tabs (i.e. “Information” “Summary”, “XRF Data1”, “XRF Data 2”…“Geography”).

### Information Tab

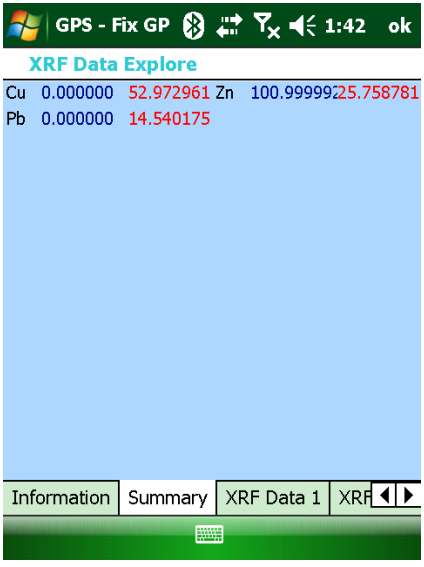
The **Information** tab lists summary information about the analysis. A Comments field is also available for operator descriptions, such as sample horizon types, regolith, geology or any other useful and relevant field observations. Additional *Custom Fields* can be added to the standard XRF tables and populated by the user (for example with manual entries, or via named styles and picklists).




*XRF datasheet Information tab*

## Summary Tab

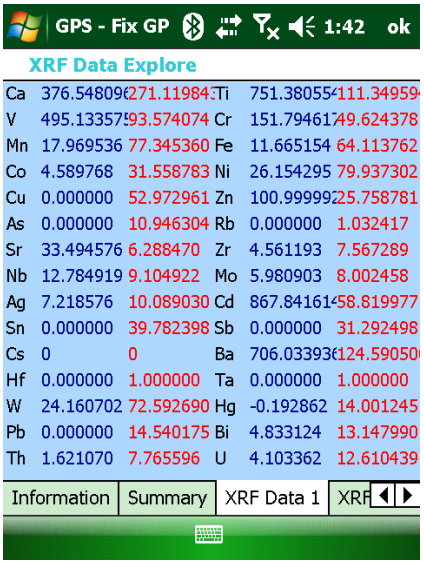
The **Summary** tab lists the elements selected via **Go>XRF>Setup**, providing a quick way of browsing primary/indicator elements/pathfinders of interest.




*XRF datasheet Summary tab*

## XRF Data Tabs

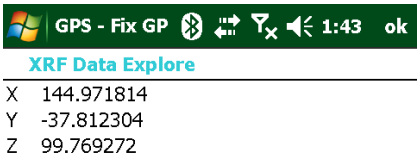
The elemental concentration data from the XRF device is stored in the XRF Data forms with the associated analytical errors (red). The **XRF Data** tabs have been pre-configured to receive all elements from Sodium (Na) through to Uranium (U), depending on the element suite and individual XRF Analyzer configuration. The XRF Data 3 tab also contains instrument-specific information, such as the manufacturer, serial number and model.

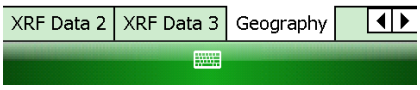



*XRF Data Form 1*

## Geography Tab

In addition to the XRF Data tabs, there is a **Geography** tab which contains the X, Y and Z coordinate positions obtained from the GPS.

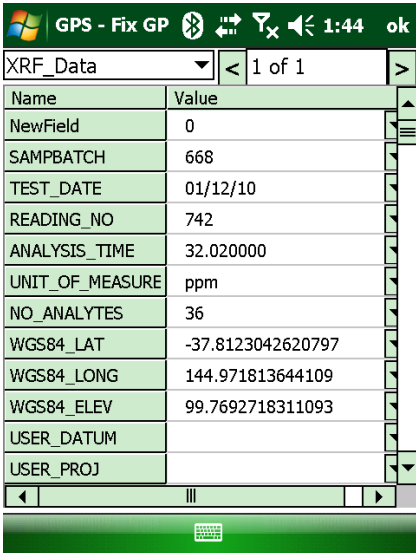



*XRF data sheet Geography tab*

## Save Reading in Discover Mobile

To save the analysis results and GPS location, tap **OK**. The data is written to a MapInfo Professional table (*.TAB) and a location point is displayed on the screen.

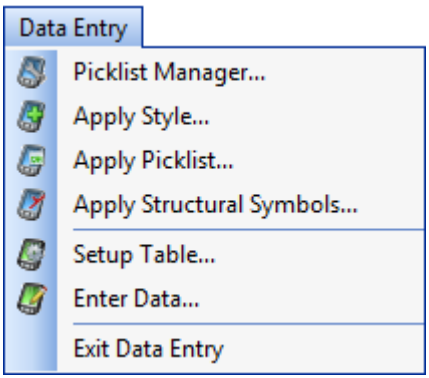



*Browser view of XRF data*

# D Digitizing and Data Entry in Discover

**Note** This section refers to functions available from the Data Entry menu in the Discover desktop application. These functions are not available from the Discover Mobile desktop application.

The tools on the Discover **Data Entry** menu streamline the entry of table data and creation of digitized map objects. Attribute data in a column can be incremented automatically, validated, or selected from a look-up table. Customized styles can also be applied to objects as they are created.




The tools on the **Data Entry** menu perform the following functions:

- **Picklist Manager**
  Use this tool to manage picklist styles by either modifying existing picklists or creating new picklists by importing from external files or creating a brand new picklist. For information about how to use this tool, see *Creating and Managing Picklists*.

- **Apply Style**
  Use this tool to apply a single picklist style to either selected map objects or to newly created map objects. For information about how to use this tool, see *Applying a Single Style from a Picklist*.

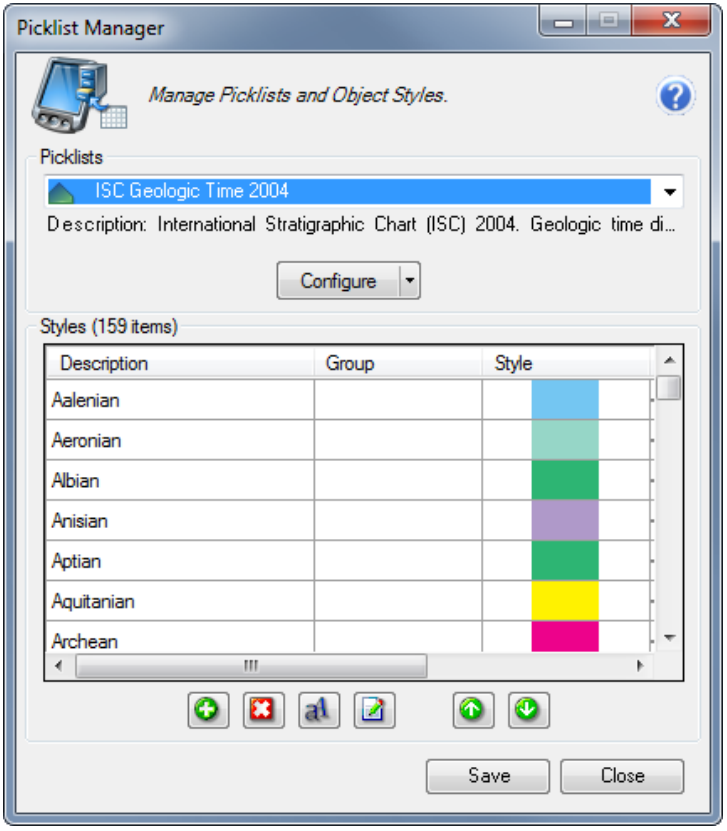
- **Apply Picklist**
  Use this tool to apply multiple selected picklist styles to map objects in a table either permanently or as a thematic map. For information about how to use this tool, see *Applying Multiple Styles from a Picklist*.

- **Apply Structural Symbols**
  Use this tool to apply structural symbols to a point dataset. For information about how to use this tool, see *Applying Structural Styles from a Picklist*.

- **Setup Table**
  Configure tables with validation rules and defaults for data entry. For information about how to use this tool, see *Configure Table for Data Entry*.

- **Enter Data**
  Digitize spatial or enter non-spatial validated data with attributes. For information about how to use this tool, see *Enter or Digitize Table Data and Map Objects*.

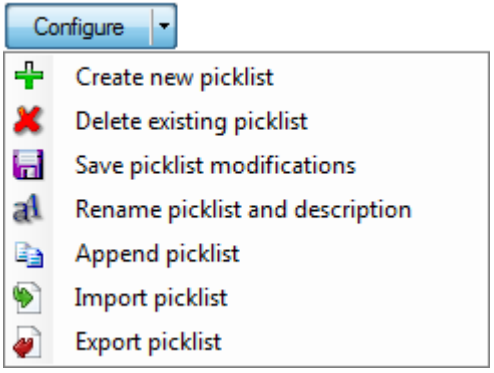
Object styles are managed with the Picklist Manager. The Picklist Manager is used to create map object and textural validation lists used for the creation of new map objects and applying map styles and attributes to selected map objects.



## Creating and Managing Picklists

A picklist list can be created from a new list or generated from anexisting dataset.

On the **Picklist Manager**, a picklist can be selected from the **Picklists** box. The following tools are provided to create and manage Picklists these tools are loacted under the Configure dropdown button:




| Tool | Description |
|---|---|
| **Create new picklist** | Create a new picklist. |
| **Delete existing picklist** | Delete the selected picklist. |
| **Save picklist modifications** | Save edits to a picklist. |
| **Rename picklist and description** | Rename a picklist and description text. |
| **Append picklist** | Append an existing picklist to another picklist. |
| **Import picklist** | Create a new picklist from numerous file formats. |
| **Export picklist** | Export picklist to numerous file formats. |

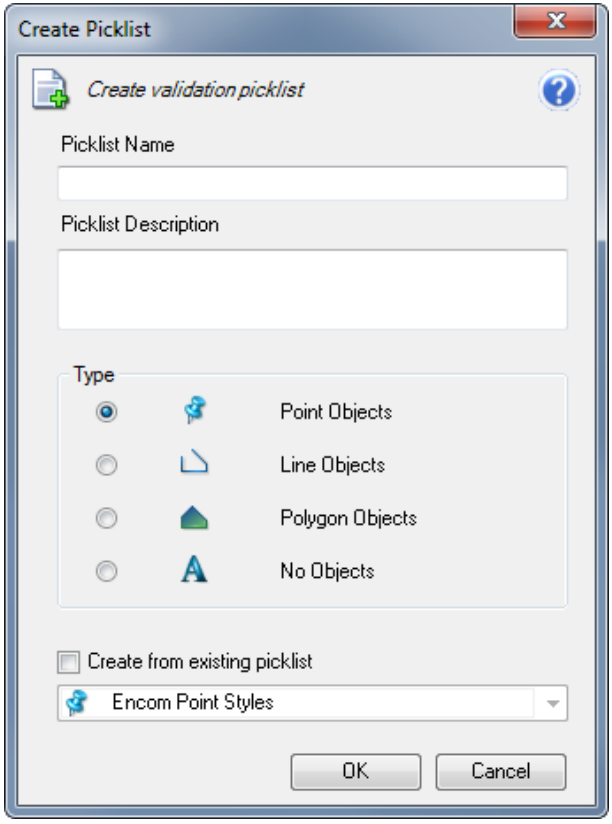
The **Styles** box displays the styles available in the selected picklist. The following tools are provided to create and manage styles:

| | Tool | Description |
|---|---|---|
| | Add New Style | Create a new style. |

| Tool | Description |
|---|---|
| Delete Selected Style | Delete the selected style. |
| Rename Style | Rename the selected style. |
| Edit Style | Edit the selected style. |
| Move Item Up/Down | Moves the selected style up and down in the Styles box. |

### To create a new picklist:

1. Select **Data Entry>Picklist Manager** to open the **Picklist Manager**.
2. Under **Picklists**, click the **Configure** button and select the **Create new picklist** option. The **Create Picklist** dialog is displayed.



3. Type the **Picklist Name** and **Picklist Description**.

4. Select the type of picklist: Point, Line, Polygon, or No object.

   You can also create a picklist from an existing picklist and then modify it.

5. Click **OK** to create a blank picklist.

6. Under the **Styles** box, click the **Add New Style** button.

7. The **MapInfo style** dialog is displayed, from which you can define a style for the selected object type. Click **OK** and type in a description for the new style (e.g. Shale) into the **New Style Description** dialog. Click **OK**.

8. Repeat steps 6 and 7 until you have defined all the required styles in this list.

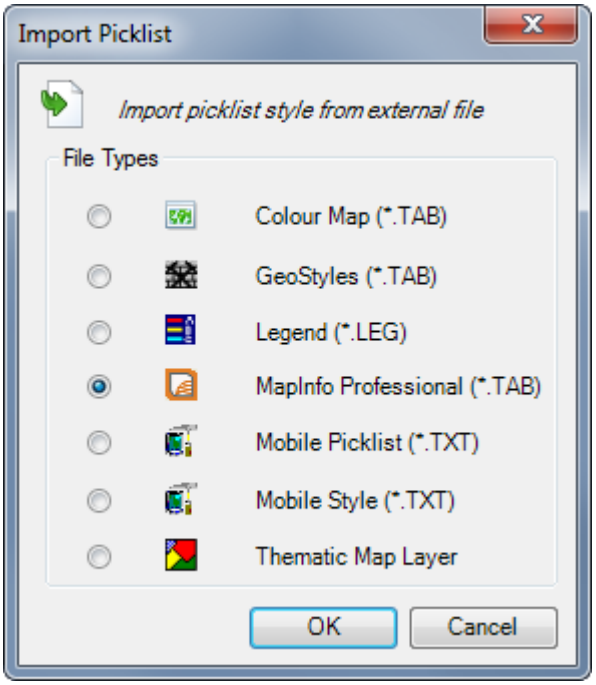
9. Use the other controls below the Styles box to Delete, Rename, Edit, and order styles in the picklist.

10. Click the **Save** button.

### To create a picklist from an existing dataset:

1. Select **Data Entry>Picklist Manager** to open the **Picklist Manager**.

2. Under **Picklists**, click the **Configure** button and select the **Import picklist** option The **Import Picklist** dialog is displayed.




3. Choose a **File Type** and click **OK**:

   - **Colour Map** – Imports a colourmap created in ColourMap tool which the Apply Picklist tool has superseded.
   - **GeoStyles** – Imports files from the Styles Library tool which the Picklist Manager has superseded.
   - **Legend** – Import legend files from the Drillholes>Legend Editor tool.
   - **MapInfo Professional** – Import patterns and textural information from a MapInfo Professional TAB file.
   - **Mobile Picklist** – Import Discover Mobile picklist.
   - **Mobile Style** – Import Discover Mobile named style.
   - **Thematic Map Layer** – Import patterns and textural information from a MapInfo Professional Thematic Map layer.

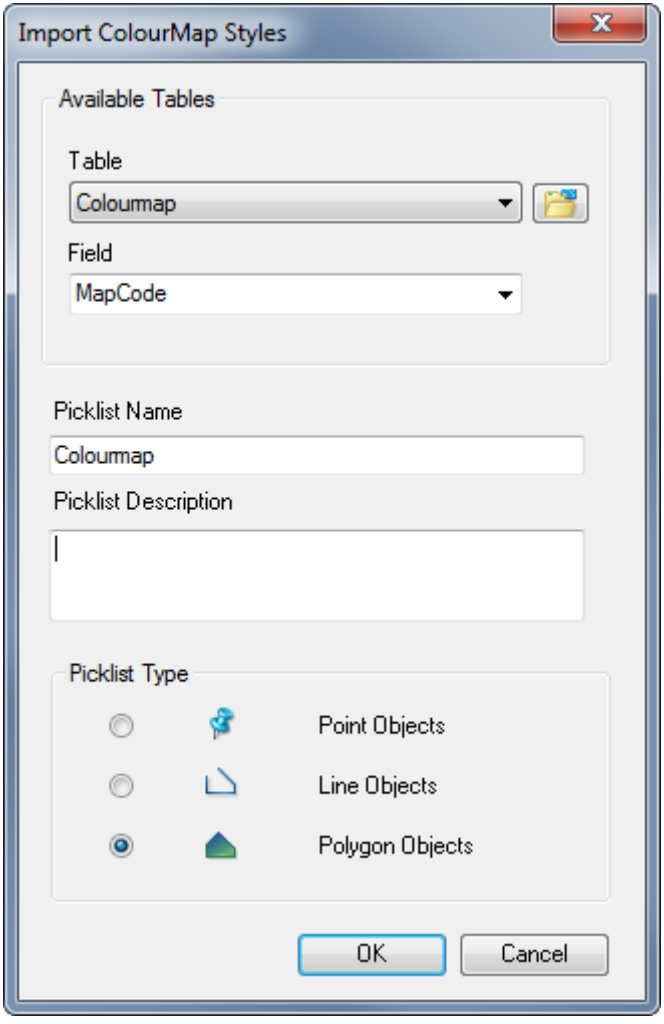
4. Select the details for each file type, as appropriate (see instructions for each file type below).

5. The imported file is displayed as a standard picklist in the **Picklist Manager** dialog.

6. Use the other controls in the **Picklist Manager** dialog box below the **Styles** box to delete, rename, edit, and order styles in the picklist.

7. Click the **Save** button.

**Colour Map**

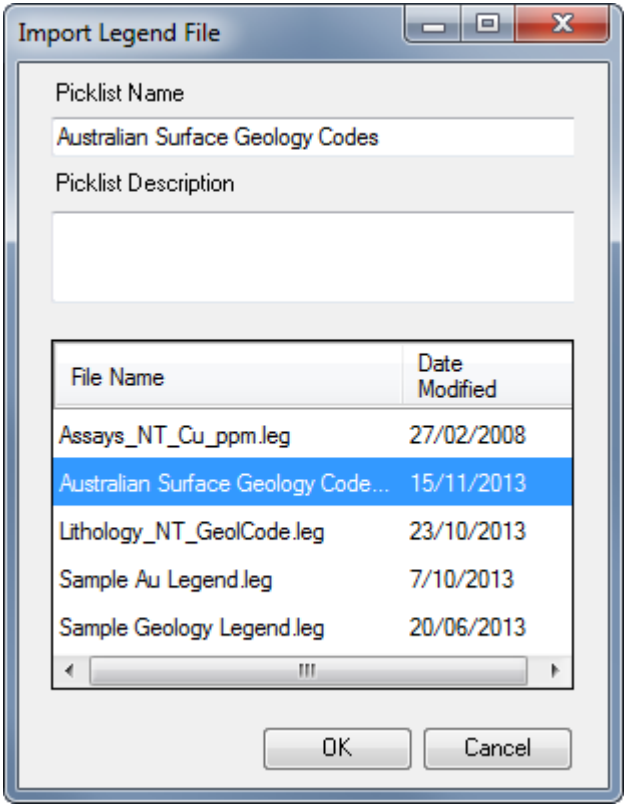


On the **Import ColourMap Styles** dialog, select a ColourMap from the **Table** dropdown. If the ColourMap table isn't open in MapInfo Professional, navigate to the table using the Open Table button. Select a field from the ColourMap which contains the style description from the **Field** dropdown. The fields include MapCode, Desc1, Desc2 and Desc3. Edit the **Picklist Name**, if required. Type a **Picklist Description** if required. Select the **Picklist Type**: Point Objects, Line Objects or Polygon Objects. Click **OK** to import the picklist.

### GeoStyles

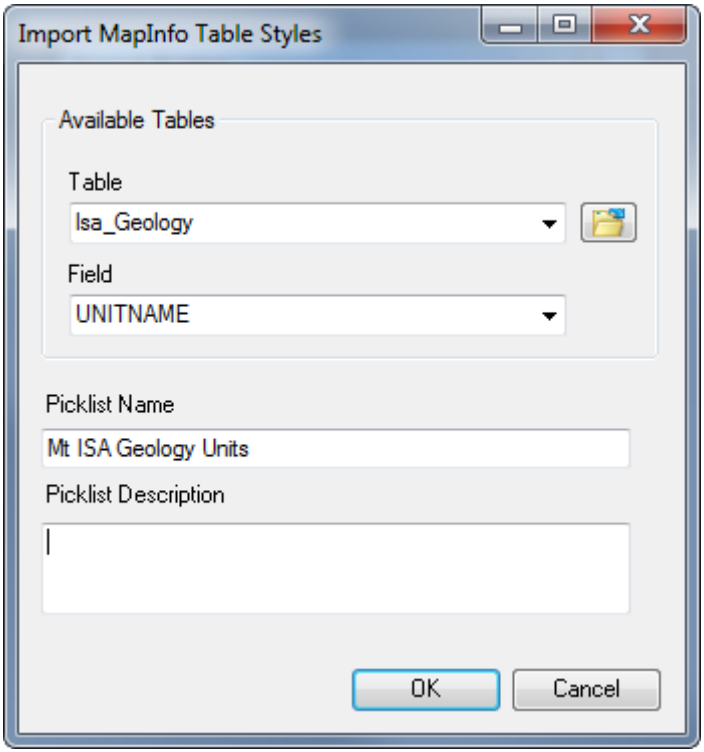
On the **Open** dialog, navigate to the location of the GeoStyles table, and click **Open**.

### Legend



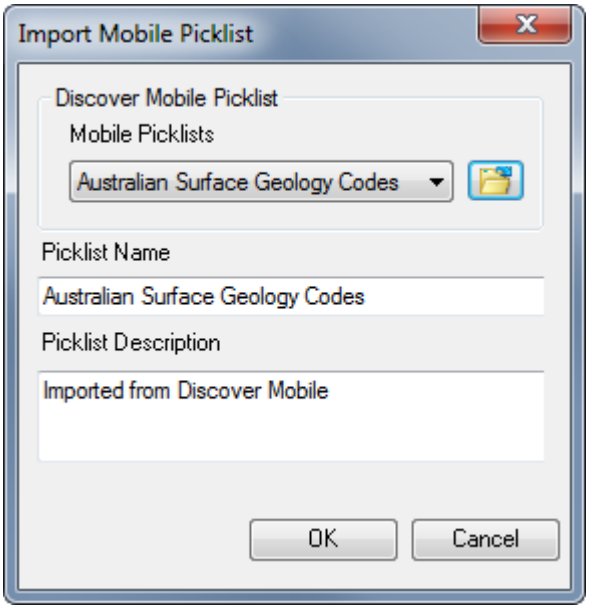

On the **Import Legend File** dialog select the Legend File to import. Edit the **Picklist Name**, if required. Type a **Picklist Description**, if required. Click **OK** to import the picklist.

### MapInfo Professional



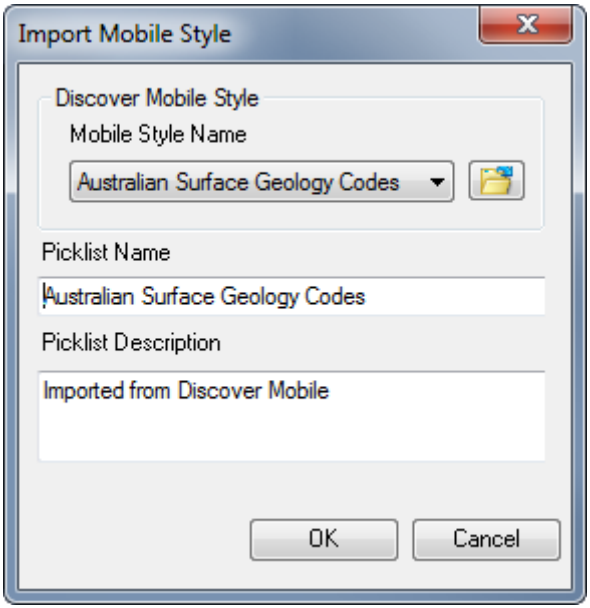

On the **Import MapInfo Table Styles** dialog, select a MapInfo Professional table from the **Table** dropdown. If the picklist isn't open in MapInfo Professional, navigate to the table using the Open Table button. Select the field from the MapInfo Professional table which contains the style description from the **Field** dropdown. EEdit the **Picklist Name**, if required. Type a **Picklist Description**, if required. Click **OK** to import the picklist.

### Mobile Picklist



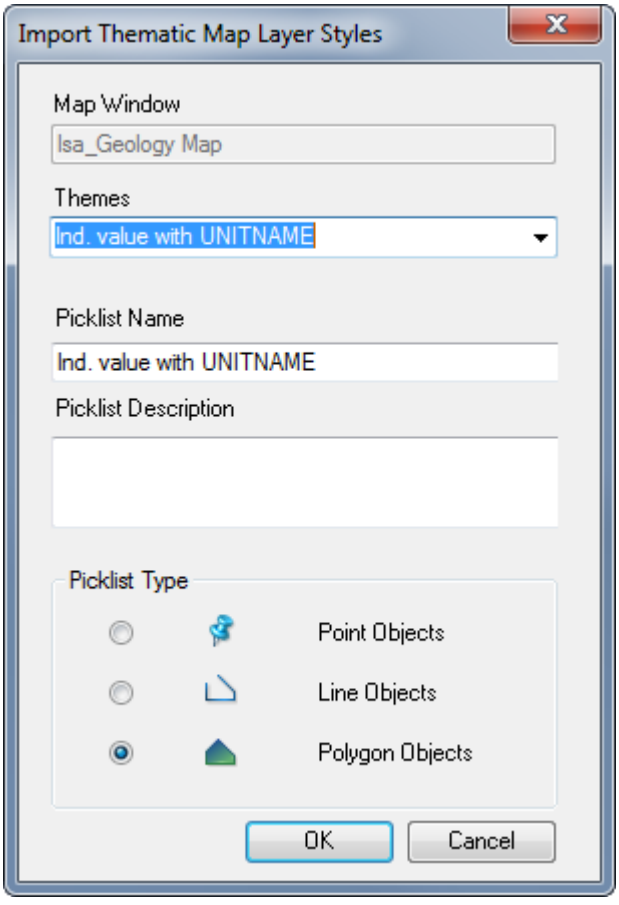

On the **Import Mobile Picklist** dialog, select a Mobile Picklist from the **Mobile Picklists** dropdown. If no picklists are displayed, navigate to the table using the Browse button and locate the folder containing Mobile Picklists. Edit the **Picklist Name**, if required. Type a **Picklist Description**, if required. Click **OK** to import the picklist.

### Mobile Style




On the **Import Mobile Style** dialog select a Mobile Named Style from the **Mobile Style Name** dropdown. If no Mobile Styles are displayed, navigate to the table using the Browse button and locate the folder containing Mobile Styles. Edit the **Picklist Name**, if required. Type a **Picklist Description**, if required. Click **OK** to import the picklist.

### Thematic Map Layer

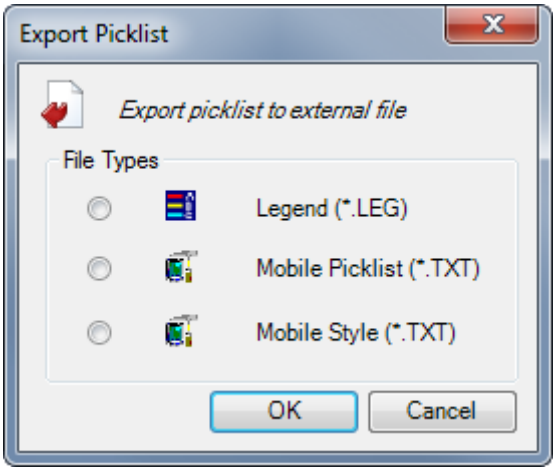



On the Import **Thematic Map Layer Styles** dialog select a Theme from the active Map Window from the **Themes** dropdown. Edit the **Picklist Name**, if required. Type a **Picklist Description** if required. Select the **Picklist Type**: Point Objects, Line Objects or Polygon Objects. Click **OK** to import the picklist.

**To export a picklist:**

1. Select **Data Entry>Picklist Manager** to open the Picklist Manager.

2. Under **Picklists**, click the **Configure** button and select **Export Picklist**. The **Export Picklist** dialog is displayed.




3. Choose a **File Type** and click **OK**:

   - **Legend** – Export as legend file for use in the **Drillholes>Legend Editor** tool.
   - **Mobile Picklist** – Export as Discover Mobile picklist.
   - **Mobile Style** – Export as Discover Mobile named style.

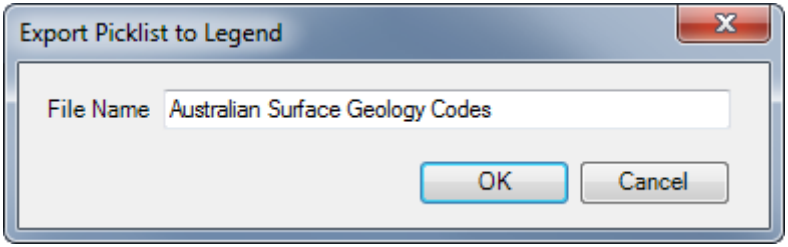
4. Select the details for each file type, as appropriate (see instructions for each file type below).

5. The imported file is displayed as a standard picklist in the **Picklist Manager** dialog.

6. Use the other controls in the **Picklist Manager** dialog box below the **Styles** box to delete, rename, edit, and order styles in the picklist.

7. Click the **Save** button.

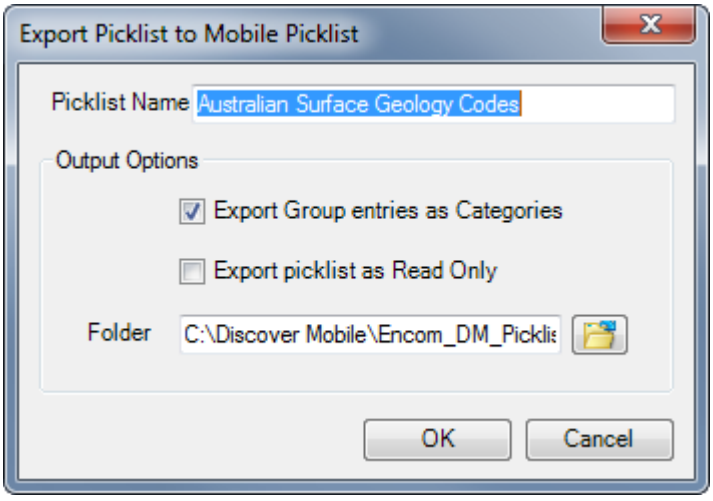
**Legend**



On the **Export Legend File** dialog, edit the **File Name**, if required. Click **OK** to export the picklist.

The exported Legend file is saved in the legend folder, typically `C:\Users\username\AppData\Roaming\Encom\Common\Legends_LUT` (set by the **Settings** option in the **Drillholes>Legend Editor** tool).

**Mobile Picklist**

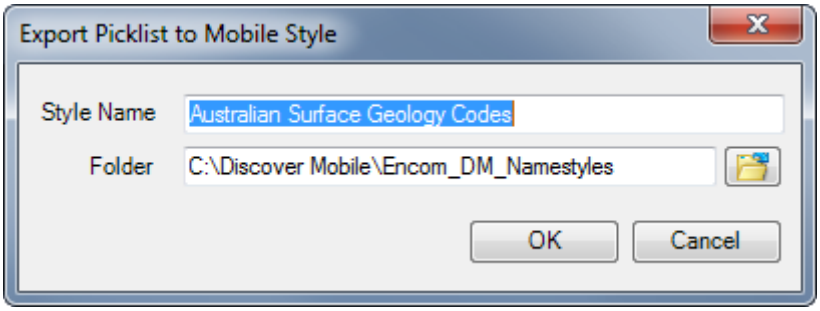



On the **Export Mobile Picklist** dialog, edit the **Picklist Name**, if required. Under the **Output Options**, select:

- **Export Group entries as Categories** – convert picklist groups into Discover Mobile Picklist Categories.
- **Export picklist as Read Only** – make the Discover Mobile Picklist read-only.
- **Folder** – click the browse button to change the location where the picklist is saved.

Click **OK** to export the picklist.

### Mobile Style

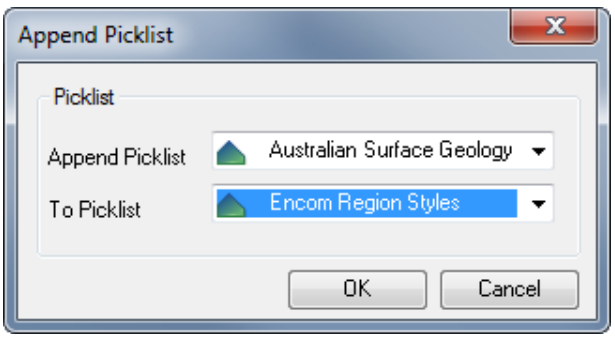



On the **Export Mobile Style** dialog, edit the **Style Name**, if required. Click the browse button to change the location where the named style is saved. Click **OK** to export the picklist.

**To append a picklist onto another picklist:**

1. Select **Data Entry>Picklist Manager** to open the **Picklist Manager**.

2. Under **Picklists**, click the **Configure** button and select the **Append Picklist** option. The **Append Picklist** dialog is displayed.




3. Select a picklist in the **Append Picklist** and **To Picklist** combo boxes. Only picklists with the same object type can be appended to each other i.e. polygon to polygon, point to point.

4. Click **OK** to append.

5. Use the other controls below the Styles box to Delete, Rename, Edit, and order styles in the picklist.

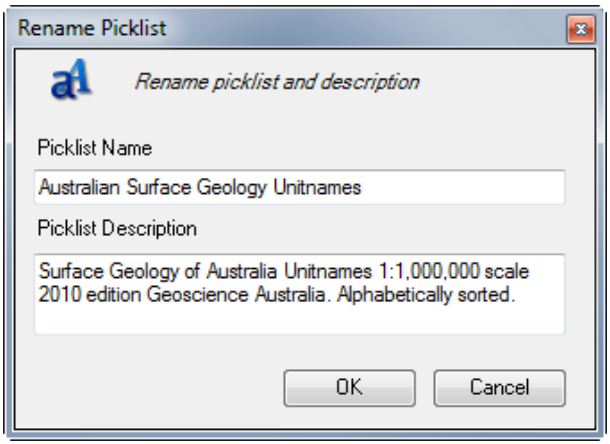
6. Click the **Save** button.

### To delete a picklist:

1. Select **Data Entry>Picklist Manager** to open the **Picklist Manager**.
2. Under **Picklists**, click the **Configure** button and select the **Delete existing picklist** option.
3. A warning message will appears asking if you want to delete the selected picklist, click **OK** button to delete the picklist.

### To rename a picklist and description:

1. Select **Data Entry>Picklist Manager** to open the **Picklist Manager**.
2. Under **Picklists**, click the **Configure** button and select the **Rename picklist and description** option. The **Rename Picklist** dialog is displayed.




3. Modify the Picklist Name and Picklist Description text boxes as required, click **OK** to commit the change.

### To save picklist modifications:

1. Select **Data Entry>Picklist Manager** to open the **Picklist Manager**.
2. Under **Picklists**, click the **Configure** button and select the **Save picklist modifications** option.
3. Alternatively, click the **Save** button on the Picklist Manager dialog.

### To modify an existing picklist:

1. Select **Data Entry>Picklist Manager** to open the **Picklist Manager**.

2. Click the **Picklists** box and select the picklist you want to edit.

3. The picklist styles are displayed in the **Styles** box. Use the tools under the Styles box to perform the following:

   - To add a new style, click . The **MapInfo style** dialog is displayed, from which you can define a new style. Click **OK** and type in a description for the new style (e.g. Shale). Click **OK**.
   - To delete a style, select the style in the **Styles** box and click .
   - To rename a style, select the style in the **Styles** box and click .
   - To add/remove a style to a group, select the style in the **Styles** box and click .

**Note** Styles can be added to a group to streamline the data entry process when using the Data Entry>Enter Data tool.

   - To edit a style, select the style in the **Styles** box and click . The **MapInfo style** dialog is displayed, from which you can edit the style. Click **OK** and edit the description. Click **OK**.
   - To reorder styles in the **Styles** box, select the style you want to move and use the Move Up and Move Down buttons to reposition in the picklist styles.

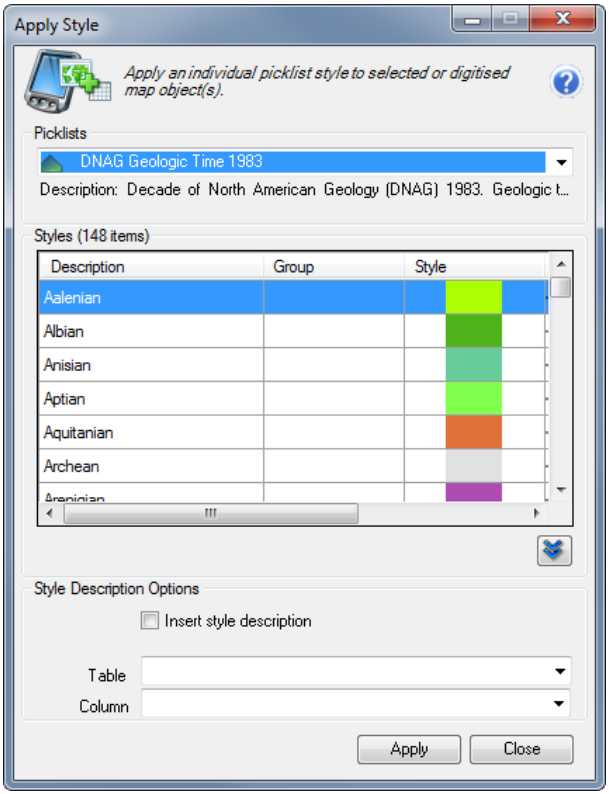
4. Click the **Save** button to save your changes.

## Applying a Single Style from a Picklist

A single picklist style can be applied to selected map objects or applied when creating new map objects. The textural description for the picklist can be added to the selected object record in the Browser table.

### To apply a single style to one or more map objects:

1. Select **Data Entry>Apply Style** to open the **Apply Style** dialog.




2. Select the map object(s) in the Mapper window or Browser window.
3. In the **Picklists** box, select the picklist.
4. In the **Styles** box, select the style you want to apply.
5. Click **Apply**.

### To apply style description to objects:

1. Select **Data Entry>Apply Style** to open the **Apply Style** dialog.
2. Select the map object(s) in the Mapper window or Browser window.
3. In the **Picklists** box, select the picklist.
4. In the **Styles** box, select the style you want to apply.
5. Select the **Insert style description** check box.
6. Select the table you want to apply the style description.

7. Select the table column you want to apply the style description.

8. Click **Apply**.

**To apply a style when digitizing objects:**

1. Select **Data Entry>Apply Style** to open the **Apply Style** dialog.

2. In the **Picklists** box, select the picklist.

3. In the **Styles** box, select the style you want to apply.

4. Click **Apply**.

5. The selected style will be applied to any new objects.

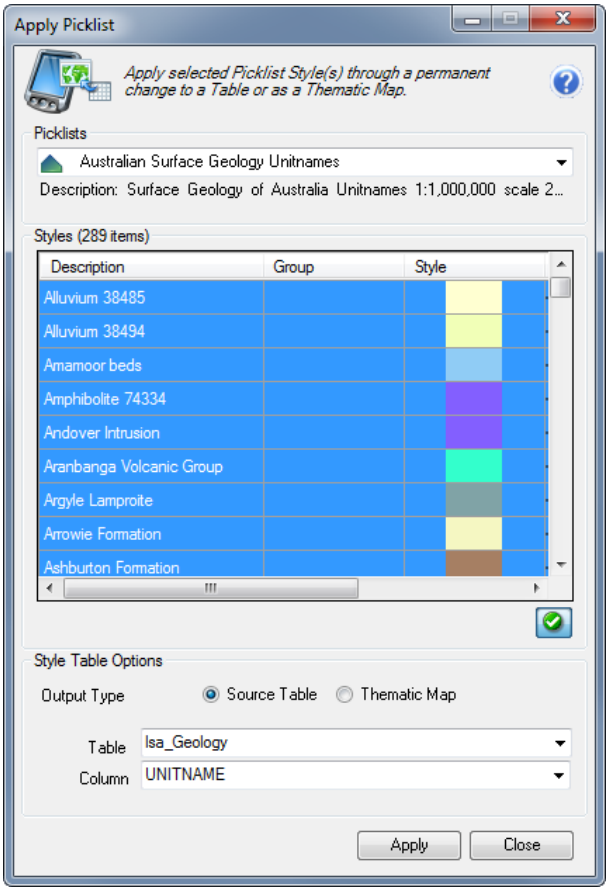
**Note** If you wish to insert the style description text in the new object record, select the **Insert style description** check box and populate the table and column dropdown boxes.

## Applying Multiple Styles from a Picklist

Multiple picklist styles can be applied to selected map objects or applied when creating new map objects.

**To apply multiple styles permanently to a table:**

1. Select **Data Entry>Apply Picklist** to open the **Apply Style** dialog.




2. In the **Picklists** box, select the picklist.

3. In the **Styles** box, select the style you want to apply.

**Note** By default all styles are selected, if you wish to apply certain styles select those styles.

4. In the **Style Table Options** box select Source Table.

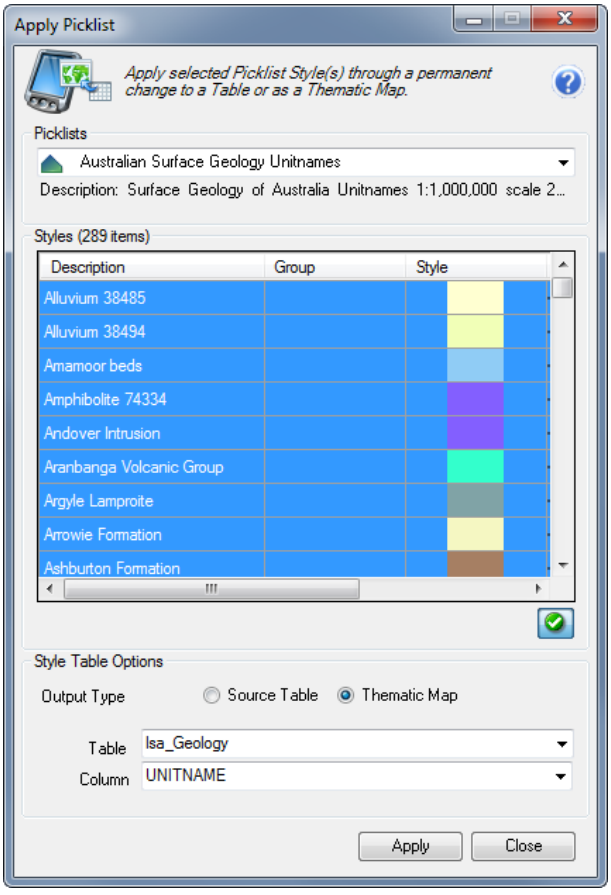
5. Select the table you want to apply the style description.

6. Select the table column you want to apply the style description.

7. Click **Apply**.

### To apply multiple styles to a table as a Thematic Map:

1. Select **Data Entry>Apply Picklist** to open the **Apply Style** dialog.




2. In the **Picklists** box, select the picklist.

3. In the **Styles** box, select the style you want to apply.

---

**Note** By default all styles are selected, if you wish to apply certain styles select those styles.

---

4. In the **Style Table Options** box select Thematic Map.

5. Select the table you want to apply the style description.

6. Select the table column you want to apply the style description.

7. Click **Apply**.

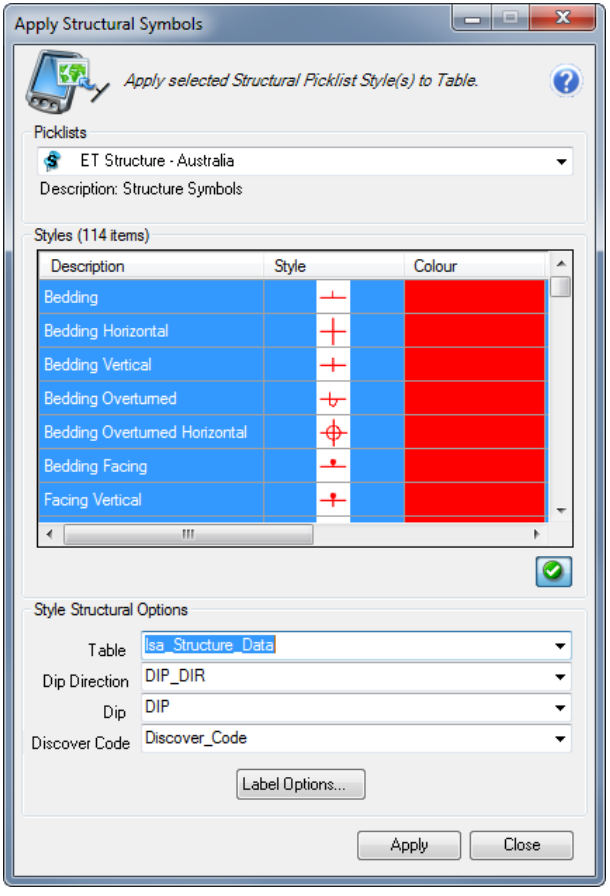
**Note** Individual Thematic map styles are the only type current supported by this tool.

## Applying Structural Styles from a Picklist

Multiple structural picklist styles can be applied to point map objects.

### To apply multiple styles permanently to a table:

1. Select **Data Entry>Apply Structural Symbols** to open the **Apply Structural Symbols** dialog.




2. In the **Picklists** box, select the structural picklist.

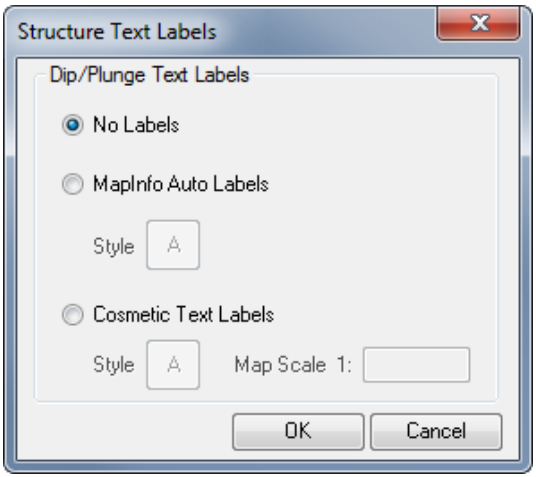
3. In the **Styles** box, select the style you want to apply.

**Note** By default all styles are selected, if you wish to apply certain styles select those styles.

4. In the **Style Structural Options** box select the table you want to apply the structural style.

5. Select the dip direction, dip and discover code fields.

6. If dip labels are required for the structural symbols click the **Label Options** button to open the **Structure Text Labels** dialog.




Text label options:

- **No Labels** – Default state, no dip/plunge labels displayed.
- **MapInfo Auto labels** – Dip/plunge labels created as MapInfo custom auto labels within the structure table.
- **Cosmetic Text Labels** – Dip/plunge labels created on the Map Window Cosmetic Layer in the Map Window which is selected.

Click **OK** after selecting the label options.

7. Click **Apply** to change the point objects into rotated structure symbols.

**Note** Make sure the MapInfo table is packed, otherwise unexpected object attribution may result.

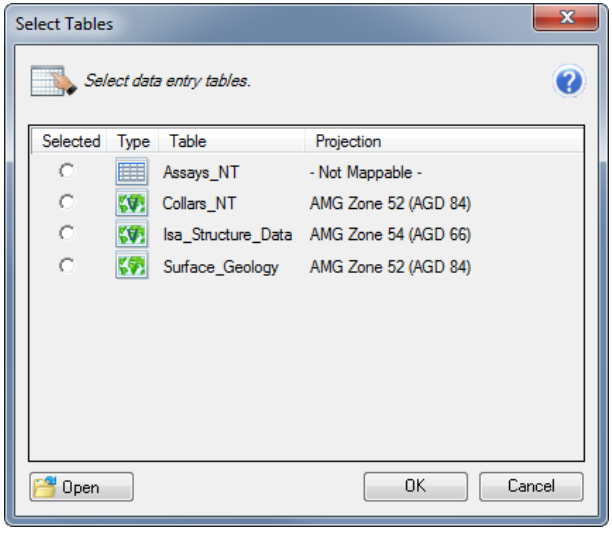
## Configure Table for Data Entry

The **Data Entry>Setup Table** tool configures any TAB file with validation rules for data entry using the Discover **Enter Data** tool (see *Enter or Digitize Table Data and Map Objects*). The tables can be either mappable or non-mappable. The validation settings are stored as metadata in the TAB file. TAB files linked to images, grids and read-only files such as Excel spreadsheets cannot be used with this tool..

**Note** To change the table structure, use the MapInfo Professional **Table>Maintenance>Table Structure** tool.

### To configure rules for validating table data:

1. On the **Discover** menu, point to **Data Entry** and select **Setup Table**. The **Select Tables** dialog is displayed.




2. All open vector and non-mappable tables are listed in the **Select Tables** dialog box. Select a table. Only one table can be configured at a time. To open a different table, Click the **Open** button and select the TAB file you want to open in MapInfo Professional. The table type and validation status is indicated by the following icons:

Mappable vector table with validation

Mappable vector table without validation

Mappable vector read-only table

Non-mappable table with validation

Non-mappable table without validation

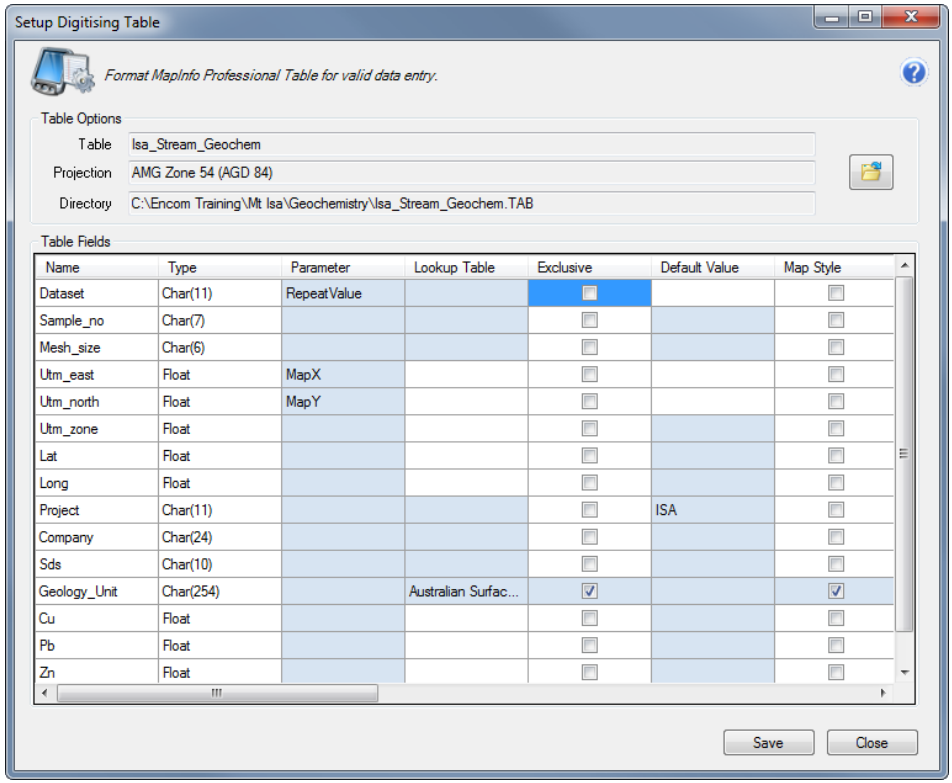
Non-mappable read-only table

3. Click **OK** to load the selected table in the **Setup Digitizing Table** dialog box. The table name, projection and location are displayed under **Table Options**. The **Table Fields** box is populated with the table fields as rows and field properties as columns in a spreadsheet-like grid. The table validation columns are initially blank.

   Validation settings that are applicable to each field are shaded blue. For example, you can only select a look-up table (of text values) for a text field (type Char). Similarly, minimum and maximum numerical values can only be set for numerical fields (type Integer, SmallInt, Float, and Decimal).

4. Make the validation settings for each field or as required. To clear a selection in the Setup Digitizing Table, right-click in the cell and select **Clear Value**. For more information about individual validation columns, see *Table Validation Options*.

5. Click the **Save** button.




*Setup Digitizing Tables dialog showing validation settings for each table field*

## Table Validation Options

Validation options available from the **Data Entry>Setup Table** tool depend on the field type.

| | |
|---|---|
| Name | Name of the MapInfo Professional field. |
| Type | MapInfo Professional field type and width where applicable. |

Parameter

Automatically inserts the object centroid value into a numeric field type with the table projection. The options are available:

- **MapX** table projection centroid X/Easting/Longitude value.
- **MapY** table projection centroid Y/Northing/Latitude value.
- **RepeatValue** repeats previous record cell value in new record.
- **CurrentDate** inserts the current date.
- **CurrentTime** inserts the current time.
- **CurrentDateTime** inserts the current date and time.
- **Dip** (used for structure symbols) the field that contains the dip.
- **DipDirection** (used for structure symbols) the field that contains the dip direction.
- **DiscoverCode** (used for structure symbols) the field that contains the Discover Code.

**Lookup Table**

Select a picklist to use as the validation list from that field. The picklists are located in:

Windows 7 and 8
`C:\Users\`*`CurrentUser`*`\AppData\Roaming\Encom\Discover\Picklist`

Windows XP
`C:\Documents and Settings\`*`CurrentUser`*`\Application Data\Encom\Discover\Picklists`

**Exclusive**

If selected, restricts selections from only the picklist. If not selected, custom values can be entered or selected from the picklist.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Default value** | Default value of field in new records:<br>• If text field and Lookup Table option is selected, click to select a default value from the picklist. Otherwise, type a value.<br>• If a date or time field, pick the default date/time.<br>• If a numerical field, type a value. |
| **Map Style** | Select this option to use the graphical style of the selected picklist when creating new map objects (Map Style field has bold font for the field title in the Enter Data tool). |
| **Increment** | Increments a numerical field or a character field containing numbers by a fixed value. |
| **Min Numeric** | Minimum numerical value. |
| **Max Numeric** | Maximum numerical value. |
| **Min Date** | Minimum date value. |
| **Max Date** | Maximum date value. |
| **Min Date Time** | Minimum date/time value. |
| **Max Date Time** | Maximum date/time value. |
| **Min Time** | Minimum time value. |
| **Max Time** | Maximum time value. |

**Note** To clear a selection in the Setup Digitizing Table, right-click in the cell and select **Clear Value**.

## Enter or Digitize Table Data and Map Objects

Data can be entered into standard TAB files (without validation) or TAB files with validation settings created with the Discover **Setup Digitizing Table** tool (see *Configure Table for Data Entry*). Tables can be either mappable or non-mappable:

| Icon | Table type and validation status |
|---|---|
| | Mappable vector table with validation |
| | Mappable vector table without validation |
| | Mappable vector read-only table |
| | Non-mappable table with validation |
| | Non-mappable table without validation |
| | Non-mappable read-only table |

Data can only be entered in existing TAB files: the data entry tool does not create MapInfo tables nor alter their structure.

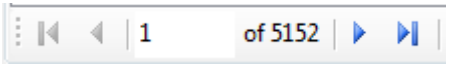
**Note** To change the table structure, use the MapInfo Professional **Table>Maintenance>Table Structure** tool.

### To enter non-mappable data with the Data Entry tool:

1. On the **Discover** menu, point to **Data Entry** and select **Setup Tables**. The **Select Tables** dialog is displayed.

2. All open tables are listed in the **Select Tables** dialog box. Select a table. To open another table, Click the **Open** button and select the TAB file you want to open in MapInfo Professional.

3. Click **OK** to load the selected table in the **Data Entry** tool. The table names are displayed on the tab at the top of the data sheet. The number of records and the current selected record are displayed on the navigation bar at the bottom of the dialog box.

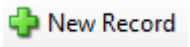
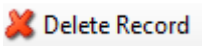
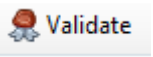



4. Use these tools to open another table or view table information:

   - Open another table for data entry.

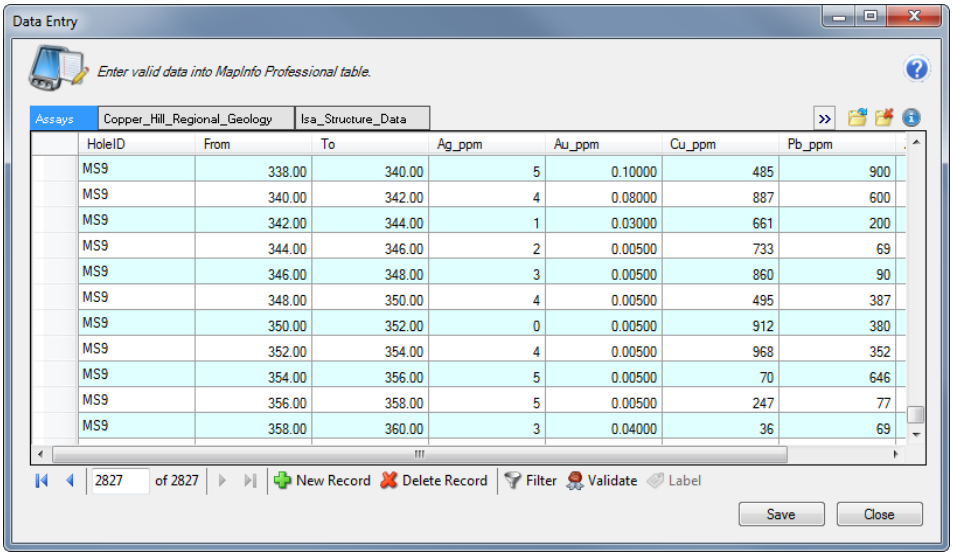
- Close selected table.
- View information about the open table such as Name, Path and Projection.
- View all tables loaded or display hidden tables in Data Entry.

5. Use the navigation bar or keyboard arrow keys to move up and down the table records and left and right between columns. You can then:

| | |
|---|---|
| Edit value | Use the TAB and right/left arrow keys to move between cells. Use the navigation bar and up/down arrow keys to move between records. Click a cell to edit. If a picklist is defined in the validation settings, select from the valid picklist values. Values are validated on entry. |
| Clear value | Right-click in the cell and select **Clear Value** or click in the cell and press DEL. |
| Copy value | Click in the cell and press CTRL+C. Copies a single value to the clipboard. |
| Paste value | Click in the cell and press CTRL+V. Pastes a single value from the clipboard. |
|  | Add a new record (to the end of the table). If validation settings have been set up for this table, some columns will be populated by the increments or defaults defined for that field. Use the TAB and arrow keys to move between cells. Type values in fields as required. If a picklist is defined in the validation settings, click the cell and select from the valid picklist values. New and edited values are validated on entry. |
|  | Delete selected records. Click, CTRL+click, or SHIFT+click to select the required records. |
| | Click once to display only records that fail the validation rules. Click again to display all records. |
|  | Revalidate all records in an existing table. |

6. Click the **Save** button to save your changes to the current table.

**Note** All validation errors must be resolved before the table can be saved or the Data Entry tool can be closed.



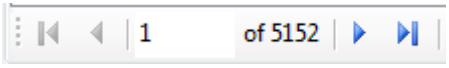

*Enter Data dialog showing entry of data in a non-mappable table*

### To digitize mappable objects with the Data Entry tool:

1. On the **Discover** menu, point to **Data Entry** and select **Setup Table**. The **Select Tables** dialog is displayed.

2. All open tables are listed in the **Select Tables** dialog box. Select a table. To open another table, Click the **Open** button and select the TAB file you want to open in MapInfo Professional.

3. Click **OK** to load the selected table in the **Data Entry** tool. The table names are displayed on the tab at the top of the data sheet. The number of records and the current selected record are displayed on the navigation bar at the bottom of the dialog box.




4. Use these tools to open another table or view table information:

   - Open another table for data entry.
   - Close selected table.

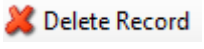
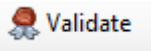
- View information about the open table such as Name, Path and Projection.
- View all tables loaded or display hidden tables in Data Entry.

5. Make the table you want to enter in to editable.

6. Digitize an object using the tools on the MapInfo Drawing toolbar.

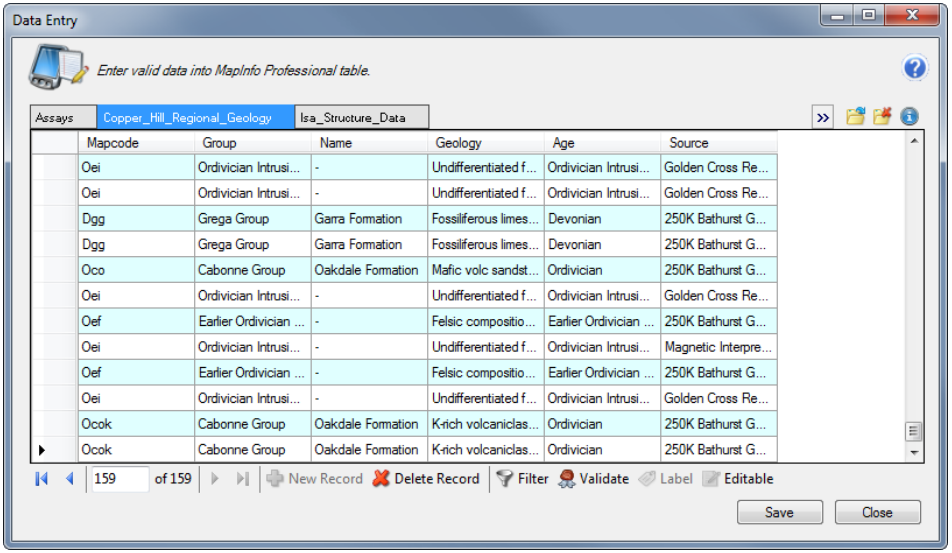
**Note** You cannot enter a new browser record using the Data Entry tool for a mappable table. To create a new record you must digitize a new map object in the map window.

7. Use the navigation bar or keyboard arrow keys to move up and down the table records and left and right between columns. You can then:

| | |
|---|---|
| Edit value | Use the TAB key and right/left arrow keys to move between cells. Use the navigation bar and up/down arrow keys to move between records. Click a cell to edit. If a picklist is defined in the validation settings, select from the valid picklist values. Values are validated on entry. |
| Clear value | Right-click in the cell and select **Clear Value** or click in the cell and press DEL. |
| Copy value | Click in the cell and press CTRL+C. Copies a single value to the clipboard. |
| Paste value | Click in the cell and press CTRL+V. Pastes a single value from the clipboard. |
|   | Delete selected records. In the left-most column, click, CTRL+click, or SHIFT+click to select the required records. |
| | Click once to display only records that fail the validation rules. Click again to display all records. |
|   | Revalidate all records in the table. |
| | Toggle editability of selected table.. |

**Note** The Data Entry tool supports the selection of singular map and browser records and objects. Multiple record or object selections are currently not supported.

8. Click the **Save** button to save your changes to the current table. All validation errors must be resolved before the table can be saved and the Data Entry tool can be closed.




*Enter Data dialog showing entry of data in a mappable table*

### To digitize mappable structure objects with the Data Entry tool:

1. On the **Discover** menu, point to **Data Entry** and select **Setup Table**. The **Select Tables** dialog is displayed.

2. All open tables are listed in the **Select Tables** dialog box. Select a table. To open another table, Click the **Open** button and select the TAB file you want to open in MapInfo Professional.

3. Click **OK** to load the selected table in the **Data Entry** tool. The table names are displayed on the tab at the top of the data sheet. The number of records and the current selected record are displayed on the navigation bar at the bottom of the dialog box.

4. Use these tools to open another table or view table information:

5. Use these tools to open another table or view table information:

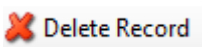
   - Open another table for data entry.
   - Close selected table.
   - View information about the open table such as Name, Path and Projection.
   - View all tables loaded or display hidden tables in Data Entry.

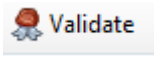
6. Make the table you want to enter in to editable.

7. Digitize a point object using the tools on the MapInfo Drawing toolbar.

**Note** You cannot enter a new browser record using the Data Entry tool for a mappable table. To create a new record you must digitize a new map object in the map window.

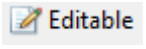
8. Use the navigation bar or keyboard arrow keys to move up and down the table records and left and right between columns. You can then:

| | |
|---|---|
| Edit value | Use the TAB key and right/left arrow keys to move between cells. Use the navigation bar and up/down arrow keys to move between records. Click a cell to edit. If a picklist is defined in the validation settings, select from the valid picklist values. Values are validated on entry. |
| Clear value | Right-click in the cell and select **Clear Value** or click in the cell and press DEL. |
| Copy value | Click in the cell and press CTRL+C. Copies a single value to the clipboard. |
| Paste value | Click in the cell and press CTRL+V. Pastes a single value from the clipboard. |
|  | Delete selected records. In the left-most column, click, CTRL+click, or SHIFT+click to select the required records. |
| | Click once to display only records that fail the validation rules. Click again to display all records. |




Revalidate all records in the table.

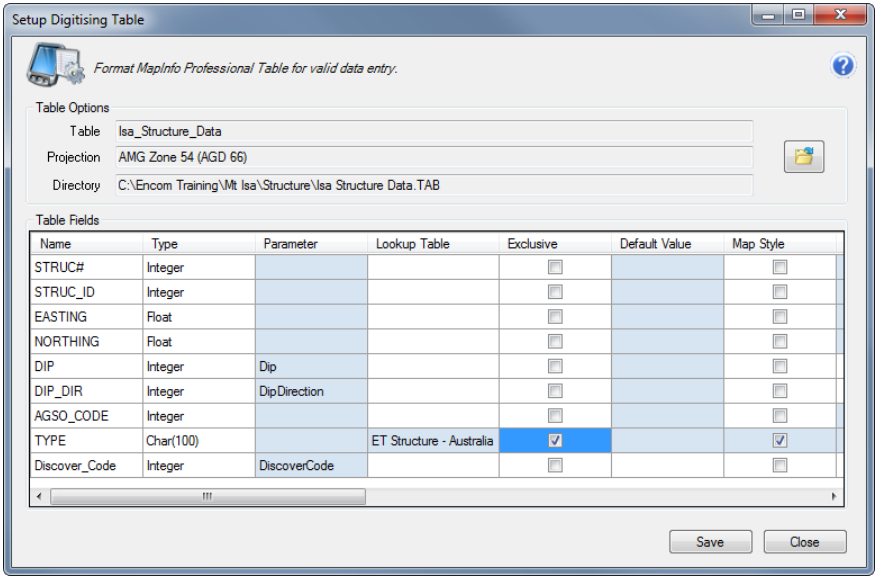
Label structural symbol options for digitizing structure points.




Toggle editability of selected table..

**Note** The Data Entry tool supports the selection of singular map and browser records and objects. Multiple record or object selections are currently not supported.

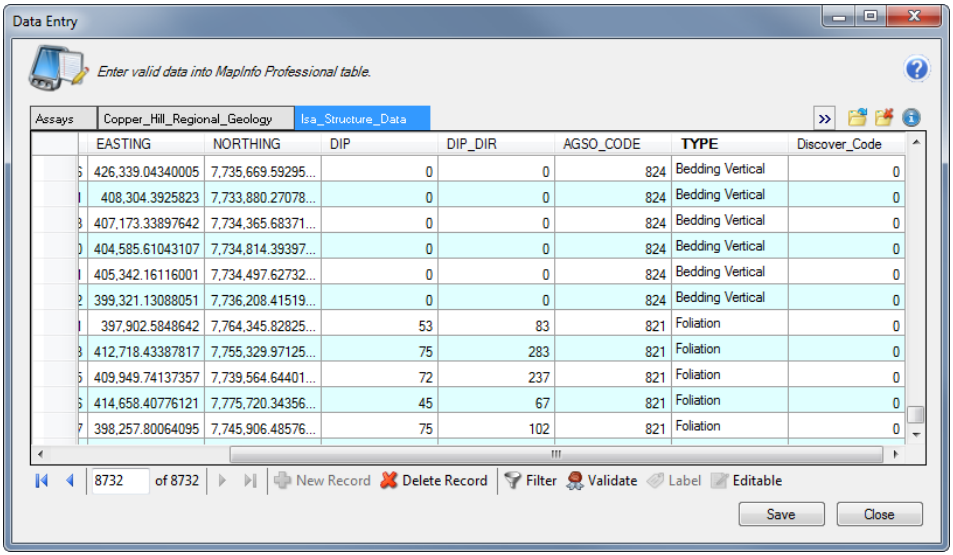
9. To digitize rotated structural symbols, the table must be set up correctly in the Setup Table tool. The table must be mappable and have three numeric fields with the following parameters: Dip, DipDirection and DiscoverCode. There must also be a character field defining one of the standard structural picklists, with Exclusion and Map Style options enabled.




*Structural table setup*

An advantage of using the structural symbols component of the Data Entry tool is the dynamic ability to modify the structural points. When the DipDirection and Dip value are modified, the structural map object will change accordingly. When the structure type is selected from the Structural Picklist, the structural map object is modified.

10. Click the **Save** button to save your changes to the current table. All validation errors must be resolved before the table can be saved and the Data Entry tool can be closed.




*Enter Data dialog showing entry of data in a structural table*

# Index

## A

ActiveSync 9
Add a layer 137
Add Annotation 95
Add button
    for tables 128, 169
    on Layer Control 137
Add Custom Labels button 63, 243
Add extra tables 57
Add Label 95
Add labels 62
Add Node Mode 219
Add Structure Symbol 93
Add Vertex button 63
Add/Insert Node 94
Adding new objects 139
All Layers viewing 60
alphanumeric characters 129
Annotation tool 95
Annotation/Label button 63, 242
Arrow Select tool 91
Australian Structural Symbols 181
Auto Detect 255
Auto Detect button 255
Auto Rotate Map Function 64
Auto Rotate Map North Up 66, 152
Auto theme 102
Automatic Label option 142

## B

Background patterns 224
Backup battery 47
Bar chart thematic map 156
Bar Chart theme 102
Bitmap screen capture 101
Bluetooth connection 312
Bolding symbols 222
Browser information 61, 219
Button toolbars 49

## C

Canadian Structural Symbols 181
Center button 144
Center tool 60, 92
Character entry 58
Clear Annotations 242
Clear Selection table 98
Clipping objects
    at a polygon boundary 17
Clone File button
    for tables 131, 170
Close tables 125
Colour of polygons 123, 224
COM port 72
Communication
    between PC and PPC 8
Compact format legend 103, 159
Comparison operators
    of queries 191
Connect to a GPS 64
Copies of a table 126
Copy files 8
Cosmetic Layer 62, 101, 136, 201
    made permanent 187
Create a buffer 216
Create the Cosmetic Layer 141
Current GPS Position 79
Current GPS position 58
Current Insertion Layer 151
Cursor location 58
Cursor Position tool 93
Custom XRF field 335
Customised labels 122, 243

## D

Data
    Digitizing 343

Data entry 58
Data protocol 1
Date fields 129
Decimal value
of fields 130
Default map window projection 162
Default style 221
Degree of rotation 114, 144
Delete button 61, 220
for tables 128, 169
Delete View 60, 150
Delete/Save views 60, 150
Desktop PC 8
Dialogs 56
Digitizing
Data 343
Discover 1
Discover Mobile icon 47
Display attributes 57
Display labels
on Layer Control 110, 135
Display location 58
Display screen 48
Display window zoom level 58
Distance along a Polyline 61
Distance between points 61
Distance Measurement tool 61
Dot density map 158
Dot Density theme 102
Down buttons
on Layer Control 111, 137
Download ActiveSync 9
Drag and drop files 8
Dragging and dropping files 8
Draw a polygon 62, 201
Draw a polyline 62, 201
Draw a straight line 62, 200
Draw/Edit toolbar 58, 62, 200
Drawing/Editing toolbar 49, 56
Drop shadows 222
Dynamic map grid 114, 146, 149

## E

Edit menu 119
Edit modes 121
Edit object vertices 62
Edit>Apply Range Styles 125
Edit>Buffer 120
Edit>Clear Annotations 122
Edit>Clear Custom Labels 122
Edit>Delete 122
Edit>Edit Mode 121
Edit>Hardware Button Options 124
Edit>Named Styles 124
Edit>New Object Styles 125
Edit>Quick Pick Options 123
Edit>Range Styles 125
Edit>Raster Transparency 122
Edit>Selected Object Style 123
Edit>Selected Point Location 123
Editability 57, 110, 135
Entry method 58
Ethernet 8
Ethernet connection 8
Exit Discover Mobile 68
Exit from Discover Mobile 56
Exiting Discover Mobile 68
Exiting the application 67
Expressions in queries 192, 193
expressions in queries 194
Extent of layer 114
extent of layer 144

## F

Feature Edit mode 219
Field name 129
Field type 129
File menu 125
File>Close All Tables 131
File>Close Table 131
File>New Table 127
File>Open Table 131
File>Recent Files 127
File>Save Geoset 133
File>Save Table Copy As 132
Fill patterns 62, 123
fill patterns 224

Find Selection command 99
Fix Dilution 151
Float fields 129
Foreground patterns 224
Freehand Polygon button 63, 203
Freehand Polyline 94
Freehand Polyline button 63, 203
Functions
of queries 98, 193

## G

Geosets and usage 52, 133
GIS 1
GO button 57, 66, 67
GO menu 49
Go to tool 64
GO>About 69
GO>Edit 119
GO>Exit 68
GO>File 125
GO>GPS 104
GO>Licensing 69
GO>Map 100
GO>Preferences 70
GO>Query 96
GO>Tools 90
GO>View 109
GO>XRF 108
GPS
connecting 327
NMEA 328
Trimble 329
GPS Connect button 65
GPS errors 76
GPS information 151
GPS Information Properties 64
GPS Insert Node 65, 207
GPS Line Track Log 65, 206
GPS location 338
GPS Map Position 151
GPS menu 104
GPS Point Capture 64, 65, 205, 206
GPS Point Track Log 65, 205
GPS Polygon Capture 180
GPS Polyline Capture 65, 207
GPS Polyline/Polygon Pause Button 65, 208
GPS position 151
GPS receiver 70, 73
GPS receivers 47
GPS Structure Symbol 65, 206
GPS toolbar 49, 56, 58, 64, 205
GPS>Capture Point 107
GPS>Capture Polygon 107
GPS>Capture Polyline 107
GPS>Capture Structure Symbol 107
GPS>Center Map on GPS 106
GPS>Connect 105
GPS>Default Styles 106
GPS>Line Log 107
GPS>Monitor Satellite Status 105
GPS>Orient Map Ahead 106
GPS>Point Log 107
GPS>Setup Connection 105
GPS>Setup Data Capture Tables 106
GPS>Waypoint Navigation 106
Graduated Symbol theme 102, 158

## H

Halos around objects 222
Hotlink button 61

## I

Individual Value theme 102
Individual value theme 159
Information button 61, 219
Information Tool 93
Insert a node 63
Insertion Layer 116
Installation 3
Integer fields 129
Invisible 165
Italics of objects 222

## K

Keyboard use 58

## L

Label tool 95
Landsat image 165
Layer Control 110, 136, 137, 138
Layer Control button 57, 110
Layer list controls 111, 137
Layered display 51
Legend button
  of themes 103
Legends of thematic maps 159
Level of transparency 122, 165
Licence 3
Licence file 5
Licence file security 8
License the software 5
Licensing procedure 5
Line button 63, 202
Line colour 123, 223
Line style 62
Line styles 223
Line thickness 123, 223
Line Track Log 64, 205
Location on screen 58
Logical fields 129
Logical operators
  of queries 192
Lost power 8

## M

Main menu 55
Main toolbar 49, 56, 57
Maintain queries 96
Maintain tables 127, 184
Make a layer editable 137
Map grid 114, 146, 149
Map menu 100
Map scale 60
Map session 126
Map window 55
Map X 116
Map Y 116
Map>Add Cosmetic Layer 101
Map>Create Theme 102
Map>Map Projection 104
Map>Modify Themes 103
Map>Save Window As 101
Map>Set Insertion Layer 101
MapInfo Professional 1, 50
MapX Mobile platform 1
Maximum field width 130
Maximum separation distance 78
Menu system 49, 66, 67
Microsoft 9
Minimise Discover Mobile 56
Minimum separation distance 77
Mobile Device
  in Explorer 8
Mobile device 8
Modify object styles 62
Move vertex 63

## N

National Marine Electronics Association 251
NewField entry 128, 169
Niton XRF 311
  connecting 312
NMEA 0183 251
  protocol 1
Node Edit tool 219
North Up Function 64
Null parity 73
Number entry 58
Number of Satellites 151
Numeric fields 129

## O

Object Style button 63, 64
Olympus Innov-X XRF 311
  connecting 315
Opacity of rasters 165
Open files button 57
Open tables 125
Operating systems 2
Operator precedence 192
Outline line style 123, 224

## P

Pan button 144
Pan mode 58
Pan tool 92
Pan/Center button 60
Parity of connections 73
Paste files 8
Picking of object 59, 215
Pie Chart Map 157
Pie Chart theme 102
Place a symbol 62, 200
Pocket PC 1
Point selection 59, 215
Point Track Log 64, 205
Pointing at objects 50
PolyClip
  clipping objects at a polygon boundary 17
Polygon 95
Polygon button 63, 203
Polygon selection 91
Polygonal selection 59, 216
Polyline 95
Polyline line button 63, 202
Port for GPS 72
Portable XRF 311
Power is lost 8
Precedence of operators 192
Preferences menu 70
Preferences>Directories 88
Preferences>GPS>Connection 71
Preferences>GPS>Display 79
Preferences>GPS>Map Rotation 81
Preferences>GPS>Point Creation 77
Preferences>Object Creation 82
Preferences>Session 83
Preferences>System Settings 85
Previous View button 143
Previous Zoom button 60, 150
Previous zoom level 58
Projection
  management 164
  of tables 130
Projection of display 51

## Q

Queries described 189
Query 189
  columns 97
  math functions 193
Query columns 97
Query functions 98, 190
Query Load button 97
Query logical operators 192
Query menu 96
Query operators 98, 190
Query results 97, 190
Query>Clear Selection 98
Query>Find 98
Query>Find Selection 99
Query>Select 97
Query>Select All 98
Querying
  based on proximity to selected objects 120, 216

## R

Radius selection 59, 91, 215
Range of values
  for themes 102, 154
Range styles 240
  applying 227
  applying with XRF capture 227, 334
  creating 240
  creating on desktop 242
  editing 242
Ranged Thematic Map 155
Ranged theme 102
Raster images 165
Recentre GPS 79
Rectangular selection 59, 91, 215
Remove a layer 137
Remove All button
  of themes 103
Remove annotations 122
Remove button
  of themes 103
  on Layer Control 137
Remove custom labels 122

Restore and open files 125
Rotate the view 114, 144
Rotation angle 145
Rotation Degree Tolerance 146
Run button
for queries 97, 189

## S

Safe storage media 8
Satellite positions,viewing 331
Saving a copy 187
Saving Views 60, 150
Scale mode 60
Screen interaction 50
Screen width 116, 151
Select all objects 98
Select items tools 58
Select query 97
Select radius 59, 215
Select toolbar 49
Select/View toolbar 57, 58
Selectable area 59, 215
Selection button 59, 215
Selection table 97, 98, 190
find contents 99
Selection using stylus 50
Serial devices 73
Session Coordinate Projection 116
Setup Fields button 127
Shortcut buttons 49
Size of fields 130
Size of Status Window 151
Small arrow for options 57
Small integer fields 129
Speed setting of GPS 73
Speed Tolerance 146
Stacked bar charts 156
Start Discover Mobile 47
Start menu 47
Status Window 58, 115, 150
Status Window Setup menu 58
Stop Map 58
Straight line 94
String expression
in queries 193
String fields 129
Structural codes 181
Structural Data Mapper
symbol codes 181
Structural True Type symbol fonts 297
Stylus operation 50, 55
Submenu list 57
Symbol button 63
Symbol style 62
Symbol style dialog 222
System Settings Font Size 151

## T

Table copy 132, 186
Table structure 119, 187
Tables open and close 127
Tables, open and close 184
Tap and drag the stylus 50
Tap the stylus 50
Text entry using stylus 50
Thematic colour 154
Thematic map controls 159
Thematic maps legend 159
Theme Type 154
Title bar 50, 55
Toolbars 55
Tools menu 90
Tools>Add Annotation 95
Tools>Add Label 95
Tools>Add Line 94
Tools>Add Node 94
Tools>Add Point 93
Tools>Add Polygon 95
Tools>Add Polygon Freehand 94
Tools>Add Polyline Freehand 94
Tools>Add Structure Symbol 93
Tools>Center 92
Tools>Cursor Position 93
Tools>Info 93
Tools>Pan 92
Tools>Select 91

Tools>Zoom In 92
Tools>Zoom Out 92
Total accumulated distance 61
Total number of characters
in fields 130
Transferring data 8
Transparency controls 165
Travel Speed 151
True Type fonts 297

## U

Universal Serial Bus (USB) connections 8
Up button
on Layer Control 111, 137
US structural symbols 181
USB connections 8
User interface 49, 55

## V

Vector display
rotation 114, 144
Vertex Edit tool 63
Vertex point 63
View Entire Layer 60
View menu 109
View>Drawing Toolbar 115
View>GPS Overlay 114
View>GPS Toolbar 115
View>Layer Control 110
View>Main Toolbar 115
View>Map Grid 114
View>Map Rotation 114
View>Scale Bar 114
View>Select Toolbar 115
View>Status Window 115
View>Table Browser 119
View>Table Structure 119
View>View Entire Layer 114
View>Zoom Level 113
Visibility 57, 110
visibility 135

## W

Width mode 60
Windows CE 3.0 2
Windows Explorer 8
Windows HPC 2000 2
Windows-compatible bitmap 101
Wireless LAN 8

## X

XRF 311
configure 333
connecting 332, 334
project path 332
XRF data capture 337
XRF devices 311
XRF menu 108
XRF>Connect 109
XRF>Open XRF Table 109
XRF>Setup 108

## Z

Zoom in and out 58
Zoom Level 60
Zoom level 60
Zoom-In button 59, 144
Zoom-In tool 92
Zoom-Out button 59
Zoom-Out tool 92